MAISTER

PEECE

MARKHAM

1623

6974 /B

MARKHAMS Maister-Peece.

Containing all knowledge belonging to Smith. Farrier. or Horse-leech, touching the curing of all diseases in Horses.

Deuided into two bookes.

The first containing all cures Physicall.

The second all belonging to Chyrurgery.

The Third Impression corrected and enlarged by the Author.

Gervase Markham.

LONDON, Printed by Nicholas Okes * 1623 *

MARKAMS MAISTER-PEECE:

CONTAINING,

All Knowledge belonging to a Smith, Farrier, or Horse-leach, touching the *curing of all diseases in Horses, drawne with great paine, and most approued experience from the* publicke practise of all the forraigne Horse-marshalls in Christendome, and from *the priuate practise of all the best Farriers of this Kingdome.*

Being diuided into two Bookes.

The first containing all Cures Physicall: the second all belonging to Chyrurgery, with *an Addition of* 130 *principall Chapters, and* 240 most excellent Medicines neuer written of *nor mentioned in any other Au-*thor whatsoeuer.

Together with the true nature, vse and quality of euery simple spoken of through the whole worke.

Now newly imprinted, corrected, and augmented, with diuers most assured and approued Medicines, which without all *faire (by Gods grace) will cure those diseases which all our Farriers hold impossible to be cured.*

Written by GERVASE MARKHAM. Gent.

PROV. 12. Vers. 10.

A iust man hath pitty on his beast, but the mercies of the wicked are cruell.

Imprinted at London by *Nicholas Okes*, and are to be sold by *Richard Whitakers*. 1623.

TO THE RIGHT HONORABLE AND HIS SINGVLAR GOOD LORD,

the Lord *Clyfton*, Baron of *Layton*.

IF the tribute of poore mens labours (Right Honourable, and my moſt beſt Lord) be the al-witneſſes of our moſt ſeruiceable loues: then I hope mine, which comes to kiſſe your hand, will proteſt and vow for mee, that my zeale and duty towards you and your houſe, hath no date, but in my laſt breath. And albe this worke, which hath beene my many yeares experience (for the rude and deformed Collection) may ſeeme too

humble for your ſupport : yet in as much as I know both your owne excellent and well approued knowledge in the ſame Art (and ſo beſt able to iudge either of my worth, or vanity) and your moſt noble affection to men of any vertue, I dare with better boldeneſſe preſent you with this my laſt ſacrifice of writing, beſeeching you in it to behold, not onely how my time is imployed, but how infinite my longing is to bee numbred amongſt them which beſt loue you.

Your Honours in all humble

duty to command,

Geruaſe Markham.

Reade me in any case before you reade the Booke.

Gentle Reader, let me assure thee, that this worke is not published for any ostentation, but for an euerlasting benefite to the Kingdome wherein I was bred; therefore thou shalt know, and I dare boldely make this protestation in despight of enuy, that there is not any Farrier of worth that doth know or practise any well working medicine which in this Booke thou shalt not find, vnlesse hee will produce some new hotch-potch of his inuenting; and then the medicines herein contained shall worke sooner, better, and more effectually. Only let mee giue thee this premonition, that in thy practise thou know the nature of thy salues, as which be corrosiues, which breeding flesh, which eating dead flesh, which drying, and which skinning; and then apply them in their due times, and no longer, as the Booke will shew you: otherwise you wil confound your worke. And euer proportion the quantities of your inward medicins according to the strength and abilitie of the horses body; but if you giue comfortable drinkes, giue more; if purging, or scouring, then lesse; yet in any case be not too scanting, for that is the losse of labour: and in these things with small care, the booke will make you most perfect.

Gervase Markham.

Jeremiah Newnee is my no
me with my friend write the rom
ber of mo[illegible] then had been kept
I might have mended every Let

Thomas

Tho
Beech

The Table of the first Booke.

	Chapters		
Composition of horses	1	Of the Plague.	26
Of Elements.	2	Feuer accidentall.	27
Of Temperaments.	3	Diseases in the head.	28
Of Humors.	4	Of head-ache.	29
Of members.	5	Of frenzy.	30
Of Powers.	6	Of the sleeping euill.	31
Of Operations.	7	A horse taken.	32
Of Spirits.	8	Of the staggers.	33
Of things not naturall.	9	Of the falling euill.	34
Of complexions.	10	Of the Night-mare.	35
Of inward sicknesses.	11	Of the Palsey.	36
Signes of sicknesse.	12	Of the Generall crampe.	37
Obseruations in phisicking.	13	Of the cold.	38
Of vrine and excrements.	14	Of hide-bound.	40
Of Feuers.	15	Of the Glaunders.	41
The Quotidian.	16	Of the mourning of the Chine.	42
The Tertian.	17	Of the Cough.	43
The Quartan.	18	Of the wet cough.	44
The Continuall.	19	Of the dri cough.	45
The Hectique.	20	Of broken lungs.	46
The Autumne feuer.	21	Of rotten lungs.	47
The Summer feuer.	22	Of shortnesse of breath.	48
The winter feuer.	23	Of broken winded.	49
Feuer by surfeit.	24	Of the Consumption.	50
Feuer Pestilent.	25	Consumption of the flesh.	51
		To make a horse fat.	52

Of

Of the breast-paine. 53
Of sickenesse of the heart. 54
Of tyred horses. 55
Of loathing of meat. 56
Of casting out drinke. 57
Of glut of prouender. 58
Of foundring in the bodie. 59
Of the hungry euill. 60
Of the inflammation of the liuer. 61
Of obstructions in the liuer 62
Consumption of the liuer. 63
Diseases in the gall. 64
Diseases in the spleene. 65
Of the yellowes. 66
Of the dropsie. 67
Of the cholicke. 68
Of belly-ake. 69
Of belly-bound. 70
Of the laxe. 71
Of bloudy flixe. 72
Falling of the sundament. 73
Of botts and wormes. 74
Paine in the kidney. 75
Of the strangury. 76
Of the paine-pisse. 77
Of the stone. 78
Of pissing bloud. 79
Of the colt-euill. 80
Mattering of the yard. 81
Of shedding of seed. 82
Falling of the yard. 83
Barrennesse of Mares. 84
Consumption in Mares. 85
Rage of loue in mares. 86
Of casting of foales. 87
Of hardnesse in foaling. 88
To make mares cast foales. 89
Drinking horse-leaches. 90
Of eating hennes dung. 91
Of the suppositary. 92
Of glisters. 93
Of purgations. 94
Of neesing. 95
Of frictions. 96
Generall drenches. 97
To make Diapente. 98
A famous drench & oyntment. 99
Of the oile of oates. 100
Briefe obseruations. 101
Principles in foales. 102
Obseruations in Mares. 103
Obseruations in buying a horse. 104
Notes concerning some simples. 105

The

The Table of the second Booke.

	Chap.		
Proportion of members.	1	*The tongue hurt.*	30
Of all the veines.	2	*The barbes.*	31
Of all the sinewes.	3	*Paine in the teeth.*	32
Of all the bones.	4	*Cricke in the necke.*	33
Of letting bloud.	5	*Wennes in the necke.*	34
Of outward sorrances.	6	*Swelling after bloud letting.*	35
Of weeping eyes.	7	*To stanch bloud.*	36
Of bloud-shotten eyes.	8	*Falling of the crest.*	37
Dimnesse of sight.	9	*Manginesse in the maine.*	38
Pearle, pinne, or webbe.	10		
Of the haw.	11	*Shedding of haire.*	39
Of moone eyes.	12	*Paine in the withers.*	40
Canker in the eyes.	13	*Any galld backe.*	41
Stroke in the eye.	14	*Canker in the withers.*	42
Wart in the eye.	15	*Of the sit-fast.*	43
Inflammation in the eie.	16	*Wennes about the saddle.*	44
Impostume in the eare.	17		
The pole-euill.	18	*The Nauell gall.*	45
Of laue-eard.	19	*Swaying the backe.*	46
The viues.	20	*Weakenesse in the backe.*	47
The strangle.	21	*Swelling in the coddes.*	48
Canker in the nose.	22	*Of incording.*	49
Bleeding at the nose.	23	*Botch in the groine.*	50
Bloudy rifts.	24	*Itch in the taile.*	51
The Gigges.	25	*The generall scabbe.*	52
The Lampasse.	26	*Of halting before.*	53
The camery.	27	*Of halting behinde.*	54
Canker in the mouth.	28	*Of hidden grefes.*	55
Heate in the bloud.	29	*Pinching the shoulder.*	56

Wrench in the ſhoulder. 57
Wrench in the nether ioynt. 58
Splaiting the ſhoulder. 59
Shoulder pight. 60
Swelling of the fore-legges. 61
Foundred in the feete. 62
Of the ſplent. 63
The thorrow ſplent. 64
The Mallander. 65
An vpper attaint. 66
A neather attaint 67
Ouer-reach on the heele. 68
The Mellet. 69
Falſe quarters. 70
A horſe hipped. 71
Of ſtifling. 72
Bone ſpauen. 73
Bloud ſpauen. 74
The ſellander. 75
The hough bonny. 76
The curbe. 77
The paines. 78
The Mules. 79
Winde-galls. 80
Straine in the paſterne. 81
To helpe any halting. 82
Of enterfearing. 83
The ſhackle gall. 84
Hurts in the legges. 85
The ſcratches. 86
The Ring-bone. 87
Hurts on the eronet. 88
Crowne ſcabbe. 89
The quitter-bone. 90
Of grauelling. 91
Pricke in the ſoale. 92
To draw out a ſtubbe. 93
The figge. 94
A Retrait. 95
Of cloying. 96
Obſeruations for Hoones. 97
Looſening the hoofe. 98
Caſting the hoofe. 99
Of hoofe-bound. 100
The running fruſh. 101
Of euill hoones. 102
Of brittle hoones. 103
To preſerue hooues. 104
Hurts on the hoones. 105
To ſoften hooues. 106
To harden hooues. 107
Of the matlong. 108
To skinne a ſore foote. 119
Of gourded legges. 110
Of the Farcy. 111
Of the Canker. 112
Of the fiſtula. 113
Of the Anbury. 114
Of the cords. 115
Of the ſtringhalt. 116

Of

Of spurre gald. 117
Of woundes in generall. 118
Of hurtes with Arrowes. 119
Of healing old sores. 120
Of bruisings or swellings. 121
Of Impostumes. 122
Of cold Impostumes. 123
Of hot Impostumes. 124
Of the Tetter. 125
Of sinewes cut. 126
Of fretting with Girthes. 127
Of Blisters. 128
To take away bones. 129
To eate away dead flesh. 130
Of knots in ioynts. 131
To cure any wound. 132
Of burning with lime. 133
Biting of a midde Dogge. 134
Hurtes with Boares tuskes. 135
The stinging of Serpents. 136
Of lice. 137
Defence from flies. 138
Of bones broken. 139
Bones out of ioynt. 140
To dry vp humors. 141
To dry superfluous moisture. 142
To dry any swelling. 143
To dissolue humors. 144
To mollifie hardnesse. 145
To harden softnesse. 146
To conglutinate. 147
To mundifie. 148
Repercussiue medicins. 149
Burning compositions. 150
For all hurts. 151
Powder of honey and lime. 152
Of taking vp veines. 153
Of cauterizing. 154
Cauterize actuall. 155
Cauterize potentiall. 156
Of rowelling. 157
To geld horses. 158
To make Curtals. 159
To make a white starre. 160
To make a redde starre. 161
To make a blacke starre. 162
To make haire come. 163
To make haire smooth. 164
To take off haire. 165
To cast a horse. 166
The age of horses. 167

An

An old horse to seeme yong. 168
A Horse shall not neigh. 169
Quickneſſe on the ſpurre. 170
Horſes not to tire. 171
A horſe to follow. 172
The nature of ſimples. 173
Principles touching ſimples. 174
Of weights and meaſures. 175
Farriers Inſtruments. 176

A Table of all the new Additions, *being as it were entire Chapters.*

1 HOw *certainely to take away any cold, poze, or ratling in the head how violent ſoeuer, without giuing any inward medi ine.*

2 Item. *Two moſt certaine and lately found out medicines, which will without all faile cure any Glaunders, though our Farriers hold it moſt impoſſible.*

3 Item. *A moſt rare and certaine approued medicine, to cure any high-running glaunders, called the mourning of the Chine, held of all men incurable.*

4 Item. *Two excellent true and well approued medicines for any old cold, dry cough, ſhortneſſe of breath, purſineſſe, or broken winded.*

5 Item. *The mirrour and maiſter of al medicines, teaching how to make the leaneſt and the vnſoundeſt horſe that may be, fat and ſound and fit either for market or trauel in th ſpace of foureteene dayes.*

6 Item. *A moſt excellent rare ſcouring for any horſe ſicke or ſound, and eſpecial-*

especially for running or hunting horses, whose [illegible] must necessarily be vsed.

7 A perfect and true Anatomy of all the bones in a horse, that which was in the booke, being false and vnperfect.

8 A most rare and approued medicine for any desperate blindnes in a horse, proceeding from any rhumaticke cause, surfeite, straine, stroake, or such like.

9 A most excellent and infallible new cure for any pin, webbe, pearle, or spot in the horses eye.

10 A most rare and certaine aproued medicine which will cure the vine, without either burning, cutting, rotting, or any such like violent extremity.

11 Two most excellent & approued medicines (especially the latter (for the foulest mangy or leprosie that can possible happen to any horse.

12 An excellent approued medicine for any sinew-straine whatsoeuer.

13 A most rare and wel approued medicine which will take away any blood spauen, how grieuous so-

14 [illegible] rare and well approued medicines which will cure any manner of straine, or swelling whatsoeuer, be it hard or soft, by what accident soeuer it shall come.

15 A rare and true approued medicine to cure any Fistula, or hollow Impostumation whatsoeuer.

16 A new found out way, most certaine for the making of a white starre.

Besides a generall correction, and many small additions added vnto the whole worke.

The Authors names from whom
thing in this worke is collected, being
the best Farriers.

These are Italique.

Zenophon.
Rufsius.
Vegetius.
Pelagonius.
Camerarius.
Appolonius.
Griffon.
Grilli.
Horatio.
Libalt.
Steuens.
Wikerus.
La Broue.
Martin senior.
Clifford.
Mascall.
Markham.

These are primate.

Martin iunior.
Web.
Dallidowne senior.
Dallidowne iunior.
Ausbourne.
Stanley.
Smith.
Dousing.
Barnes.
Maffeyld.
Lupman.
Goodsonne.
Pursfray.
White.

THE

THE FIRST BOOKE

containing all Cures Phyſicall, or ſuch Infirmities as being inward, craue the Adminiſtration of Phyſicke, and are called in Horſe-leach-craft, *Horſes Sicknesſes.*

CHAP. I.

Of the Naturall Compoſition of Horſes Bodies.

MAny, yea euen of thoſe which are neereſt to my ſtudies, will not onely ponder, but in part condemne me for this work, when they ſhall but reade the title, without any excuſe, imagining that I haue in my laſt booke done my vttermoſt endeauour, and ſpent my beſt skill in this ſubiect, that ſurely this reiteration can bee nothing but either meere *Tautologie*, or ſome ſurfeit of oſtentation. But how much I hate the one, and condemne the other, both my ſelfe, and th[illegible] with whom I hold my commercement, can [illegible] truly witneſſe: for beleeue

it, I neuer ſtood affected either to *Abſalons* pillars, or to the muſicke of mine owne words. Truth it is, that at the publiſhing of my laſt booke, I intended to haue inſerted this in the ſame forme and method as now it is; but the ouer-haſty greedines of a ſelfe-hurting Stationer, and the confuſion of many Printers (one poore boooke being mangled into diuers hands) did both ſo confound and defeat my better purpoſes, that I was compeld to giue way to their willes, and to ſuffer it to come forth with that miſſhapen and diſtract face which now it beareth; euery page being loaded with the Printers faults, and no way to ſaue their reputation, but by moſt wilfull neglecting to fixe to any *Errata*. Well, for euery part of that booke (excepting that of Cures) the Printers faults excuſed, I dare boldly defend it againſt either enuy, cenſure, or any preiudication; and though it be not the perfection, or moſt perfect (for thoſe fruits grow not on my tree,) yet it is ſuch; and ſo ſound, as ſhall giue full ſatisfaction to euery indifferent and vpright iudgement. As for that part (the booke of Cures I meane) which my ſelfe muſt needes confeſſe, giueth not that ample ſatisfaction which I intended: I haue, in amends thereof, compiled this volume with ſuch earneſt care, practiſe and diligence, that I dare engage, euen my beſt fortunes, that ſimplicity and ignorance it ſelfe (I meane ſuch as neuer intermedled with this Art in the whole circuit of their liues) ſhall not onely with good iudgement performe as great and as inuincible cures as the beſt Smith-farriers of this kingdome; but alſo ſhall giue ſuch ſubſtantiall reaſons, and vncon-

controllable accoũts for whatsoeuer they do(which yet neuer Smith that I knew was able to doe) that not the best Artist shall bee able with vndoubted truth to refute them. And with this protestation and full assurance to euery wel-practizing reader of this worke, I will proceed to my purpose, according to euery branchand head in the Title.

It is most necessary then for euery man, who shall endeauour himselfe to haue knowledge in this Art, first to learne whereof and how a horses body is compounded, that according to the naturall composition thereof, and the vnnaturall workings of those compositions, hee may compound his medicines, and make them agreeable with the effects of his infirmities; and not as our Farriers doe, many times vse one medicine for all inward diseases, and one salue for all sores.

Touching therefore the true composition of a horses body, you shall vnderstand that it is as the body of a man is, compounded of 13 seuerall things; that is to say, 7 naturall, and 6 not naturall; the 7 naturall are, *Elements*, *Temperaments*, *Humors*, *Members*, *Powers* or *Vertues*, *Actions* or *Operations*, and *Spirits*; all which be called naturall, because the naturall profession and excellency of euery sensible body doth wholly depend vpon them, & hath his mouing no longer then they haue power of working. The 6 which are not naturall, be the *Aire*, *Meat* and *Drinke*, *Motion and Rest*, *Sleepe* and *watch*, *Emptines* and *Fulnes*, and the *Affects* or *Motions* of the mind; and these are called not naturall, because as (being rightly and in due order applyed) they pre-

ſerue, ſuſtaine, and fructifie the body; ſo being miſgouerned, or vſed in any exceſſe, or diſorder, they are the onely corrupt deſtroyers of the whole body: and of theſe thirteene ſimples which compound the fabricke or whole frame of the body, I intend to ſpeake ſeuerally.

Chap. 2.
Of the foure Elements, their Vertues and Operations.

FIrſt, for the expoſition of this word *Element*, you ſhall vnderſtand, that it is the primere or firſt beginning of things, being of it ſelfe pure, vncorrupt and ſimple; all things being firſt made thereof, and all things at the laſt being reſolued into the ſame againe. It is alſo in it owne nature ſo bright, cleare, and without contraction or impuritie, that it is not to be diſcerned by any ſenſible eye whatſoeuer. Laſtly, it is the leaſt part or *Atomy* of that thing which is made, or proceedeth from it.

Now of theſe Elements which are the vſuall firſt mouers or beginners of all mouing things, there are only foure in number, that is to ſay: *Fire*, *Aire*, *Water* and *Earth*; meaning not that fire, aire, water and earth, which is viſible heere with vs beneath, and which through the groſſenes thereof, is both palpable, and to bee diſcerned; but thoſe which are mounted aloft, and through their purity inuiſible, and concealed from vs, (for the other are compounded bodies, and not ſimple.) And of theſe perfect and diſtinct Elements you ſhall know, that the fire

is

is the higheſt. as being fixed or ioyned next vnto the Moone, being hot and dry, yet naturally exceeding, or beeing moſt predominant, or ruling, in heate.

The aire is placed next vnto the fire, and is naturally light and hot, yet his predominant or chiefe quality is moiſt.

The water is adioyned vnto the aire, the diſpoſition thereof being heauy and moiſt; but his predominant or chiefe qualitie onely cold.

Laſtly, the earth, adioyned to the water, is the loweſt, and it is moſt heauy and cold; but the predominant or chiefe quality thereof is onely drineſſe.

Now for the vertues, properties, and operations of the foure Elements, you ſhall vnderſtand, that firſt the fire, by meanes of his heate, moueth matter to generation, and ſtirreth vp warmth in all liuing things; it is that which the *Philoſophers* cal *Heterogenia*, which is in mixt bodies to ſeparate things of diuers kindes, one from another, and alſo to ioyne things of like kindes together, which they likewiſe call *Homogenia*. For by vertue of the fire the bones of horſes are ſeparated from the fleſh, the fleſh from the ſinewes, the ſinewes from the veines, the veines from the arteries, the heart from the liuer, the liuer from the ſpleene, and ſo forth, in ſuch ſort as wee ſee the diuers parts of the fuell we burne, by the vertue of the fire and heate to be ſeparated and diuided one from another, as the vapour from the ſmoake, the ſmoake from the flame, and the flame from the aſhes. And as in theſe things, ſo in many other things, as in the tryall of mettals, and ſuch

like, where the fire by vertue of his heate separateth body from body, that is, mettall from mettall, and corruption from incorruption, gathering and knitting together euery thing of one aud the selfe same kind. Besides, the vertue of the fire is to ripen, order and digest things raw and vndigested, mingling the dry with the moist, and opening the powers, that the aire being somewhat more solide & grosse, may enter into the body; And lastly, it breatheth and moderateth the coldnesse of the water and the earth, so that it may not distemper or confound the body.

Touching the vertue & operation of the aire, you shall vnderstand that by the moistnesse thereof it maketh the matter apt to receiue shape either naturall or accidentall, and by the helpe and assistance of the fire, bringeth the powers and influences of the heauens and starres into the inferiour bodies, making the mixt bodies not onely subtile and penetrable, but also light and mounting, to the end they may neither be too grosse, nor too heauy. Secondly, the aire throug his moistnesse cooleth the burning heat of the heart, liuer & intrails, as we daily see by the office of the lights and lungs, which like a paire of bellowes draweth vncessantly fresh aire vnto the heart and inward members. And al-be-it the aire doeth not seeme, to the sence of the outward eyes, to bee any thing neere so moist as the water, yet according to the opinions both of our bookes & best Phisitians, it is by much the moister; which is well prooued, say they, by the abundant fluxe it containeth, which fluxe spreadeth it selfe so farre abroad

in

in the body, that it filleth euery empty part and corner thereof with the speciall properties and characters of moistnesse; and by that reason is much harder to be kept within his owne bounds then the water is. Lastly, as the water was altered by God from his first naturall place, for the better profit both of man and beast, euen so the aire, according to Schoolemens opinions, was not left altogether in his first naturall disposition, least being ouer-moist it should so confound and suffocate all sence, that neither man nor beast should bee able to breathe or liue.

Now for the vertue and operation of the water, it is to be noted, that through the coldnesse thereof, it conglutinateth and bindeth in mixt bodies, both parts and members together, which bee of diuers kinds, as bones with flesh and sinewes, flesh with sinewes and bones, and sinewes with bones and flesh. Euen as for a familiar example, wee see in the time of any great frost, the strength of the cold how it bindeth things of diuers kinds together, bringing into one masse or substance both water, dirt, stones, strawes, stickes and leaues: the water also with its coldnesse, doth temper and coole the inflamation and heate of the fire, gathering together those things which otherwise the violent heate would disperse and scatter abroad.

Lastly, for the vertue and operation of the earth, it is through his drinesse in mixt bodies, so to harden and fixe them together, that they may retaine their shapes, which otherwise by the power of the aire and water, would bee so soluble and loose,

that they could not hold together; as wee may see in Paste, Waxe, or such like, which whilest it is moist, will receiue no print, but being once hardened, it retaineth any forme that is prest into it. And here is to bee noted, that according to the opinion of *Hypocrates*, when any sensible body dieth, not onely euery qualitie, but euery substance and part makes his returne to the Element from whence it come; as heate to the fire, moistnesse to the aire, coldnesse to the water, and drinesse to the earth. And thus briefly you see, that of these foure common Elements, or common beginners of things, the fire being hot, separateth; the aire being moist, shapeth; the water being cold, bindeth; and the earth being dry, hardeneth and retaineth. The vse that you are to make of this knowledge, ouer and beside the composition of a naturall body, is, that when you finde any sickenesse or infirmitie, which proceedeth from the fire, as inflammations of the body, or such like; that then you apply simples of the nature of the aire or water, which may moisten and coole the violence of the heate. If the infirmitie proceede from the aire, as fluxe of blood, or too much moysture; then you shall apply simples of the nature of the fire or earth, whose heate and drinesse may disperse and harden such moisture. If the disease spring from the water, as Colds, Rheumes, Apoplexies, and such like; then you shall seeke simples of the nature of the fire and aire; that through the heate of the one, and the moist lightnesse of the other, all such cold, grosse, and solide humors may bee dispersed. But

if

if the diſeaſe proceede from the earth, as mangineſſe and leproſie, or their like, that are drye and hardened infections, then you ſhall ſeeke ſimples of the nature of the fire onely, whoſe heate may diſſolue and looſen thoſe ill knit, dry, and hard humors.

Thus you ſee too much heate is abated by coldneſſe, and moyſtneſſe; too much moyſtneſſe by heate and drineſſe, too much coldneſſe by heate and moyſtneſſe, too much drineſſe by heat only.

Thus much of theſe foure common Elements, which begin all things liuing and vnliuing, ſenſible and vnſenſible; yet of ſenſible things, which liue and haue blood, there be other more neere elements, or beginnings, which are called proper elements, or generation, as the ingendring ſeed, and menſtruall blood, from whence euery beaſt taketh his firſt ſhape and beginning; and yet theſe proper beginnings haue their whole dependancy and hanging vppon the qualities of the firſt common beginnings already ſpoken of, which is moyſt, dry, hot, and cold; for without them they are nothing, nor can doe any thing.

Chap. 3.

Of Temperaments, and their ſeuerall kinds, and how farre euery way they extend in horſes.

THeſe *Temperaments*, or *Temperatures*, which are the ſecond things in a horſes compoſition, doe ſpring from the commixture of the foure elements, and are nine in number, whereof eight are vnequall, and

and the ninth is equall. Of the eight vnequall, foure, are simple, and those bee hot, cold, moist, and drye, which Physitians call the first qualities; and of these, the first two bee actiue, and the other two passiue: the other foure are compound, and they be hot and moist, hot and dry, cold and moist, cold and drye. Now the equall temperament is diuided into two, an vniuersall and a speciall. The equall *Temperament vniuersall*, is when the foure elements are in an equall proportion, generally diuided through the whole body, nature enioyning no more from the one then from the other. The equall *Temperament speciall*, is when the elements are proportioned according as euery kinde doth most properly require, bee it either plant or beast: in plants, when euery plant hath that commixture of elements which are proper to its kinde, the hot plant being hot, the cold being cold, and so forth: VVhereas contrariwise, to haue a hot plant cold, or a cold hot, to haue rue cold, or sorrell hot, were a false and vnequall commixture of elements. So likewise of beasts, that horse, that dogge, that Swine is said to haue his due *Temperament*, when he is of such temperature as is most proper vnto his kinde; which onely is best discerned by his actions, or motions. As thus, the horse is knowne to bee hot and moist by his lightnesse, swiftnesse, valiantnesse and long life; and also to be of a temperate nature, in that hee is easily tamed, docible, obedient and familiar with the man. And so long as either horse, or any other thing, continueth in the mediocrity and excellency of his proper temperament, so long we may truely iudge him

him of a good temper and disposition; but if there be any ouer-flow of qualities, or excesse in his humors, as either in heate, coldnesse, moistnesse or drinesse, then we say he is either a hot cholericke horse, a cold dull horse, a dry mischieuous horse, or a moist cowardly horse, according to the ouer-flow of that quality which raigneth in him.

Againe, euery horse is sayd to haue his due *Temperament* according to his age, and the Countrey wherein he is bred, and sometimes according to the time of the yeare wherein he liueth. And thus a horse in his foale-age, which is till he be sixe yeares old, is naturally hot and moist. In his middle age, which is till twelue, more hot and dry then moyst; and in his old age, which is past eighteene, more cold and dry then either hot or moyst. So likewise the horses which are bred in Southerne parts, as either in *Spaine*, *Barbary*, or *Greece*, are naturally more hot then those which are bred either in the seuenteene lands, *Germany*, or *England*; neither is there any horse which is in good state of body, that is so hot in the Spring time of the yeare, as in the Summer, nor so cold in the summer as in the winter. All which obseruations are with most curious diligence to be obserued of euery horse-leach, when he goeth about to cure any sickenesse: For vnlesse he consider their natures and temperatures, and euery other circumstance already declared, he shall right soone be deceiued in the administration of his Physicke. Therefore I earnestly aduise euery Farrier, before hee giue any drench or potion, first to enquire the kinde, race and disposition of the horse, next his age, then

then the countrey, and lastly, the time of the yeare: and so according to the truth thereof, to mixe his receipts.

It is most expedient also for euery horse-leach to consider the second qualities, which are so called, because they take their beginnings from the first qualities already declared; of which second qualities, some be called palpable, or to bee touched, as these, softnesse, hardnesse, smoothnesse, roughnesse, toughnesse, brickleness, lightnesse, heauinesse, thinnesse, thickenesse, smalnesse, grosnesse, and such other like. Some againe are not palpable, as those which appertaine to hearing, seeing, and smelling, as noysses, colours, odours, and such like; and by obseruing well these second qualities, he shall with much ease, know whether the horse be disposed to any sicknes or not, as shall be more largely declared hereafter in euery particular Chapter.

Chap. 4.
Of humors, and to what end they serue.

NOw concerning *Humors*, which are the third composers of a horses body, and so likewise of euery other beast also; you shall vnderstand that they are foure in number, that is to say, *Blood*, *Fleame*, *Choler*, and *Melancholy*. As touching blood, it is in it own nature vncorrupted, and therefore hot and moyst, and sweete in taste, as participating of the elements fire and ayre. *Fleame* is cold and moyst, and either sweet or wallowish without any tast at all, as participating of the elements water and ayre. *Choler* is hot and

and dry, and bitter in taste, as participating of the elements fire and earth. *Melancholy* is cold and dry, and in taste sowre and heauy, as participating of the elements water and earth: So that these foure humors by their qualities, are euery way allied vnto the elements. For to speake briefly, and according to the manner of Physitians, *Blood* is of the nature of the ayre, in being most predominant therein; *Fleame* of the nature of water, *Choler* of the nature of fire, and *Melancholy* of the nature of the earth. And al-be-it these humors are symbolized or mixt through euery part of the body; yet euery one of them aboundeth more in one part then in another, and haue their places of residence absolute and peculiar to themselues, as *Blood* about the heart, *Fleame* in the braine, *Choler* in the liuer, and *Melancholy* in the spleene. Now as these humors doe more or lesse abound, or haue greater or lesser soueraignty in the horse: So is the beast naturally better or worse coloured, qualified, or disposed, as thus. That horse in whom blood hath the greatest predominance, and may be called a horse sanguine, is bright bay of colour, and in disposition pleasant, nimble, and of temperate or moderate motion. That horse in whom fleame hath the greatest dominion, and may be called a flegmaticke horse, is for the most part of a milke white colour, and so consequently, slow, dull, and heauy. If choler beare the greatest rule in his constitution, then is his colour commonly a bright sorrell, and by that meanes of disposition hot, fiery, and of little strength. Lastly, if the earth haue gotten power aboue the other elements, so that he may be called

led a melancholy horse, then his colour is commonly a mouse dunne, and his disposition cowardly, faint and slothfull. But because these particularities are properly appertaining to the complexions of horses, of which we shall haue cause to speake more largely hereafter, I will not stand vpon any greater relation; onely I giue you thus much in conclusion: to vnderstand that euery one of these aforesaid humors hath his proper vse and end whereunto it serueth, as thus. *Blood* serueth most properly to nourish the body. *Fleame* giueth motion to the ioynts. *Choler* prouoketh the auoydance of excrements, and *Melancholy* begetteth an appetite or longing to his meate. Now during the time that these humors doe possesse their naturall qualities, so long they are wholesome, and bee called by their simple names, without glosse or addition; but if by any mischance they be disordered or corrupted, then they are vnwholesome, and are no longer called by their simple names, but haue other Epithetons annexed vnto them, as *Melancholy blood*, *Salt fleame*, *Choler aduſt*, or *burnt Choler*, and *fretting Melancholy*, whereof proceedeth many pestilent and dangerous diseases, as shall be at large declared hereafter. And thus much for the state of humors.

Chap. 5.

Of Members, and their seuerall kinds.

TOuching *Members*, which are the fourth maine instruments in this great fabricke of a horses body, they are by Schoolemen diuided into two parts.

The

The first is called *Similaria*, which is like, semblable or one and the same thing. The other is called *Instrumentall*, and are contrary to the first.

Members alike are those which being separated or distributed into parts, yet euery part thereof is a like in substance to the whole, neither altering in definition, appellation or nature; as flesh, bone, sinew, and such like: for flesh beeing cut or inciſed into many parts, yet is euery part still flesh, so reputed and so called, as well as when it was in combination altogether; and as of this, so likewise may it be sayd of bones, sinewes, and their like.

Now for *Members Instrumentall*, they be those which being made of parts semblable, and diuided into parts; yet the parts are not alike, neither haue all one name with the whole, as the head, legge, foote, and such like: for euery part of the head is not called the head, nor euery part of the legge, the legge; but haue other appellations, as the brow, the temples, the knee, the feet-locke, and so forth. Now these instrumentall members, in doing of their offices and duties are of much more perfection then the semblable members, wherefore Schoole-men haue made amongst these Instrumentall members, foure soueraignes or princes aboue the rest; that is, the *Braine*, the *Heart*, the *Liuer*, and the *Stones*; of which the first three are the preseruers of the singular body; and the fourth of the whole kinde: The first three giuing motion and agitation to the body, the fourth generation and encrease to succeeding ages.

Now from these principall members, like branches from a well growne Tree, do spring other members

which

which do them seruice: as from the braine springeth sinewes, whose office is feeling: from the heart arteries, whose office is sprightnes and liuely-hood: from the liuer, veins, whose office is warmth and strength; and from the stones the seed-vessels, whose office is procreation and increase. Now forasmuch as from these doth likewise proceed a world of other members, as *Tendants*, *Ligaments*, *Lungs*, *Spleene*, *Guts*, and such like; all which, in as much as the knowledge of them doth more properly belong to the office of the Chyrurgian then to the Physitian (though most necessary for both) I am here to aduertise euery studious reader, that when hee shall haue occasion to meddle with any member about a horse, that hee turne to the second booke in this volume, which treateth onely of Surgery; and there hee shall not onely finde euery member and lineament in a horse, but also the true Anatomies so liuely demonstrated, that there shall be nothing wanting to the perfecting of his vnderstanding. And thus much in this place of Members.

Chap. 6.

Of Powers, and how a Horses Body is gouerned by them.

Powers, which by some are called *Vertues*, or principall faculties, and do gouerne and controle both the body of man or beast, and haue the fift place in this worke, are in number three, that is, the *Power animall*, the *Power vitall*, and the *Power naturall*. The *Power animall* is a vertue incident to the braine, which

which through the sinewes cõming like litle conduit pipes from the braine, distributeth feeling and moui:g to all the parts of the body. The *Power vitall* is a vertue belonging to the heart, which doth giue life and spirit to all the body by meanes of the arteries; which proceeding from the hart, which is the chiefe fountaine of naturall heat, carries in their litle chanels ouer the whole body, that aire and spirituall blood which makes it full of lightnesse and alacrity. The *Power natural* is a vertue belonging to the liuer, which giues nourishment vnto all the body, and to euery part thereof, by meanes of the veines, which doe likewise proceed from the liuer like greater conduites, carrying the blood from the liuer, which is the fountaine of blood, into euery part of the body. Besides the *Power naturall* containeth foure other vertues, that is, the vertue *Attractiue* which draweth food meet to sustaine the body; the vertue *Retentiue*, by which it retaineth and keepeth the food receiued: the vertue *Disgestiue*, whereby it concocteth and disgesteth the same. And lastly, the vertue *Expulsiue*, by which it expelleth excrements and superfluities. Thus these powers or vertues being of no lesse validity then you perceiue by this discourse, it is the part and duty of euery good Horse-leach, to haue a most carefull and vigilant respect vnto them: for if any of them faile, the horse cannot liue. Therefore whensoeuer you see that either your horse refuseth his food, or that hee cannot retaine and keepe his food, but casteth it vp againe, or that he doth not disgest his foode, but keepes it corruply in his stomacke, or that he cannot auoid his excrements in a

naturall manner, but holds it burning in his body, take them for most certaine signes of mortal sicknes. And thus much of powers or vertues.

Chap. 7.
Of Actions or Operations, and whereto they belong.

As touching *Actions* or *Operations*, which are the sixt columne or pillar which doth vphold this naturall body of which we treate, they are not onely belonging, but euen deriued from the three powers immediatly spoken of in the former chapter, as thus. The action and operation of the *Power animall* is to discerne, to moue, and to feele. Horses discerne by meanes of the vertue *Imaginatiue*, *Discoursatiue*, and *Memoratiue*, whereof the first is placed in the fore-head, the second in the middle of the braine, and the third in the hinder part of the head. All which are comprehended vnder the *Power animall*. Horses moue by meanes of the vertue *Motiue*, whose action and operation is to straine or let slacke the sinewes, wherby euery member hath his mouing. And horses feeling is by meanes of the vertue *Sensitiue*, whose action or operation is busied in the fiue senses, as to *See*, *Heare*, *Smell*, *Tast* and *Touch*; and all these actions spring from the *Power animall*.

The action or operation of the *Power vitall*, is to restraine and loosen the heart, and the arteries, which proceed from the heart; which action, whether it be hurt or disturbed in a horses body, is easily known of euery good Farrier, or horse *Marshal*, by the vnequall

beating

beating of his pulse; that is to say, of the arteries, which cōmeth downe from the heart to the insides of both his fore legges, a litle below the knuckles of his shoulders, and likewise crosse both the temples of his head, a litle higher then his eyes. And if any man be so simple to imagine that the thicknes of the horses skin shall be any impediment to the feeling of this motion, let him remember, that as a horses skin is thicker then a mans; so also are his arteries greater, and beate with more violence; and so consequently to be felt without any great difficulty.

The actions or operations of the *Power naturall*, are *to iugender, to increase, to nourish, to desire with appetite, to attract, to change, to digest, to retaine and to expell*, & many other of like kind. These actions therefore are carefully to be looked vnto by euery Farrier to the intent that he may learne by them, not onely the whole estate of a horses body, but also what particular members therof is euil affected, as thus. If either in your horse you finde much forgetfulnesse, vnnimblenes of his limbes, or dulnes vpon correction, it is a signe of sicknes in the braine, and that the *Power animall* is euill affected. If you find that his pulses do beat extraordinarily slow, or much too fast, it is a signe that his heart is grieued, and his *Power vitall* euill affected; but if you find that he doth consume, pine away, and looseth his stomacke, it is a signe that his liuer is perplexed, all his inward parts out of frame, and his *Power naturall* euill affected.

Now you shall againe vnderstand, that of actions some be voluntary, some not voluntary.

The voluntary actions be those which a horse may

either further or hinder, stay or let when themselues pleaseth, as the moouing of the legges: for they may goe, stand, or lye downe, at their owne pleasure.

The actions not voluntary, are those which depend not vpon the will of any beast, but be done of their owne accord and naturally, as the moouing of the heart and of the arteries, and the passage of the blood: the first whereof beateth sleeping and waking; and the other hath his course euery minute. And thus much of the actions and operations.

Chap. 8.

Of Spirits, and in what parts of the horses body they remaine.

Spirits, which is the seuenth naturall builder of this naturall worke, are to bee vnderstood to bee that fine, pure, cleare, and airy substance which is ingendred of the finest part of the blood, whereby the vertue of euery principall member may visite all the other parts of the body, making them to doe their duties according to the rules of nature. Now of spirits, according to the opinions of some Physitians, there are but two kinds, that is, the *Spirit animal*, and the *Spirit vitall*. The *Spirit animall* is that which giueth power of feeling and moouing to a horse, and hath his resting place in the braine, from whence, through the sinewes, it is dispersed into all other parts of the body: and it is ingendred of the vitall spirit, being more vehemently wrought and laboured, and partly of continuall breathing: euen so it is partly

partly preserued by the *Chaule* of the braine, which doth hourely water and nourish it.

The *Spirit vitall* is contained in the heart, from whence it floweth into euery part of the body, being the chiefe cause of all naturall heate; and it is preserued and nourished, both by breathing and blood.

To these two spirits, there be some Farriers, both *Italians* and *French*, which adde a third spirit, and call it the *Spirit naturall*, saying, it hath his residence in the liuer and the veines: but the two former are of such power, and haue such superiority that the body cannot liue without them, nor haue any being at all; wherefore it is the office of the Farrier continually in all his medicines to haue euer some comfortable simple which may maintaine and keepe the spirits in their full strength, liuelihood and vertue. And thus much touching spirits, and those seuen naturall things which compact a naturall body.

CHAP. 9.

Of the sixe things not naturall, how they profit, and how they hurt.

HAuing spoken of the naturall things whereof a horses body is compounded, it is needfull now that we speake something of the other sixe which be not naturall, so farre forth as they concerne the office of the Farrier, & no further: for with other matters we haue not to doe. The first thing then which is not naturall, yet preserueth a horses body in good state, is the aire, which being pure, sharpe, cleare and

piercing, giueth great life & nourishment to a horse; but being contrary, that is, grosse, thicke, and full of putrification, it cannot chuse but alter the good habit of his body, and breed in him many infirmities. Therefore euery Farrier shall haue great respect to the aire wherein a horse either liueth, or was bred in, as if a horse that was bred in a hot aire, come to liue in a cold, and through the exchange grow sicke, the Farrier shall by warme diet, close house, and moderate clothing, bring his nature to a stronger acquaintance: also when a horse exceedeth in any of the foure qualities, that is, in heat, moistnesse, coldnesse, or drinesse, it is best for him to liue in that aire which is contrary to that quality, wherein he exceedeth. Lastly, in many diseases, the change of the aire is most wholsome, as shall be shewed at large in the particular diseases.

For the meat and drinke of a horse, which is the second thing not naturall in a horses composition, it is not to be doubted, but whilst it is sweet, cleane and good, as bread well made and baked, dry oates, dry beanes, dry pease, sweet hay, sweet straw, or short grasse, so long it nourisheth & preserueth the horses body; but if it be fusty, raw, corrupt and vncleane, or if hee eate tares, fitches, rye or barley, then must hee needes bee vnsound, and full of infirmities, Therefore the Farrier shall bee carefull to keepe him from all such foodes as breed naughty euill blood; as for his water, the more pure it is, the better, and the more muddy, thicke and pleasant, so much the more vnhealthfull.

Now for this moning & rest, that is, either his tra-

uell

uell or ſtanding ſtill, which is the third thing not naturall in a horſes compoſition, doubtles they be great preſeruers of a horſes health: for as moderate exerciſe diſſolueth groſſe humors, ingendreth appetite, and addeth ſtrength vnto the limbes, ſo likewiſe indifferent reſt cauſeth digeſtion, comforteth the ſinewes, and maketh the hart chearful againſt enſuing labour. But on the contrary part, immoderate trauell, or exerciſe, when a horſe is ridden beyond his ſtrength, breedeth many dangerous and mortall ſickneſſes, as the foundring in the body, the conſumption of the lungs and liuer, molten greaſe, and ſuch like, beſides the piſſing of blood, mangineſſe, farby, and ſuch like; all which inward diſeaſes craue ſtrong purges, and the outward ſharpe & corroding medicines. Immoderate reſt, which is when a horſe doth ſtand long ſtill without any exerciſe. Feeding foule and groſly is as great an enemy to a horſes health as the other: for it congregateth and bindeth together all ſorts of ill humours, breeds corruption in the blood, rottenneſſe in the fleſh, and generally as many diſeaſes as any ill dyet whatſoeuer.

The ſleepe or watch of a horſe, (which is the fourth thing in our compoſition) is ſo neceſſary a comfort to a horſe, that he cannot liue without it; it is the greateſt moouer of diſgeſtion: and ſo conſequently giues comfort to the whole body. For whileſt the horſe ſleepes, the *Powers animal* do take their reſt, which otherwiſe would be ouer-wearied, and neither able to diſcharge their duties, nor to continue their actions and operations, which is the giuing of feeling and mouing onely: and whilſt a horſe

doth sleepe, the powers naturall haue more liberty to doe their worke, in concocting the meate, and comforting the body; insomuch as I account sleepe to be the onely quieting of the sences, ordained by nature to ingender strength. Sleepe is begotten by sweete, fatty, and grosse vapours, (and not by their contraries) which are raised from the heart to the braine; with the coldnesse of which braine, those vapours being congealed and thickned together, doe stop the pipes of the sensitiue spirits, so as they cannot resort to the instruments of the sences, to giue the body feeling & mouing, wherby the body at that time is depriued of those motions. And according as those vapours doe more or lesse fill the pipes, so is the horses sleepe more or lesse sound & vndisturbed; but when this sleepe shall at any time grow into excesse, and you shall perceiue a horse to sleepe beyond both nature and custome, then you shall know that such sleepe cõmeth from an euill habite of the body, and is a signe either of a *Lethargie*, and a numbnesse of the spirits, or else that he hath some inward griefe and paine in his limbes when he standeth; which being eased by lying, makes him couer a continuall rest and sleeping. Now for the watch of a horse, because it is the meere contrary to sleepe, there needes little to bee said more then this: that as the excesse of the one sheweth the want of the other, so the vnnaturall working of either shewes the euill state of a horses body, and giues the Farriers warning to expect ensuing sicknesse.

Now for emptinesse and fulnesse (which is the fift not naturall compositor) forasmuch as it is onely

an

an adding to, and a taking away, some Farriers haue held opinion, that all Physicke belonging to a horses body, consisteth in them two onely; and truely I am of this minde, that whosoeuer can take away corruption and adde perfection, shall without doubt euer keepe an able and substantiall body. But to our purpose, of this fulnesse there are two sorts, the one fulnesse by excesse of humors, the other fulnesse by excesse of meate; either of which perturbing the spirits, are the grounds of sicknesse. Againe, excesse of humors are of two kinds, the one an equall encrease of all manner of humors gathered together, and the other a particular excesse either of too much *Melancholy*, *fleame*, or other wateriſh humours whatsoeuer, the first being tearmed an aboundance of humours, the latter an excesse of euill iuice or nutriment: lastly, there is fulnesse in quantity, and fulnesse in quality. Fulnesse in quantity is when a horse is full of blood, or any other simple humour. Fulnesse in quality, is when any of those humors are too hot, or too cold, too grosse, or too thinne. Now for emptinesse, as all diseases of fulnesse must be cured by it onely, so all diseases of emptinesse must be healed by fulnesse, as by taking of blood, by purge, friction, scarification, boxing, sweating, bathing; and a world of such like, as shall bee very largely set forth hereafter.

Lastly, touching the affections of a horses minde, you shall vnderstand that so farre forth as the sensitiue soule doth stretch, so far they haue sence and feeling of affections, as namely, to loue, to hate, to be angry to reioyce, to bee sorry, and to feare: for all which, there

there needs no great apology, sith we haue it in daily experience: as who seeth not the loue of some horses to their keepers, their hate to strangers, their anger in their fights, their ioyes in their prides and wooings, their sorrows in their sicknesses, and their feares vnto their riders? Now these affections sith many times they are the grounds of strange motions in the body; therefore they ought carefully to be looked vnto by the Farrier, and that the horse be not ouer-oppressed with any of them; especially feare and hatred, the first whereof compelleth the blood and spirits to flye to the inward parts, and to leaue the outward without sence or feeling, and the latter makes him to be vnquiet, fierce, and raging; both together breeds distemperature in a horse, and those distemperatures ingender mortall sicknesses. And thus much for these sixe things, being held not naturall in a horses composition.

Chap. 10.
Of Horses Complexions.

HAuing spoken of those thirteene naturall and not naturall things, whereof a horses body is compounded, we will now in a somewhat more particular manner speake of the complexions of horses, which is one of the most necessary faces that a Farrier can behold, both for the iudging of a horses infirmities, and also for the true compounding of his medicines for euery disease: Therefore you shall first vnderstand that by the colour of the horse you shall euer iudge his complexion: For looke which of the elements

element, is moſt predominant in him, from that element we draw his complexion, as thus. If he participate more of the fire then of any of the other elements, then we hold him to be a cholericke horſe, and his colour is either a bright ſorrell, a cole-blacke without any white, or an yron gray vnchangeable, that is ſuch a gray as neither will euer turne a daple gray, to a white, or to a flea-bitten; and theſe horſes are of nature light, hot, fiery, and ſeldome of any great ſtrength: theſe horſes are much ſubiect to peſtilent feuers, yellowes, and inflammations of the liuer. Therefore euery Farrier ſhall be carefull in the compoſing of any medicine for ſuch a horſe, to purge choler; yet very moderately, and not with any extraordinary ſtrength in the potion or drench: Becauſe the horſe beeing in his beſt ſtrength, not reputed ſtrong, ſhould you apply any violent thing to him, that little ſtrength beeing abated, there were great danger in the confounding of the whole body.

If the horſe participate more of the aire then of the other elements, then is he of a ſanguine complexion, and his colour is either a bright bay, or darke bay; which hath neither skouling countenance, mealy mouth, nor white flanke, or a white flea-bitten, white lyard like ſiluer, or a blacke with white ſtarre, white rache, or white foote; theſe horſes are of nature pleaſant, nimble, free, and of a good ſtrength. The diſeaſes to them moſt incident, is conſumption of the liuer, leproſie, glanders, or any diſeaſe that is infectious. They are of a good ſtrong conſtitution, and may endure ſtrength in their medicines, eſpecially any

thing

thing that cooleth the blood.

If the horse participate more of the water then of the other elements, then is he of a flegmatike complexion, and his colour is either a milke white, a yellow dun, a kiteglewd or a pyedball, in whom there is an equall mixture of colours, that is, as much white as of the other colour: Otherwise if the bay, the blacke, or the dunne exceed the white, he is sayd to be of that complexion of which the colour is greatest. These horses are of nature slow, and apt to loose flesh; the diseases which are most incident vnto them, is colds, head-ache, rhumes, staggers, and such like. They are able to endure the reasonable strength of any medicine, because the aboundance of fleame which is in them, sufficeth both nature, and the potion to worke vpon: All cold simples are to them exceeding hurtfull, so are also they which are violently hot in the third degree; the first becaufe it bindeth to soone; the latter becaufe it disperseth too suddenly, therefore simples of a moderate meane are the best.

If the horse participate more of the earth then of the other elements, then is he of a melancholy complexion, and his colour a mouse dunne, russet, chesnut, a sky gray, darke bay, with mayly mouth, red or white flanke, or a reddish bay, hauing long white haire, like goates haire, growing on his legges. These horses are of nature heauy and faint-hearted: The diseases to them most incident, is inflammations in the *Spleene, Frenzie, Dropsie*, and such like. They are commonly of better strength then they will suffer to appeare by their actions, and are able to endure

endure the strength of any reasonable medicine: all cicatrizing and dry simples are hurtfull vnto them; the cold and moist are the most profitable.

Hauing thus shewed you these foure complexions, *Cholericke*, *Sanguine*, *Flegmaticke*, and *Melancholy*, together with their qualities and strengths, you shall vnderstand now that amongst Farriers there is another complexion, or fifth constitution, which is called the composition or mixture of complexions, that is, whensoeuer a horse doeth participate of all the foure elements equally and in due proportion, none being greater or lesser then another, and this complexion of all other is the best and most perfect; and the horse which is of this complexion, is euer of one of these colours, that is to say, either a faire browne bay, dapled or not dapled, a daple gray, a blacke full of siluer haire, or a faire roane redde or blacke. And these horses are of nature most excellent, most temperate, strongest, gentlest, and most healthfull; though they may haue any disease, yet are they naturally inclined to no disease; but what infirmity soeuer falleth vnto them, is meerely accidentall, and not through any ouer-flow of naturall distemperature. All medicines must be compounded for them according to the nature of the sickenesse, and the time of their languishment: For if the sickenesse be young, and new bred, then are they able to receiue any well composed receipt; but if it be old, and the inward powers and faculties feebled, then you must be carefull to helpe nature, by adding to euery medicine of what nature soeuer, some simple of comfort, that as euill humours bee cleansed, so

strength

strength may still be repaired and maintained. And thus much for complexions.

Chap. II.

Of inward sickenesse, the causes and seuerall kindes thereof.

SIth I haue already passed ouer all those things which haue a naturall and perfect working in horses body, and do maintaine, vphold and preserue the same in good state and health, except accidentally they be encountred and crossed by some excesse, or in dyet, or in exercise: it shall now be meete that we begin to speake of the things which be contrary and against nature, which are all those things whereby at any time the healthfull estate of the horses body is any way impeached; and they be three in number, that is, the *Causes*, the *Sickenesse*, and the *Accidents* which follow euery sickenesse.

Now the *Causes* of sickenesse are all vnnaturall affects, and euill dispositions, which going before, doe as it were by violence, bring sickenesse after them: And of these causes there be two sorts, some internall, some externall; the internall be those which breede within the body of the horse, as euill humours, euill obstructions and euill iuice. Externall are they which communicate with the outward parts of the body, as heate, cold, wounds, and such like, of which I shall speake more in the second booke: And for so much as I intend at the beginning of euery particular disease, to shew the cause of that disease, I will at this time speake no more of that subiect.

Now

Now for *Sickneſſe* it ſelfe, which is any thing that is contrary to nature, it is diuided into three generall kinds: the firſt, an *Euill temperature*, the ſecond, an *Euill State or compoſition*, and the third a *Looſening or diuiding of an vnity*. Now of theſe two latter, I intend not to ſpeake in this place, becauſe they appertaine to Surgery, which I reſerue for the ſecond book; but for the firſt kind, which is an euill temperature, it is taken two-fold, that is, either ſimple or compound; ſimple, when one quality onely doth abound, or exceed, as to be too moiſt or too dry: compound, when moe qualities then one doe grow into exceſſe, as for a horſe to be too hot and too dry, or too cold and too moiſt. Againe, ſickneſſes are ſayd ſome to be long, as conſumptions, glanders, and ſuch like, which linger and weare a horſe away by ſmall degrees. Some ſhort, as the ſtaggers, yellowes, anticor, and ſuch like, which as ſoone as they be perceiued, ſo ſoone they be mortall.

Now of inward ſickneſſes, ſome do occupy all the whole body, ſome but particular parts; thoſe which occupy the whole body, are feuers, the peſtilence, conuulſions, and ſuch like: thoſe which occupy parts, or members, are colds which annoy the head, ſurfeits which perplex the ſtomacke; and ſo likewiſe all outward infirmities proper to euery particular member, as ſplents vpon the legges, ſpauens on the houghes, pearles in the eyes, and ſuch like, as ſhall be amply ſhewed hereafter. And thus much for ſickneſſe and the ſeuerall kinds thereof.

CHAP.

Chap. 12.

Of the signes of sickenesse, and of what nature is consisteth.

THe signes and faces by which sickneſſe is diſcerned, are many, and almoſt numberleſſe; yet in the beſt ſort that I may, I will ſhew you ſuch and ſo many as ſhall amply ſerue for any mans vnderſtanding. Know then firſt that there be, according to the rules in Phyſicke, foure eſpeciall wayes to iudge of inward and outward infirmities. Firſt, by accidents, as by the ſhape, number, quantity, and place of the member grieued: For if it carry not his true proportion, or be more or leſſe in number or quantity, or out of his proper place, then queſtionleſſe it is diſeaſed. Secondly, by alteration of the quality, as when it is either too hot, too cold, too moiſt, or too dry. Thirdly, when any member in the body is hindered from doing his office; as when the eye cannot ſee, or the foote cannot tread. And fourthly, by excrements, as by his dung or vrine. But foraſmuch as in the ſpeculation of theſe qualities, many of the ignorant ſort may be either amazed, diſtract or deceiued, and that my deſire is to giue an abſolute ſatisfaction to all ſorts of people, I will briefly and plainly ſhew you the moſt vndeceiueable ſignes of all ſorts of inward ſickneſſes, as thus, If a horſe be ſlower in labour, or duller to the ſpurre then hee hath beene accuſtomed, if hee bee ſhorter breathed, if his eares hang downe more then they were wont, if his haire be more ſtaring, if his flankes be more then vſually hollow,

hollow, if he burne betwixt his eares, or about his pasternes, if in trauell his stomacke faile him, or his mouth that in labour was vsually wont to be foaming become dry; all these are most apparant signes of inward sicknesse.

When a horse holdeth down his head, which was wont to be of a cheerefull countenance, it is a signe either of a feuer, head-ache, or else foundring in the body.

If a horse be dimme of sight that was cleare sighted, it is a signe either of head-ache, the staggers, or sore eyes.

When a horse turneth his head backward to the place grieued, if it be to the right side, it is a signe of obstructions in the liuer; but if he turne it downe to his belly, then it is a signe either of cholicke, bots, or wormes.

When a horse hath water running from his mouth, it is a signe of the staggers, or the wet cough.

If a horses breath stinke, or foule matter issue from his nostrils, it is a signe of an vlcer in the nose or head; but if the matter be white, then it is a signe of glaunders: if the matter be blacke, then it is a signe of the mourning of the chine; but if the matter bee yellow, then it betokens the consumption of the liuer; but if hee cast litle lumpes out of his mouth, then it betokens the consumption or rottennesse of lungs.

If a horses body and breath be hot, it is a signe of a feuer, and heate of the stomacke, if therewithall he forsake his meate, it is a signe of inflamation in his liuer, and either of dry or moist yellowes.

If the temple of a horſes head be very hollow, it is a ſigne either of the ſtrangle, or old age.

Shortneſſe of breath, and a beating flanke, is a ſigne either of a feuer, or the ſtrangle; but if the paſſage of the throat be ſtopped, it is a ſigne the filme of the lungs is broken, and the ſpleene troubled, or elſe broken-winded.

If any thing lye on both ſides the fore-head, which may be felt beat, it is a ſigne of the ſtaggers.

If there be any ſwelling betweene the eares, it is a ſigne of the polle euill; ſwelling vnder the eare, a ſigne of the viues; and ſwelling in the mouth, a ſigne either of cankar, flaps or lampaſſe.

Swelling vnder the throat is a ſigne of the glanders; and ſwelling about the tongue rootes, a ſigne of the ſtrangle; but if there bee about the tongue rootes, nothing but little ſmall knots, like waxe kirnels, then it is a ſigne but of cold onely.

Swelling on the left ſide is a ſigne of a ſicke ſpleene. Swelling in the belly and legges, a ſigne of the dropſie, and ſwelling in the flanke of the cholicke onely.

To cough, or to offer to cough, is a ſigne either of the glaunders, of the mourning of the chine, of a feather in the weaſand, of the wet or dry cough, of the filme broken, of the dry malady, of a conſumption, or of foundring in the body.

Staggering is a ſigne either of a feuer, of the ſtaggers, or of ſwaying in the necke; but if he ſtagger, or rolle behind onely, then it is a ſigne either of foundring in the body, or of paine in the kidneyes.

Trembling is a ſigne of a feuer, or of foundring in the

the body: and here is to be noted, that a horse which trembleth after the drinking of cold water, hath, during that time of trembling, a very certaine fit of an ague; and if any Farrier or other, will but obserue it, he shall find that the horse, after he hath done trembling, will burne and glow in as great exteremity at least an houre and an halfe after; and some horses after their burning, will sweat also.

The hollownesse of a horses backe is a signe of the dry malady, or the dropsie.

Haire-staring is a signe either of a cold stomacke, or of foundring in the body, but generally of a cold.

If a horse stale with much paine, it is a signe either of foundring in the body, the wind cholicke, or the stone; and if the vrine which comes from him bee yellow, it is a signe of the glaunders; but if it be blackish and thicke, it is a signe of paine in the kidneyes.

Leannesse and gauntnesse is a signe of hide-bound, or of the consumption, of the dry malady, of foundring in the body, inflammation of the liuer, the yellowes, cholicke, or wormes.

Laxatiuenesse, or loosenesse of the body, is a signe of a hot liuer.

Costiuenesse in the body is a signe of dry yellows, or of diseases in the gaule.

If a horses dung stinke, it is a signe of a hot liuer; if it haue no smell, then of a cold liuer; but if it be vndigested, then either of consumption, or of a dry malady.

If a horse goe stiffe, it is a signe either of wrinching, hipping, stifling or foundring either in body or legs;

if he goe crouching behind and stiffe before, then the griefe is in his fore-legges; but if he goe onely weake behinde, then is the griefe in his hinder legges onely.

If a horse desire extraordinarily to lye downe on his right side, it is a signe of heat in the liuer. If on the left side, then of a diseased spleene; if he be oft vp and downe, finding no rest, then it is a signe of bottes, wormes, cholicke, or griping in the belly; if when he is downe he spread himselfe abroad, it shewes the dropsie; if he groane when he is downe, it shewes either a sicke spleene, moist yellowes, cholicke, bots, or filme broken; if hee be not able to rise when hee is downe, then either mortall weakenesse, foundring in the body or legges.

To be troubled with much winde is a signe either of griefe in the spleene, or losse of much blood.

If a horse forsake his meate it is a signe either of a feuer, head-ache, strangle, staggers, consumption, or dry malady, anticor, foundring in the body, a hot and consumed liuer, moist yellowes, cholicke, or the wormes; but if when he forsaketh his prouender, he doth, as it were, chauell or chaw a little hay, and in his chawing doth make a certaine sharpe noyse in his mouth, as if his tongue could not well part from the roofe without a kinde of chanking, it is then a certaine signe that the horse is troubled with the falling of the palate of the mouth, a disease which onely commeth by ouer-much trauell, or too sore a burthen.

If a horse desire to eate much, and drinke litle, it is a signe of a cold liuer; but if he desire to drinke much

and

and eate little, it is then a signe either of a feuer, rotten luugs, heate in the stomacke, heate in the liuer, or the dry yellowes.

If a horse both eate and drinke with an extraordinary greedinesse, it is a signe of rotten lungs, or a diseased spleene.

Lazy and heauy going, contrary to true nature, is a signe either of a feuer, sicke spleene, yellowes, or else obstructions of the liuer.

If a horse strike with his foote at his belly, it is a signe of the cholicke; but if when hee striketh, hee fiske with his taile also, then it is either bottes, or rough wormes.

If a horse be scabby and vlcerous all ouer his body, and about his necke, it is a signe of the mangie; if it bee an vlcer full of knottes, creeping alongst a veine, it is the farcy; if spreading abroad onely in one place, it is a canker; if the vlcer be hollow and crooked, it is a Fistula; but if it be a spungy Wart, full of blood, it is then an Anburie.

If a horses tongue hang out, and be swolne, it is a signe of the strangle.

To conc'ude, if a horse in health beate short, thicke, and fast in the flanke, it is a signe of sickneſſe in the lungs and lights, which we call broken-winded; with a world of other such like signes and tokens, as shall be more amply delared in euery particular chapter.

Chap. 15.

Generall obseruations in the Physicking of horses.

After you can by these signes and characters, iudge and approue either the health or sicknes of a horse, it is then necessary that you learne some generall rules and obseruations which belong to the physicking of a horse; least that either by your rashnesse, vnskilfulnesse or vncleanlinesse in what you goe about to do, you commit errors more grosse then the medicine you administer hath power to do good. Know then first, that whensoeuer you goe about to giue your horse any inward portion or drench, you must first take very carefull heede that your drinke be no more then milke warme: for there is nothing more mortall to a horse then the scalding of his stomacke. Next, you must be very carefull that you giue the drench easily and genly, least in making too much haste, the drinke passe into his wesand, or winde-pipe, and so force him to an extreame coughing, and almost suffocate him; which if it doe, you must then let his head loose, and walke him vp and downe till the passion be past. Lastly, you shall obserue, in giuing a drench, to draw out the horses tongue before you put in the horne, and then presently let it loose againe: for that will compell him to swallow whether he will or no. And this is principally to be vsed, when you giue your horse pilles, as butter and garlicke, butter and saunders, or butter and sauen. Also, euery drench will worke the better

better, the longer you keepe the ſicke horſe faſting, both before and after his medicine; wherein is likewiſe to be obſerued, that moderate excuſe (as gently walking, or trotting vp and downe; according to the horſes ſtrength after his drench receiued) is moſt wholeſome, and maketh the medicine worke a great deale the better.

You ſhall likewiſe obſerue if your horſes ſicknes be a feuer, to mixe alwayes your ſimples either with warme water, with hony, or with oyle; but if the diſeaſe be coughes, rhumes, or any thing that proceedeth of cold cauſes, then you ſhall mixe your ſimples with good Ale, or Wine; and if your horſe be brought low and weake with ſicknes, then you ſhall mixe your ſimples with milke or egges.

You ſhall alſo obſerue, that in blood-letting, you muſt take but halfe ſo much from a young colt, as from an old horſe; and but the fourth part from a yearling foale: alſo in letting blood, you muſt carefully regard the age and ſtrength of your horſe, taking more or leſſe according to his ability of body. Laſtly, letting of blood is either to diuert ſickneſſe and preſerue health, or to refreſh and coole the ſpirits, or to diminiſh blood, or elſe to purge groſſe and bad humors.

Obſerue before you let your horſe blood, firſt moderately to chafe or exerciſe him; then let him take reſt a day before his letting blood, and three dayes after; not forgetting that *Aprill* and *October* are the two principall ſeaſons of the yeare for that purpoſe, except vrgent occaſion be miniſtred.

Obſerue whenſoeuer you rake your horſe with

your hand (which is to draw his ordure out of his fundament when hee cannot dung) that then first you annoynt all your hand with sallet oyle; the like you must euer do when you put vp any suppositary; but when you administer any glister, you shall then but annoynt the glister pipe onely. Many other obseruations there are, which be more particular, and those you shall finde annexed to the seuerall cure of euery disease. Thus much then of these generall obseruations.

Chap. 14.

Of the vrine and excrements of a horse.

After you haue made your memory acquainted with the signes and obseruations before specified, and so in the end finde a horse, which by the demonstration of some of these signes appeareth most certainly to be sicke and diseased; my aduice is then (if conueniently you may, and that the violence of the sickneſſe doe not vrge the contrary) that before you administer any thing vnto him, in any case you see his vrine, from which vrine you shall reape these knowledges.

First, if the vrine of a horse be of a pale, whitish, yellow colour, like vnto amber, and therewithall somewhat strong smelling, and not very cleare, then you shall bee assured that the horse is in good state of body, strong and healthfull; but if it be extraordinary white, and as it were, creamy, then it is a signe the horse hath weake reines, and is subiect to the stone, and the stopping in the kidneyes.

If

If the vrine of a horſe be ſomewhat high coloured, bright and cleare like lamber, and not like amber, or like a cup of ſtrong march beere; then it ſheweth the horſe hath inflammation in his blood, and that hee hath either a feuer, or elſe ſome great ſurfeit; but if it be red like blood, then is his inflammation more great, and his ſurfeit is onely an ouer-heate, taken by ouer-riding; inſomuch that if preſent remedy be not applied, either by ſcouring, or other healthfull phyſicke, the horſe cannot chuſe but fall into ſome mortall ſickneſſe.

If the vrine of a horſe be of a pale greeniſh colour, thicke and flimy, it is a ſigne of a weake backe, and conſumption of the ſeede.

Laſtly, if the horſes vrine bee high coloured, yet therewithall cloudy, and full of blackneſſe, then it is a ſigne that the horſes ſickneſſe is mortall, and hardly to be preſerued by any phyſicke; but if the blackneſſe and cloudineſſe of the vrine doe not remaine, as it were, bound vp together in one body, but is broken and diſperſed, ſhewing many cloudes in one water, then it is a ſigne that the violence of the ſickeneſſe departeth away, and there is great hope, by good gouernment, that the horſe will recouer his health, as at the beginning.

Now for the excrements or dung of a horſe, which is no leſſe worthy of note then the vrine. You ſhall firſt vnderſtand, that if his dung be euer of alliance with his foode, I meane either in part or whole coloured like vnto that he eateth, as thus for example: If your horſe go at graſſe, his dung will euer be greene and the brighter ſuch greeneneſſe is, and being in a meane

meane betweene hardneſſe and ſoftneſſe, the ſounder and in moſt perfect eſtate the horſe ſtandeth; but if the greeneneſſe be bright, yet the ordure ſo ſoluble and looſe, that it commeth from the horſe like water, then you ſhall vnderſtand, that either the horſe hath eaten vp ſome feather, or elſe that he hath an inward coldneſſe both in his ſtomacke and bowels.

If a horſes dung be of a reaſonable thickneſſe, neither too coſtiue nor too ſoluble, yet the greeneneſſe inclined to ſome blackneſſe, it is a ſigne that the horſe hath a hot ſtomacke, and is eaſily ſubiect either to the yellowes or ſtaggers.

If the horſes dung be in round hard pellets, and of a blackiſh greene colour, like the dung of a ſheepe, or a Deere, then it is, without faile, that the horſe hath had ſome great ſurfeit, either by ouer-riding, or by ill food, or elſe is certainly poſſeſt either of the yellowes, or feuer, or foundred in the body.

Now if your horſe be fed onely vpon ſtraw, then his colour will be of a high coloured yellow, rather coſtiue then ſoluble, and the graine thereof long, and not well couched together: And all theſe be good ſignes of great healthfulneſſe, but if the colour be inclined to redneſſe, or if it be exceeding dry without moyſture; or if it be thinne, like the dung of an Oxe or a Cow, they be all apparant ſignes of inward ſickneſſe; but if the redneſſe turne to blackneſſe, and that his ordure doth looſe the ſtrength of its ſmelling, then it is a great ſigne of death and mortallity.

If your horſe be fed with hay and prouender, then your perfect and ſound dung will be of a browne yellow

yellow colour, the graine ſomewhat long, yet moiſt and well fixt together; but if the browneneſſe turne to redneſſe, it is a ſigne of diſtemperature; and if it turne to blackneſſe, then of death. Now for the ſmell of this dung, you muſt vnderſtand, that the more prouender you giue, the greater will be the ſmell, and the leſſe prouender, the leſſe ſmell.

Laſtly, if you feede your horſe onely vpon prouender, as bread, oates, and ſuch like, then the dung which ſhewes a perfect and a ſound body, will be of a pale yellow colour, like courſe hony, firme, like a thicke ſalue, hauing within it, when you tread vpon it, or breake it, little white graines, like thoſe which are in ſope; or if the dung be harder, like the ordinary ordure of a man, it is not amiſſe: For both be ſignes of health and ſtrength; but if the dung looke redde, then it is a ſigne that the horſe hath taken ſome inward heate, and his ſtomacke and bowels do reſt ſtill inflamed.

If his dung be browne and ſlimy, or if it ſhine and looke greaſie, it is a ſigne that he hath had ſome of his inward greaſe molten, and that it reſteth and putrifieth in his body; but if with his dung you ſee him voyd great clods and lumps of greaſe, then you may bee aſſured that his greaſe was molten, but nature hath ouercome infirmity, and the worſt danger is paſt already; but if the dung be matter vndigeſted, ſo that you may either perceiue therein whole cornes, or whole bits of bread, it is a ſigne the horſe hath either a late ſurfeite, or is entring into a mortall conſumption. Laſtly, if his dung be blacke, or haue loſt the ſmell, it is an apparant ſigne of death.

And

And thus much for vrine and excrements, and the seuerall knowledges attained by them.

Chap. 15.
Of Feuers in generall, and the diuers kindes thereof.

That horses haue Feuers, and those Feuers of diuers and sundry natures, there is nothing more certaine, as by strict obseruation may daily bee perceiued, especially when either we vse much trauell, or disorderly diet: for questionlesse from these two, and none other heads, do spring most feuers whatsoeuer. But first, that I may giue you an account what a horses feuer is, you shall know that it is an vnnaturall and immoderate heate, which proceeding first from the heart, disperseth it selfe not only through all the atteries, but euen the veines of a horses body, and thereby hindereth all the actions and wholesome motions of the same. Now of Feuers some Farriers make three sorts: The first, those which breed in the spirits, being inflamed and set on fire beyond the ordinary course of nature: The second, those which breede in the humours, being likewise distempered by heate: And the third, those which breed in the firme parts of the body, and are continually hot. Now I, for your better memory, will diuide them onely into two parts, that is to say: Ordinary, and extraordinary. The ordinary Feuers are all those which are bredde either in the spirits or in the humours, as namely, *Quotidians*, *Tertians*, *Quartans*, *Feuers continuall*, *Feuers Hectique*,

Feuers

Feuers in *Autumne*, *Summer*, or *Winter*. And the feuers extraordinary are all those which are bred in the firme parts of the body, and are euer hot, as *Pestilent Feuers*, and the *Plague*, which euer are acoompanied with vlcers; and the *Feuer accidentall*, which proceedeth from the anguish and paine of some mortall wound.

Now for the causes from whence these feuers do proceed: you shall vnderstand that all these which I call ordinary feuers, do generally spring either from surfeit by extreme labour, or from surfeit by naughty meat, as raw pease, raw fitches, raw oates, mouldy and vnwholesome bread, and such like: Sometimes they doe proceede from the extreame violence and heate of the Sunne beames; when trauelling with disorderly haste in the extremest heate of the day, those two heates mixing together, labour and the Sun, there cannot chuse but bee bred in the horse some mortall inflammation: and for mine owne part I haue seene horses fall downe dead in the high way: For whose deaths I could finde no reason more then their labour, and the heate of the Sunne. Feuers somtimes spring from a contrary cause, as from extreeme cold, in this manner: When a horse in the VVinter time hath beene trauelled sore all the day, and is brought into the house hot, if after his blood and inward powers are setled and cooled, you then presently, or the same night, giue him cold water as much as hee will drinke, you shall see him out of hand fall into an extreeme quaking, and from that quaking into a violent burning, with all other distemperatures of a Feuer.

Now

Now for extraordinary feuers, they euer proceede either from corruption of blood, or from infection of the ayre; and al-be-it these feuers are not vsually knowne vnto our Farriers, yet they are as common as the former; onely the violence of them is so great, and the poyson so strong, that they euer carry with them some other mortall sickneſſe, as namely, *Staggers*, *Yellowes*, *Anticor*, and such like, which neuer are, but a peſtilent feuer euer goeth before them. And they, like the markes of the plague, are seldome seene till the cure be desperate; and then the vnskilfull Farrier, neither noting, nor knowing if hee did note, the effects of the feuer, doth euer mis-call the name of the horses infirmity, and taking the lesser for the greater, failes many times to doe the good office and cure which hee intendeth.

Now the signes to know a Feuer, be these: First, he will euer hold downe his head, he will quake and tremble; but when his trembling is past, then will his body burne, and his breath bee hot, hee will breathe fast, and his flanke will beate; he will reele, he will forsake his meat, his eyes will bee swolne and closed vp, yet therewithall much watring; his flesh will, as it were, fall from his bones, and his stones will hang downe low, he will oft lye downe, and oft rise vp againe; all his desire will be to drinke; yet at no time drinke much; neither will hee at any time sleepe.

Now for the generall cure of these generall feuers, you shall vnderstand, that some Farriers vse to let the horse blood in the face, temples, and palate of the

the mouth, and the first day to giue him no meate, but warme drinke onely, by a little at a time; and after, the finest grasse, or finest hay wet in water, keeping him warme, and often walking him vp and downe in a temperate aire, and giuing him good store of litter; then when he begins to mend, to feede him with barley sodden, huskt and beaten, as you do wheate before you make furmity. And this cure is not amisse, for it agreeth with the ancient experience of the *Italians*; but in our *English* horses, (through the clyme as I suppose) if often faileth.

The best cure therefore that I haue found, is, as soone as you perceiue him to beginne shake, to giue him the yolkes of three or foure egges, beaten with seuen or eight spoonefull of Aqua-vitæ, to drinke, and then chafe him vp and downe till his shaking be past, and then set him vp close and warme, and with many cloathes, make him sweat an houre: Let his food be oates very well dried and sifted, and one day some washt in Ale. If his shaking fit be past before you perceiue his sickneſſe, you shall onely giue him a pint of Muskadine, and an ounce of Sugar-candy beaten to powder, and brewd together, to drinke, and so let him rest, feeding him by little and little, as aforesaid, and giuing him no water but such as is warme; and this order you shall obserue at the beginning of euery fit, if you can note them; or else euery morning, if his sickneſſe haue no ceasſing.

CHAP.

Chap. 16.
Of the Quotidian, or one dayes Feuer, and the cure.

THe *Quotidian*, or one dayes feuer, is that which taketh a horse, and holdeth him with one fit once euery day; it will at first appeare somewhat violent, but seldome or neuer endureth long, if the Farrier haue any discretion. It proceedeth most commonly from extreeme riding, either after water, or a full stomacke; and then suddenly after his heate, being thrust into a stable, and neither stopt nor rubbed, a sudden coldnesse to that sudden heat, begets a shaking, and so consequently the effects of a Feuer.

The signes to know it, are watrish and blood-shotten eyes, short and hot-breathing, panting, loathing of his meate, and stiffnesse in his limbes; but aboue these, to know it is a *Quotidian*, you shall obserue that these signes, together with the sickenesse, will not last aboue sixe or eight houres in one day, and then he will be cheerefull and in health againe, till very neere the same houre of the next day, at what time his fit will begin againe. And here is to be noted, that the more it altereth the houres, the more hope there is of his health, as if it take him at seuen of the clocke of the one day, and at three of the clocke of the other, and so forth. The cure is: You shall onely during his fit, giue him nothing but a sweete mash made of malt and water, beeing lukewarme, and walke him gently vp and downe in a temperate

temperate aire; then as soone as his fit is past, you shall set him vp, and rub his body and legges exceedingly: then foure houres after you shall giue him this drinke. Take of strong Ale a quart, and boyle therein halfe a handfull of wormewood, of long pepper and graines two ounces, of the best treacle two ounces, and of the powder of dried rue one ounce: Now when a third part of the Ale is consumed, take it from the fire and straine it; then put therein three ounces of suger-candy, beaten to powder; then when it is luke-warme, giue it him with a horne to drinke. Do this twice at the least, or thrice, if his fits continue, and there is no doubt but he will recouer.

Chap. 17.
Of the Tertian Feuer.

THe *Tertian* feuer is that which cometh euery other day, holding the horse with one sicke day, and one sound: It is not so violent as the *Quotidian*, but much longer lasting; it happeneth oftest in the Spring time of the yeare, when blood begins to encrease, and most commonly to colts and young horses: it proceeds of the same causes that the *Quotidian* doth, and sometimes of rankenesse, and ill blood. The signes to know it, are all the signes formerly spoken of, and this as the chiefest, that the horse will be apparantly sicke, as it were on the Munday, then apparantly well on the Twesday, and sicke on the Wednesday following. This feuer is neuer seene, but it beginneth with shaking. The cure therefore

is, as soone as you perceiue the horse to beginne to shake, you shall take a certaine hearbe, or rather weede, called stone-crop, and bruising it in a mortar, take some foure spoonefull of the iuyce thereof, and infuse it in a quart of strong Ale, and giue it the horse to drinke; then walke him gently vp and downe in some temperate aire for an houre, then set him vp, and with the helpe of clothes put him into a sweate for an other houre, then coole him; and in any wise till his fittes leaue him, let him drinke no cold water, and let his Prouender bee the oldest and dryest Oates you can get, onely vpon his good dayes before his fittes come, keepe him very long fasting and empty.

Chap. 18.

Of the Quartan Feuer.

THe *Quartan* Feuer is that which some Farriers call a third dayes sicknes, as thus. If his fit begin on the Munday hee will be well on the Tuesday and Wednesday, and sicke againe on the Thursday. It proceedeth from the same causes that the *Tertian* feuer doth, yet in his working is not so apparently violent, but of much longer continuance: for if great care and helpe bee not, these feuers will last some a quarter of a yeare, some halfe a yeare, and some a whole yeare. There needes no other signe to know it, then the comming and going of the fittes, as hath beene declared already. And for the cure, it is the selfe same which is described in the former chapter for the *Tertian* feuer: onely if his fits doe not leaue

him

him at the first taking of the medicine, you shall then giue it him againe the second time, but not aboue thrice at the most in any wise.

Chap. 19.

Of the Feuer continuall.

The *Feuer Continuall* is that which continueth without any intermission, and it is most dangerous and violent: for there is in it the effects of all the former feuers, euer one taking place as the other endeth; as a *Quotidian* beginning, is pursued by a *Tertian*, and a *Tertian* by a *Quartan*, and those two supply so many houres till the *Quotidian* doth begin againe. This kinde of continuall feuer most often springeth from some inflammation or violent heate ingendred in the principall members about the heart: and the signes thereof are want of rest, and falling away of the flesh, besides certaine inflammations or swellings, which will appeare about his withers & flankes. The cure is, first to purge his head by neesing, the manner whereof you shall finde in a particular chapter hereafter; which done you shall giue him this drinke. Take of Iermander two ounces, of gumme dragant, and dryed Roses, of each halfe an ounce, beat them into fine powder, and put them into a quart of Ale, adding thereunto of oyle Oliue two ounces, and as much hony; and when it is lukewarme giue it the horse to drinke: then walke him a little space, and after set him vp close and warme, keepe him from cold water, and let his prouender be dry oates.

Chap. 20.

Of the Hectique Feuer.

THe *Hectique* feuer in horſes, is a dangerous and mortall feuer, being in a horſe the firſt originall breeder of a conſumption, it is a certaine hot and dry humor which runneth betweene the skinne and the fleſh, proceeding from a ſicke ſtomacke, which hauing bin ſcalded with hot drinkes (as thoſe ill dieted running horſes be, which feed vpon much ſpice, or thoſe which take hot drenches vppon euery fooliſh and ſlight occaſion) hath almoſt cleane loſt the power of digeſtion: It ſometimes happens to thoſe horſes which men too carefully teaching to drinke Beere and Wine, do ſo continually apply them thereunto, that in the end they become ſubiect to this ſickneſſe. The ſignes to know it is: the horſe will neuer eate with any appetite, and when you draw out his tongue, you ſhall finde it raw, and almoſt ſcalded; his fleſh will bee looſe and flaggy, and his body ſubiect to a continuall trembling. The cure is, firſt waſh his tongue either with the ſirrop of Mulberies, or with Allome, running water, ſage & woodbinde leaues, boiled together; then giue him faſting in a morning, this drinke. Take of Aloes one ounce, of Garlicke halfe an ounce, of Licoras and Aniſeeds of each a dram, beaten to powder, and let him drinke it with a quart of white wine, luke-warme, and made ſweet with ſugar-candy or hony; let him drinke no drinke but warme maſhes of malt and water, and let his meate be ſweet hay, or greene Corne

blades

blades; and euer after his medicine let him be chafed a little, kept fasting two or three houres, and stand warme and well clothed.

Chap. 21.

Of the Feuer taken in Autumne, or the fall of the leafe.

ALl these feuers before spoken of, do for the most part, commonly happen to horses in the spring time of the yeare, by reason that the new blood is euer apt est to be inflamed; yet notwithstanding we finde by experience, that feuers will sometimes come at the fall of the leafe, which we cal *Autumne*, & they are of longer continuance then the other. The signes are none other but such as I haue already declared: For they are the same feuers, onely altering the time of the yeare. If therefore your horse doe chance to catch a feuer at the fall of the leafe, you shall let him blood on his necke veine, and in the palate of his mouth, and you shall giue him to drinke the same drinke which is formerly set downe for the feuer continuall, and there is no doubt of his recouery.

Chap. 22.

Of the Feuer taken in the Summer Season.

A Feuer taken in the Summer season is the worst of all ordinary Feuers whatsoeuer, especially all such as are taken in the Dogge-daies; because, according to the opinion of Farriers, all accidents are then most furious: the especiall signes of this Feuer

are, that his arteries will beate most palpably, and whersoeuer he staleth, there you shall perceiue he sheddeth his seed also. The cure, according to the ancients, is to let him blood on the great veine which he hath on his hinder haunch, almost foure inches beneath his fundament; but for mine owne part, because that veine is not easily found of euery ignorant Smith, and that many times by mistaking, they may cut the artery in stead of the veine, I hold it fully as good to let him blood on the necke veine; which done, giue him to drinke, two houres and a halfe after, this drinke. Take the iuyce of a handfull of purslaine, and mixe it with gumme dragant, anise seedes, and damaske rose leaues beaten to powder; then put them into a quart of strong ale, made sweet either with sugar-candy, or hony, and faile not to giue him this drinke three mornings together, keeping the horse warme during his sicknesse.

Chap. 23.

Of the Feuer taken in the Winter season.

A Feuer taken in the Winter, is not so dangerous touching the life of a horse, as the Feuer before mentioned; yet is it a feuer which will continue long and aske great circumspection in the cure: the causes thereof are the same which are formerly described; and the signes are no other then hath beene already declared. Touching the cure it is thus: you shall first purge his head by making him neese; that done, you shall let him blood both in the necke, and the palate of the mouth, and then two houres and a halfe after

giue

giue him this drinke. Take of rue three ounces, of round pepper halfe an ounce; of bay berries and the seed of smallage, of each halfe an ounce; boyle these in white wine, and giue it him to drink luke-warme. Other Farriers vse to take a pint of new milke, and to put therein two ounces of sallet oyle, of saffron one scruple, and of mirre two scruples, of the seede of smallage a spoonfull, and to make him drinke it luke-warme; but the horse which taketh this drink, must be in good strength, for if he be brought low, it is somewhat too strong.

The ancient *Italians* did vse for this feuer, to giue this drinke: Take of *Aristolochia* halfe an ounce, of Gentian, of Hysope, of wormwood, of Southernwort of each halfe an ounce, of dry fat figs three ounces, of the seede of smallage an ounce and an halfe, of rue halfe an handfull; boyle them all with running water in a cleane vessell, till almost halfe be consumed; then when it beginnes to thicken, take it from the fire, straine it, & giue it the horse luke warme. Now there are not any of these drinkes but are sufficient for the cure; but the first is best. Now for his dyet, bee sure to keepe him fasting long before his fits come, & let his drink be onely warme mashes of malt and water. Now if you perceiue that his fits continue, & bring the horse to any weakenesse, you shal then to comfort and quicken the naturall heate of the horse, rub and chafe all his body ouer either in the Sunne, or by some soft fire, with some wholesome friction, of which frictions you shall finde choyce in a particular chapter hereafter following, together with their seuerall natures and vses.

Chap. 24.

Of the Feuer which commeth by surfeit of meate onely.

THe Feuer which cometh by surfeit of meat only, without either disorder in trauell, or corruption of blood, is knowne by these signes: The horse will heaue and beate vpon his backe, his breath will be short, hot, and dry, and his winde hee will drawe onely at his nose with great violence. The cure therefore is, you shall let him blood in his necke, vnder his eyes, and in the palate of his mouth, you shall also purge his head by making him neese, then keepe him with very thinne diet, that is, let him fast for more then halfe of the day, and let him not drinke aboue once in foure and twenty houres, and that drinke to bee warme water: You shall also once or twice chafe his body with a wholesome friction; and if, during his cure, hee chance to grow costiue, you shall cause him to be raked, and afterward giue him either a suppositary, or a glister, of both which, and of their seuerall natures, you shall read sufficiently in a Chapter following.

Chap. 25.

Of Feuers extraordinary, and first of Pestilent Feuers.

VVE find by many ancient *Italian* writers, that both the *Romans*, and others their countrimen, haue by experience found many horses subiect

to

to this pestilent Feuer, which is a most contagious and pestiferous disease, almost incurable; and for mine owne part, I haue seene it in many colts and young horses. Surely it proceedeth, as I iudge, either from great corruption of blood, or from infection of the ayre. The signes thereof is, the horse will hold downe his head, forsake his meate, shed much water at his eyes, and many times haue swellings or vlcers rising a little below his eare rootes. The cure is, first you shall not faile to let him blood in the neckeveine: then two or three houres after you shall giue him a glister: then make him this plaister: Take of Squilla fiue ounces, of Elder, of Castoreum, of Mustard-seede, and of Euforbium, of each two ounces; dissolue the same in the iuyce of Daffadill and Sage, and lay it all about the temples of his head, and betweene his eares: then giue him to drinke for three or foure dayes together, euery morning; two ounces of the best Treacle dissolued in a pint of good Muskadine.

The *Italians* vse to giue him diuers mornings, a pound of the iuyce of Elder rootes, or in stead of his hay, a good quantity of that hearbe which is called *Venus Haire*; but if the time of the yeare be such, that they cannot haue it greene, then they boyle it in water, and straine it, and giue it him to drinke; but I hold the first drinke to be most sufficient, his dyet being thin, and his keeping warme.

CHAP.

Chap. 26.

Of the Plague or Pestilence in Horses, of some called the gargill, or murraine.

THIS Pestilence, Murraine, or Gargill in horses, is a contagious and most infectious disease, proceeding either from surfeite of heate, cold, labour, or hunger, or any other thing breeding corrupt humors in a horses body, as the holding too long of his vrine, drinking when he is hot, or feeding vppon grosse, foule, and corrupt foodes, as in low grounds after flouds, when the grasse is vnpurged, and such like. Sometimes it springs from some euill influence of the Planets, corrupting the plants and fruites of the earth, and cattell too sometimes also, and from diuers other such like causes; but howsoeuer, when the disease beginneth, certaine it is, that it is most infectious, and if there be not care and preuention vsed, of multitudes, it will not leaue one. Not any of the ancient *Italian* Farriers, nor any of our *English* Farriers that I haue met with, doe or can yeeld me any signe or token to know this disease, more then that one or two must first dye, and then by their deaths I must adiudge and preuent what will follow; but they are mistaken: For this disease is as easily knowne by outward signes, as any disease whatsoeuer; as namely, the horse will begin to lowre and hang downe his head; and within two or three dayes after such lowring, you shall see him begin to swell vnder his eare rootes, or vnder the rootes of his tongue, and that swelling will run vniuersally

uerſally ouer all one ſide of his face, being very extreme hard and great. Moreouer all his lips, mouth and whites of his eyes will be exceeding yellow, and his breath will be ſtrong, and ſtinke exceedingly.

The cure of this diſeaſe, according to the manner of the *Italians* and *French-men*, is firſt to ſeparate the ſound from the ſicke, euen a farre diſtance from that ayre where the ſicke breatheth; then let them blood in the necke veines, and giue euery one ſeuerally to drinke, two ſpoonefull of the powder of *Diapente* brewd in a pint of ſtrong ſacke, of the compoſition of which *Diapente*, and of the particular vertues thereof, you ſhall reade in a Chapter following. If you cannot readily get this *Diapente*, you may then take a pint of *Muskadine*, and diſſolue in it two ounces of the beſt Treacle, and it will ſerue the turne. Queſtionleſſe theſe medicines are both exceeding good, for they are great preſeruatiues againſt all infections; yet that which I haue found, farre to exceede them, and to bee moſt excellent not onely for this plague amongſt horſes, but for the plague or murraine (of ſome called the Mountaine euill) amongſt beaſts, is this. Take a good quantity of old vrine, and mixe therewithall a good quantity of Hens dung, ſtirre them well together till the dung be diſſolued: Then with a horne giue to euery horſe or beaſt a pint thereof luke-warme. This haue I ſeene helpe hundreds.

CHAP.

Chap. 27.
Of the Feuer accidentall, comming by some wound receiued.

IF a horse shall receiue any grieuous and sore wound, either by stroke or thrust, by which any of the vitall powers are let or hindered: Certaine it is, that the paine and anguish of such wounds will bring a horse to a hot feuer, and then his life is in great danger: besides, a horse being naturally subiect to moyst distillation in his throate, there will many times rise therein great swellings and vlcers, through the paine whereof a horse will fall into a burning ague.

The signes whereof are, that he will couet much to drinke, but cannot drinke, and his flesh will fall away in much extraordinary fashion.

The cure, besides the remedies before mentioned, is, to let him blood vnder his eares, and in the mouth: and then to take a fine Manchet, and cutting it in slices, steepe it in Muskadine, and compell him to swallow them: It shall also be good if once in three dayes you steepe your Manchet in Sallet Oyle, and make him eate it. As for his drinke let it bee onely warme Mashes of Malt and Water, which if he cannot drinke, you shall then giue it him with a Horne. And thus much touching Feuers both ordinary and extraordinary.

Chap.

Chap. 28.
Of the diseases in the Head.

AS a horses head is composed of many parts, so are those many parts subiect to many and sundry grieuances, as namely, the panicles or thin skins, which cleauing to the bones, do couer the whole braine, are subiect to head-ache, mygram, dizinesse, and amazes; the whole braine it selfe is properly subiect to breed the frenzy, madnesse, sleeping euill, the taking and forgetfulnesse. And here is to be noted, that many Farriers, and those of approued good skils, haue strongly held opinions, that horses haue very little, or no braines at all: And my selfe for mine owne part, being carried away with their censures, did at last, vpon good considerations, cut vp the heads of diuers horses, some dead, some in dying, and could neuer finde any liquid or thin braine, as in other beasts, but onely a very thicke, strong, tough and shining substance, solid and firme, like a tough ielly, which I euer held to be onely a panicle, and so resolued with others, that a horse had no braine; but after, vppon further discourse with men of better learning, I had this resolution giuen mee: That a horse being a beast of extraordinary strength and ability, made euen to endure the worst of all extremities, either by sore labour or heauy burthen, that nature in his creation had endowed him with members answerable to such vigor: As namely, that his braine was not liquid and moyst, as subiect to fleete, or to be distempered with euery small disorder, but tough

tough and hard, euen vnpenetrable, and not to be pierst by any reasonable motion. And for the panicles, they shewed me those thinne skinnes ouer and besides that great substance; so that by experience I saw, and now know, that a horse hath both braine and a panicle, and in them two are bred the diseases before mentioned. Now in the ventricles, or cels of the braine, and in those conduits by which the liuely spirits giue feeling and motion to the body, there do breede the turne-sicke, or sturdy, the staggers, the falling euill, the night-mare, the Apoplexie, the palsey and Convulsion, or Crampe, the Catharre, or Rhume, and lastly the Glaunders. And thus much of the head in generall.

Chap. 29.

Of Head-ache, or paine in the head.

THe head-ache is a paine that commeth either of some inward cause, or of some cholericke humor gathered together in the panicles of the braine, or else of some extreame heate or cold, or of some suddaine blow, or of some noysome sauour. The signes are, the hanging downe of the horses head and eares, dropping of his vrine, dimnesse of sight, swolne and watrish eyes. The cure, according to the opinion of some of our English Farriers, is to let him blood in the eye veines, and to squirt warme water into his nostrils, and for that day giue him no meate; the next morning fasting giue him warme water and some grasse, at night giue him barley and fitches mixt together, and so keepe him warme till he

hee bee sound, but this cure I do not fancy, the best helpe is, first to make him neese by fuming him, then let him blood in the palate of the mouth, and keepe him fasting at least twelue houres after: then powre into his nostrils wine, wherein hath beene sodden Fuforbium, Frankinsence, and after feed him, and keepe his head warme.

Chap. 30.
Of the Frenzy and Madnesse of a Horse.

THe madnesse of a horse by the most ancient and best approued Farriers, is diuided into foure passions: The first is, when some naughty blood doth strike the panicle of the braine but in one part onely, it presently makes the horse dull both of minde and sight: And you shall know it by this signe, the horse will turne round like a beast that is troubled with the sturdy; the reason being, because the outside of the head is grieued onely. The second is, when the poyson of such blood doth infect the middle part of the braine: Then the horse becommeth franticke, leaping against walles or any thing. The third is, when that blood filleth the veines of the stomacke, and infecteth as well the heart as the braine: Then is he sayd to be man. But the fourth and last is, when that blood infecteth not onely the braine and heart, but euen the panicles also, and then is his sayd to be starke mad, which you shall know by his biting at euery man which comes neere him, by his gnawing of the manger and walles about him. And lastly, by tearing his owne skin in peeces.

Now

Now for the cure, you ſhall cauſe him to bee let blood in all the lower parts of his body, to draw the blood from his head, as namely, on the ſhackle-veines the ſpurre-veines, the plat-veines, and the thigh-veines, and you ſhall let him blood aboundantly, then giue him this drinke: Take the roote of wilde Cowcumber, and where that cannot bee gotten, take a handfull of rue and mints, and a handfull of blacke Eleborus, and boyle them in ſtrong red Wine, and giue it luke-warme to the horſe in a horne.

Some vſe to giue mans dung with Wine, three mornings together; and alſo to rub his body ouer with a friction at leaſt twice a day, and not to faile to giue him moderate exerciſe.

Others vſe to pierce the skin of his head with a hot yron, to let out the ill humors.

Others, as the moſt certaine of all medicines, vſe to geld him of both, or one ſtone at the leaſt; but I like it not for mine owne part: The cure I haue euer vſed for this griefe, was either to make him ſwallow downe hard Hennes dung, or elſe to giue him to drinke the roote of *Virga Paſtoris* ſtamped in water; and for his ordering during the cure, I would haue his Stable quiet, but not cloſe, and his foode only warme maſhes of Malt and Water, yet but a very little at one time, for the thinneſt dyet is beſt.

Chap. 31.
Of the Sleeping euill, or Lethargy in Horses.

THe sleeping euill is an infirmity which maketh a horse to sleepe continually, depriuing him thereby both of memory, appetite, and all alacrity of spirit. It is most incident to white and dunne horses, because it proceedeth onely from flegme, cold and grosse which moistning the braine too much, causeth heauinesse and sleepe. There needes no other signe more then his sleeping onely. The cure is to keepe him waking whether he will or no, with great noises, and affrights: then let him blood in the necke, and the palate of the mouth, and giue him to drinke water luke warme, wherein hath been boiled camomill; mother-wort, wheate, branne, salt and vinegar; you shall also perfume his head, and make him neese, and annoynt the palate of his mouth with hony and mustard mixt together: It shall not be amisse, if with the ordinary water which he drinketh, you mixe either parsley seede, or fennell seede, for that will prouoke vrine: you shall also bathe his legges and stop his hooses with bran, salt, and vinegar boyled together, and applied as hotte as may be, and his stable would be lightsome and full of noyse.

Chap. 32.
Of a horse that is taken, or of Shrow-running.

THose horses are supposed by Farriers to bee taken, or as some call it, Planet-strooke, which are

depriued of feeling or of mouing, not being able to ſtirre any member, but remaineth in the ſame forme as he was at his time of taking. Some hold it proceedeth of choler and fleame, when they are ſuperaboundantly mixt together, or of melancholy blood, which being a cold dry humour, doth oppreſſe and ſicken the hinder part of the braine. Other ancient Fartiers hold, it commeth of ſome extreame cold, or extreame heate, or raw diſgeſtion, ſtriking into the empty veines ſuddenly; or elſe of extreame hunger cauſed by long faſting. The ſignes thereof are numneſſe, and want of motion before ſpoken of: as for the cure it is diuers; for firſt you muſt note whether it come of cold, or heate: if it come of cold, you ſhall know it by the ſtuffing and poze in the head, which is euer ioyned with the diſeaſe: if of heate, by the hotneſſe of his breath, and cleare fetching of his wind. Now if it proceed from cold, you ſhall giue him to drinke one ounce of *Lacerpitium* mixt with Sallet Oyle and Muskadine luke-warme: if it proceed of heat, you ſhall giue one ounce of *Lacerpitium* with water and hony luke-warme: but if it proceede of crudity or raw diſgeſtion, then you ſhall helpe him by faſting; and if it proceed of faſting, then you ſhall heale him by feeding him often with good meate, as with wholeſome bread, and dry Oates; yet but a little at a time, that he may euer eate with a good ſtomacke.

Now for the Frence Farriers, as Monſieur *Horace* and the reſt, who call this diſeaſe *Surprius*, they hold it commeth onely from cold cauſes, following hot accidents; & they vſe for their cure to let him blood

on

on the breast veines, and then put him into a sweate, either by exercise, or multiplicitie of clothes, but many clothes is better, because the horse is not capable of labour: and sometimes they will bury him all saue the head in an old dunghill, till through the heate thereof his limbes receiue such feeling that hee beginnes to struggle out of the same. All which cures are not much amisse; yet in mine opinion, this is the best, easiest, and surest way: First to let him blood in the necke and breast, then to annoint all his body with oyle *Petrolium*, then giue him this drinke. Take of Malmsey three pints, and mixe it with a quarterne of sugar, cynamon and cloues, and let him drinke it luke warme: then take old rotten wet litter, and for want thereof, wet hay, and with clothes, surfingles and cordes, swaddle all his whole body ouer with the same of a good thickenesse, and renew it once in three dayes till he be whole, let his stable bee warme, his exercise moderate, and if he grow costiue, let him first be raked, & after giue him either a glister, or suppositary, according to his strength. There is also anorher kind of taking, & that is when a horse is Planet-strooke; or stricken with thunder; but it is vtterly incurable, and therefore I will omit to speake further of it. The last kind of taking is when a horse is Shrow-runne, that when a horse lieth sleeping, there is a certaine venemous field mouse called a Shrow, whose head is extraordinary long, like a Swines head, & her feete shorter of the one side then the other. This Mouse if she happen to runne ouer any of the limbes of the horse, presently the horse leeseth the vse of that limbe she ran ouer; and if she

runne ouer his body, he commonly looseth the vse of his hinder loynes; and these accidents hauing beene often found vnexpected, common Farriers haue held the horse to bee taken, or planet-strooke. As for the cure thereof, the best is to seeke out a brier which groweth at both ends, and take the horse or beast that is thus vexed, and draw him vnder the same, and it is a present remedy. For mine owne part, I haue heard much, both of the infirmity, and of the cure, but I haue had no experience of it, but onely in one young foale, which being suddenly lame, was as suddenly helped to my much contentment.

Chap. 33.

Of the Staggers.

THe Staggers is a dizzy madnesse of the braine, proceeding from corrupt blood, or grosse, tough, and heauy humors, which oppresse and make sicke the braine, and from whence proceedeth a vaporous spirit, dissolued by a weake heat which troubleth all the whole head; it is almost of all diseases the most common, yet very mortall and dangerous: it commeth many times from surfeit of meat, surfeit of trauell, or from corruption of blood. The signes to know it, is dimnesse of sight, swolne and watrish eyes, a moist mouth, staggering and reeling of the horse, and beating of his head against the walles, or thrusting it into his litter. The cure is diuers: for almost euery Smith hath a seuerall medicine, yet these which I shall rehearse are the most approued.

The

The ancient Farriers, both *Italians* and *French*, vſe to let the horſe blood in the temple veines, and then with a knife make an hole an inch long ouer-thwart his fore-head, vnderneath his fore-top, and raiſing the skin vp with a cornet ſome two or three inches about, ſtop the hollowneſſe with a taint dipt in turpentine and hogges greaſe mo'ten together; but ſome of our Smiths finding this cure faile, except the diſeaſe be very young, vſe to ſtop the hollowneſſe with a docke roote. Others with a cloue or two of garlicke. Others vſe for this diſeaſe to take ſelladine, and ſtamping it, to ſtop it into his eares, and ſo tie vp his eares, or ſtitch the tips of his eares together, that hee may not ſhake the medicine out. Others vſe to mix ſalt and water together thicke, and to put it into his eares. Others vſe to mix groundſill and Aqua-vitæ together, and to put that into his eares. Others vſe to take garlicke, rue and bay ſalt, and beate them groſly, then mixe vinegar with them, and put it into the horſes eares, then wet wool or tow in the medicine, and ſtop that in his eares alſo: let the medicine reſt ſo foure and twenty houres, and if he forſake his meate, waſh his tongue with vinegar, and it will recouer his ſtomacke. Others vſe, firſt to perfume the horſes head to make him neeſe, then to take halfe a handfull of ſelladine, and as much hearbe of grace, three or foure cloues of garlicke, and a little bay ſalt, and ſtampe them altogether: then mixe therewith two or three ſpoonefull of vinegar or verdges, and thruſt it hard into the horſes eares: then tie vp his eares with a ſoft inckle ſtring, that no aire may come in, and let this medicine remaine

the space of a day and a night: then let him blood in the necke veine, and giue him a comfortable drench, of which drenches you shall find great plenty, together with their vses, in a chapter following. There be some Smiths which onely take rue and selladine, of each a like quantitie, and stamping them with white salt, thrust it into the horses eare, and it helpeth. Others take an ounce and a halfe of the oyle of bitter almonds, two drams of an oxe gall, an halfe peny in blacke *Ellaber* stamped, and fiue drams of the graines of *Casterum*, vinegar and verdges, seeth them all together till the vinegar be consumed, then straine them, and put it into the horses eares. All these medicines haue beene diuers times approued to be singular good, and for mine owne apart, I haue found great effect in them, yet that which I haue found at all times most excellent, is, if the disease be young and early taken, (that is, before the horse be growne into any extreamity of weaknes) to take onely verdges and bay salt, and mixing them well together, to stoppe it into the horses eares. But if the disease be old, and the horse brought to a desperate state of mortality, then you shall take *Assafetida*, and hauing dissolued it in vinegar, warme it vpon a chasingdish of coales, and with round balles of towe, stuffe it hard into the horses eares, and so bind them vp for foure and twenty houres, after which time giue him a comfortable drinke. Now whereas some Smiths doe vse to stampe Aqua-vitæ and garlicke together, and stoppe that into his eares: I for my part thinke it too strong, except the horse bee in great lust, and full of flesh, which if he be, doubtlesse

lesse it may doe well enough ; onely for a generall rule you must obserue, euer to let the horse blood in the necke vaine, two or three mornings together, and euery veine to take great aboundance of blood from him.

Chap. 34.

Of the Falling Euill.

THis falling euill, or as the *Italians* call it, this *Malcaduco*, is nothing else but that which we call in men the falling sickneſſe, in beasts the falling euill: for it doeth for a certaine season, depriue them of all sense whatsoeuer, it is a disease not commonly incident to our *English* races ; but amongst the *Italians*, *Spanish*, and *French* horses, many times found.

Now considering that the most of our best *English* stables are furnished euer with some horses of these countries, I thinke it good to write something touching the disease. It proceeds from cold & grosse fleame gathered together in the fore-part of the head, betwixt the panicle and the braine, which being by any hot vapour disperst ouer the whole brain, it doth instantly cause this falling. There be others which suppose that it is gouerned by the Moone; and that by a certaine course thereof both horses and other beasts doe fall, and as it were, dye for a small time. The signe to know the disease, is, the horse will fall suddenly, both through the resolution of his members, and the distention of his sinewes; all his body will quake and quiuer, and they will

foame much at their mouthes; yet when you thinke them past all hope of life, they will still start vp suddenly and fall to their meate. Now if you will know whether these fits will come often, or but seldome, you shall feele the gristle betwixt his nostrils, and if it be cold, he will fall oft; but if it be warme, he will fall seldome. The cure is, you shall first let him blood on the necke veine, taking good store of blood away: then within foure or fiue dayes after, you shall let him blood on his temple veines, and on his eye-veines: then annoint all his body ouer with a comfortable friction, then bathe his head and eares with oyle de Bay, liquid pitch and tarre mixt together, and of the same put some into his eares: then make him a cap or biggin of canuasse, quilted with wooll, to keepe his head warme: then giue him a purgatior scouring, of which you shall finde plenty in a chapter hereafter: you shall also force him to neese; but if the disease notwithstanding continue still, you shall then with a hot yron pierce the skinnne of his forehead in diuers places, and after annoint it with sweete butter: for thereby you shall draw out the grosse humours which doe oppresse the braine; and in any wise during the time that hee remaineth in Physicke, let his stable be kept exceeding warme, and his dyet thin.

Chap. 35.

Of the Night-mare.

THis disease which we call the Night-mare, is an infirmity which onely troubleth the horse in the night

night season, stopping the drawing of his breath, in such violent sort, that with the struggling and striuing he will be driuen into a great sweat and faintnesse: It proceedeth, according to the opinion of ancient Farriers, from a continuall crudity, or raw disgestion of the stomacke, from whence grosse vapours ascending vp into the head, do not onely oppresse the braine, but all the sensitiue parts also. Now for my part, I rather hold it an infirmity of the stomacke and inward bowells, which being cloyed with much glut and fat, doth in the night season so hinder the spirits and powers from doing their naturall office, that the beast hauing, as it were, his breath strangled, doth with an vnnaturall struggling in his sleepe, put his body into an extreme sweate, and with that passion is brought to much faintnesse; of which I haue had much and continuall experience, onely in horses exceeding fat, and newly taken from the grasse; but especially from such horses as are either fatted vppon eddish grasse, which in some countries is called after-maths; or such as are taken vp fat in the winter-season. The signes to know this disease is, that in the morning when you come early to your horse, you shall finde him all of a great sweate, and his body something panting; or perhaps you shall but onely finde him sweat in his flankes, vpon his necke, and at the rootes of his eares: either of both are signes of this sickneſſe, especially if at night, when you litter him, you finde that hee is dry of his body, and giueth no outward signe of inward sickneſſe. Now there bee some that will obiect against me, and say: That this infirmity is not the

night-

night-mare, but an ordinary infirmity ingendred by ſuperfluity of cold, groſſe and vnwholeſome foode, got in the winter ſeaſon: which nature, through the helpe of warme clothes, and a warme houſe, expels in this manner, in the night ſeaſon. To this obiection I anſwere, that if they do diſallow this ſickneſſe to be the night-mare, that then, without all contradiction, there is no ſuch diſeaſe as the night-mare at all, and that it is but onely a name without any ſubſtance or conſequence; but foraſmuch as this ſickeneſſe is not only very vſuall, but alſo carrieth with it all the effects and attributes aſcribed vnto the night-mare, and that it is as yet a diſeaſe vnnamed, I doe not thinke I can giue it a more proper terme then to call it the night-mare. The cure whereof is, euery morning and euening, both before and after his water; to giue the horſe ſome moderate exerciſe, as to make him goe at leaſt a mile and more for his water; and after hee is watered, to gallop him gently on the hand a good ſpace: Then when he is brought into the houſe, and well rubbed, to giue him his prouender (being oates) and to mixe therewith a handfull, or better, of hempſeede; onely in this cure you muſt be carefull, that your exerciſe do not enforce him to ſweate, nor ſhall you haue neede to vſe it longer then you finde that he ſweateth much in the night ſeaſon. This exerciſe and medicine will not onely cure this infirmity, but alſo any cold that is newly gotten whatſoeuer.

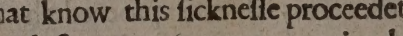
CHAP.

Chap. 36.

Of the Apoplexie, or Palsey.

THese Palsies, or Apoplexies which happen vnto horses, are of two sorts: the one generall, the other particular. The generall palsie is when a horse is depriued of all sense and moouing generally ouer his whole body, which is seldome or neuer found out by our Farriers; because the mortality and suddennesse of death which pursues the disease, takes from them all notes and obseruations of the infirmity: and indeede for the generall palsie, there is no cure, and therefore there needes no description of signe or cure. For the particular palsie, that is, when a horse is depriued but of some part or member of his body; and most commonly it is but the necke only, as both my selfe and others haue found by dayly experience. This disease proceedeth from foulenesse of food, or from fen feeding, which breedeth grosse and tough humors, which ioyning with crudities and raw disgestions, oppresse the braine violently altogether; it also commeth many times by meanes of some blow or wound giuen vppon the temples of the head. The signes to know the disease are the gathering together of his body, going crookedly, and not straight forward but seldome, and holding his necke awry without motion; yet neuer forsaking his prouender or meate, but eating it with greedinesse and much slauering. The cure is to let him blood on his necke veine, and temple veine, on the contrary side to that way hee wryeth: Then annoynt

noynt all his necke ouer with the oyle *Petroleum*, and with wet hay ropes, swaddle all his necke ouer, euen from his breast to his eares, but hauing before splented his necke straight with splents of wood, made strong, smooth, and flat for the purpose: Then for three mornings together, giue him a pint of old Muskadine with two spoonefull of this powder to drinke, Take of *Opoponax* two ounces, of *Storax* three ounces, of *Gentian* three ounces, of *Manna Succary* three ounces, of *Myrrh* one scruple, and of long pepper two scruples; beate all these into fine powder.

Now there be some Farriers, which for this disease vse to draw the horse necke on the contrary side, with a hot yron, euen from the necke to the shoulder, and on the temple of his head of that side also, a long strike, and on the other a little starre in this manner, and from his reines to his middle backe, small lines in this manner. 

But I that know this sickenesse proceedeth from the braine and sinewe,, cannot conceiue how any helpe should come from burning of the skin, because it is the sinewes themselues, and not the skin, that is drawne vp and straightned: And therefore I would wish euery Farrier to forbeare this tormenting, vnlesse he apparantly see that the skin it selfe, through dislike and weakenesse, is shrunke also, and then the cure is not amisse.

Chap. 37.
Of the Generall Crampe, or convulsion of sinewes.

THese generall Crampes, or convulsions of sinewes are most forcible contractions or drawings together of the sinewes and múscles: and they happen sometimes generally into many parts of the body, sometimes particularly, as but into one member and no more: When they are generally dispersst in horses, they proceed commonly from some wound, wherein a sinew is halfe cut and no more; and so there runneth a generall contraction ouer the whole body by degrees. When they are particular, as but in one member, then they proceed either from cold windy causes, or from the want of blood. For the generall contraction which commeth by a wound, you shall read the cure thereof in the booke of Chyrurgery following, where the sinewe being cut in two peeces, the contraction ceaseth. For the particular, where but one member is grieued, you shall know it by these signes: The member will be starke and stiffe, insomuch that neither the beast, nor any man will be able to bow it: the sinewes will be hard like stickes, and the horse being downe, is not able to rise during the time of the contraction, hee will also halt extremely whilst the fit is vpon him, and presently goe well againe, as it were, in one moment. The cure is, to chafe the member exceedingly, either with linseed oyle, sheepes foot oyle, or neates foote oyle; and during the time of his chafing, to hold vp the

contra-

contrary foote that hee may ſtand vppon the limbe which is moſt pained. There is alſo another Crampe or convulſion of ſinewes, which doeth extend into the necke, and reines of the horſes backe, and ſo almoſt vniuerſally ouer the horſes whole body: It proceedeth euer, either from ſome extreme cold, as by turning a horſe ſuddainly out of a warme ſtable, and warme cloathes into the piercing rage of the cold winter, or by the loſſe of much blood, whereby great windineſſe entreth into the veines, and ſo benumbeth the ſinewes: or elſe by too much Phyſiking and drenching of a horſe, whereby the naturall heate is much weakened or dried. The ſignes of this convulſion is, his head and necke will ſtand awry, his eares vpright, and his eyes hollow, his mouth will be clung vp that he cannot eate, and his backe will riſe vp in the midſt like the backe of a Cammell. The cure hereof is, with great ſtore of warme wollen clothes, as blankets, and couerlids, ſome folded double about his body, and ſome girded all ouer from his head to his taile, to force him into a ſweat; but if the clothes will not force him to ſweat, then you ſhall either fold all his body ouer with hot wet horſe litter, or elſe bury him all ſaue the head in a dunghill or mixion; then when hee hath ſweate an houre or two, and is moderately cooled, you ſhall annoynt him all ouer with this oyntment, (holding hot barres of yron ouer him, to make the oyntment ſinke into his body:) Take of hogges greaſe one pound, of turpentine a quarter of a pound, of pepper beaten into powder halfe a dramme, of new waxe halfe a pound, of old oyle Oliues one pound; boyle all theſe together, and vſe it, being

being made warme. There be other Farriers which vse this oyntment: Take of new wax one pound, of turpentine foure ounces, of oyle de Bay as much, *Opoponax* two ounces, of Deeres suet, and of oyle of *Storax*, of each three ounces, melt all these together, and vse it warme. There be others which vse after his sweate, nothing but oyle of Cypresse, and oyle de Bay mixt together, and with it annoynt his body ouer. After this vnction thus applyed, you shall take twenty graines of long pepper beaten into fine powder, of *Cedar* two ounces, of *Nitre* one ounce, of *Lacerpitium* as much as a beane, and mingle all these together with a gallon of white wine, and giue him a quart thereof to drinke, euery morning for foure dayes. Now for his dyet and order, let his foode be warme mashes, and the finest hay, his stable exceeding warme, and his exercise gentle walking abroad in his clothes, once euery day about high noone.

Chap. 38.
Of the Cold, or Poze in the Head.

THE cold, or poze in a horses head is gotten by diuers suddaine and vnseene meanes, according to the temper and constitution of the horses body, insomuch that the best keeper whatsoeuer cannot sometimes warrant his horse from that infirmity. Now according as this cold is old or new, great or small, and according to the aboundance of humors which abound in the head, and as those humors are of thickenesse or thinnesse, so is the disease

and

and the danger therefore greater or lesser, stronger or weaker. For you shall vnderstand that if the horse haue but onely a cold that is newly taken, the signes are, hee will haue many knots like waxe kirnels betweene his chaules about the rootes of his tongue; his head will bee somewhat heauy, and from his nostrils will runne a certaine cleare water, but if about his tongue roots be any great swelling or inflammation, like a mighty botch or bile, then it is the strangle; but if from his nostrils do issue any thicke, stinking, or corrupt matter, then it is the glaunders, of both which we shall speake hereafter in their proper places. Now for this ordinary cold, which is ordinarily taken (the signes whereof, besides his much coughing, are before declared) you shall vnderstand that for the cure being very easie, it is helped sundry wayes: Some cure it onely by purging his head with pils of butter and garlicke, the manner whereof you shall finde in the Chapter of purgations. Other Farriers cure it with purging his head with fumes, and forcing him to neese, the manner whereof is in the Chapter of neesing, which done, you shall giue him to drinke water wherein hath beene sodden *Fenugreeke*, wheate meale, and anise seeds; and then to trot him vp and downe halfe an houre after. Others vse to giue him neesing powder blowne vp into his nostrils, and then this drinke. Take a pint of Malmsey, and the whites and yolkes of foure or fiue egges, a head of garlicke bruised small, pepper and Cynamon, and Nutmegges, of each a like quantity beaten to fine powder, and a pritty quantity of sweete butter; mixe them together, and giue it luke-warme with

with a horne three dayes together : then keepe him fasting at least two houres after. Others vse to let the horse blood in the veine vnder his taile, and to rub all his mouth ouer with a bunch of sage bound to a stickes end, and then to mixe with his prouender the tender crops of blacke briers; but I take this medicine to bee fittest for such horses who with the cold rhume are troubled with paine in their chaps, and not withstuffing in their head. Now albeit none of these medicines are fault-worthy, yet for mine owne part, I haue euer found to be most excellent for these slight colds, moderate exercise both before and after a horses water, in such sort as is declared in the chapter of the Night-mare, without any other fuming or drenching, except I found the cold to bee more then ordinary, and that for want of heed-taking it was like to grow to some vlcer about the rootes of the tongue. In this case I would for one time and no more, giue the horse a pint of sacke, and halfe a pint of sallet oyle, made luke-warme, and well brewd with good store of sugarcandy, to drinke in the morning fasting, and then exercise him moderately thereupon, without putting him into any sweat; and it hath neuer failed to worke the effects I wished in ample sort, without hindring mee at any time of my trauell or iourney. But if you cannot conueniently come by this medicine, yet must notwithstanding trauell your horse, if then you take a spoonefull of tarre, and foulding it in a fine cloth, fixe or tye it fast to the mouth of your bit, or snaffell, and so trauell your horse therewith, and it will take his cold cleane away.

Chap. 39.

How certainly to take away any cold, poze or ratling in the head, how violent soeuer, without giuing any inward medicine.

IF your horse haue taken any extreme cold or poze in his head, and being matcht either to hunt, or to runne for any great wager, the day is so neere that you dare not giue him any inward drench; without which none of our Farriers know how to cure any cold: you shall then, or at any other time (for there is no medicine in the world more soueraigne) take as much sweete butter as a bigge wall-nut, and with the powder of brimstone finely beaten and searst, worke them either with your knife, or a splatter together, till the butter bee brought to a high gold colour: then take two cleane goose feathers, the longest in all the wing, and first at the quill ends, with a needle, fasten two long threeds: then with your salue annoynt all the feathers cleane ouer; which done, in the dry powder of brimstone rolle them ouer and ouer: then putting the feather ends formost, open the horses nostrils, and thrust them vp into his head: then take the threeds which are at the quill ends, and fasten them on the top of the horses head; which done, ride him abroad for an houre or two, airing him in this manner morning and euening; and when you bring him into the stable, after hee hath stood tyed vp a pretty season, vntye the threeds, and drawe out the feathers, and wiping them very dry, lay them vp till you haue next occasion.

casion to vse them. This cure of all others is most certaine, and taketh away any stopping in the head how extreame soeuer.

Chap. 40.
Of a horse that is hide-bound.

THis disease which we call hide-bound, is when a horses skinne cleaueth so hard to his ribbes, and backe, that you cannot with your hand pull vp or loosen the one from the other. It proceedeth sometimes from pouerty and ill keeping, sometimes from surfeit of ouer-riding; especially if when hee is extreame hot, he be suffered to stand long in the raine or wet wether: and lastly, it proceedeth from a corrupt dryenesse of the blood, which wanting his naturall course, forceth his skin to shrinke vp and cleaue to the bones. The signes, besides the cleauing of his skin, is, leanenesse of body, gauntnesse of belly, and the standing vp of the ridge-bone of his backe: it drieth vp the intrailes, torments the body, and makes his dung stinke extraordinarily: and if it bee not remedied, mangineſse will presently follow after it. The cure of it is diuers, according to the opinion of diuers workemen; the most ancient Farriers did vse to let him blood on the spurre veines of both sides his belly, somewhat towards his flanke; which done, they gaue him this drinke. Take of white Wine, or strong Ale, a quart, and adde thereunto three ounces of sallet oyle, of *Comen* one ounce, of anise seedes two ounces, of licoras two ounces, beaten all into fine powder, and giue it him luke warme with a

horne; when he hath drunke let one chafe his backe from the huckell bone vpward by the space of an houre, or more: then set him in a warme stable, with good store of litter: then fould about his body a thicke blancket soaked in water, and wrung, then ouer it a dry blancket, then gird them both fast, and stoppe the surfingle about with great wisps, for the wet blancket will put him into a great heat; and for want of a wet blancket, if you fould his body in wet hay it will doe the like, and looſen his skinne; this you shall vse the space of a weeke, during which time he shall drinke no cold water.

There bee other Farriers, which before they lay on the wet blancket, will annoint all the horses body ouer with wine and sallet oyle, and surely it is good also. There be others which for this disease vse to let the horse blood in the necke, then bathe his sides with warme water, wherein hath beene sodden Bay leaues: then annoynt him all ouer with the oyle of rue or camomill, holding a hot yron ouer him to make the oyle sinke into his skinne, then giue him this drinke: Take of carrets, rue, wild mint, of each an ounce and a halfe, of wormewood two ounces, dry them and heate them to powder: then giue two spoonefull thereof in a pint of Malmsey. There be other Farriers which take Fenugreeke, turmericke, Anise seedes, Bayes, Licoras, and Comen, of each like quantity; drye them, and beate them to powder, and giue the horse two spoonefull thereof with a quart of Ale or Beere luke-warme; vse this at least three mornings together, and it will not onely helpe the disease; but if it be formerly vsed, it will preuent

the

the comming thereof: this drinke also is good for a cold. Now although euery one of these medicines are very good; yet for mine owne part, I haue found this which followeth to exceede them all; First, let him blood in the necke veine, then giue him this drinke. Take two handfuls of selladine; if it be in the Summer, the leaues and stalkes will serue; but if it be in Winter, take leaues, stalkes, rootes and all: chop them small, then take a handfull of wormwood, and a handfull of rue, chop them likewise, put all these into three quarts of strong Ale or Beere, and boyle them till it come to a quart: then take it from the fire, and straine it till you haue left no moysture in the hearbes: then dissolue it in three ounces of the best Treacle, and giue it the horse luke warme to drinke: then for a weeke together, once a day, rubbe all the horses body ouer with oyle and beere, or butter and beere, against the haire, and feed him with warme mashes of malt and water, and for his prouender, let him haue barley sodden till it bee ready to breake, prouided that you keepe it not vntill it sowre.

Chap. 41.
Of the Glaunders.

TOuching this disease which we call the Glaunders, my Maisters, the old Farriers, and I, are at much difference: for some of them doe hold opinion that it is an inflammation of the kirnels which lye on each side the throate, vnderneath the rootes of the tongue, neere the swallowing place; and their rea-

son is, that because those kirnels are called of the *Italians*, *Glandule*, that thence wee borrow this word glaunders; adding moreouer, that a horse which is troubled with this disease, hath great kernels vnderneath his iawes easie to be felt, paining him so, that hee cannot eate, or swallow any thing. Others say, it is a swelling vpon the iaw bones, great and hard, which being inflamed, doth putrifie and rotte; but both these opinions I hold in part erronious: for although our old Farriers might (according to the custome of our Nation, which loueth imitation of strangers) borrow this word glaunders from the *Italian Glandule*; yet these inflammations vnder the chappes of the tongue rootes, is that disease which wee call the strangle, and not the glaunders; and whereas they would call the strangle the *Quinzie*, or *Squinancie*, there is no such matter, neither hath a horse any such disease, except they will call the *Viues* by that name, which is farre more fitter for the application.

Now for the glaunders, you shall vnderstand that it is a running impostume ingendred either by cold, or by famine, or by long thirst, or by eating corrupt and musty meate, or by being kept in vnsauory places, or is taken by standing with infected horses. It is a gathering together of moyst and corrupt humours, which runneth at the nose; or may be said to be a fluxe of rhume, which issueth sometimes at one, sometimes at both the nostrils: the cause being the wideneſſe of the passage, so that the cold liberally entring into the braine, bindeth and crusheth it in such manner, that it maketh the humours there

there to distill; which descended to the spirituall parts, and possessing them, in the end suffocates the horse, either by their aboundance, or killeth him by corrupting the principall parts; or else by congealing there by litle and litle, ouer-runneth the naturall heat. Now that distillation that by cold cōmeth from the braine, and breedeth this glaunders, is of 3 sorts. The first is a cold which maketh indigest humours to passe from the braine, which commeth by taking off the saddle suddenly when the horse is hot, or by letting him drinke before hee bee inwardly cooled, or before his body be dryed: this distillation commonly is slimy matter that smels not, and is easie to be cured: for it is no inward vlcer, but onely aboundance of humour, the substance whereof is grosse and white. The second is a greater cold ingendred and congealed, causing humours somthing thinne and slimy, of the colour of marrow, or the white of an egge: this discendeth to the throate and lyeth there till it bee discharged through the nosthrels. The third is by long continunce thicker and therefore harder to be cured: if the colour thereof be yellow, like a beane, then is the glaunders most desperate, and lyeth also in his throate; but if it be a browne or darkish yellow, then commonly a feuer will accompany the disease. To these three distillations there is commonly added a fourth, which is, when the matter which comes from his nose, is darke, thin and reddish, like little sparkes of blood; but then is it not said to bee the glaunders, but the mourning of the Chine, which is a disease, for the most part, held vncurable. It is therefore most

neceſſary for euery good Farrier, when he ſhall take this cure in hand, to conſider well the matter which iſſueth from the horſes noſe: for if the humour bee cleare and tranſparent, ſo that it may be ſeene thorough, then it is not greatly hurtfull, or of much moment. If it be white, it is worſe, yet with much eaſe cured. If it be yellow, ſeparate him from the ſound horſes, for he is infectious, yet to be cured: If that yellow be mixt with blood, it is with much difficulty helped; or if the matter bee like vnto ſaffron, the horſe is hardly to be ſaued. He muſt alſo conſider whether the matter ſtinke, or haue loſt the ſmell: the firſt is a ſigne of an vlcer, the latter of death: alſo whether he cougheth with ſtraightneſſe in his cheſt, or no: for that alſo is a ſigne of an inward vlcer, and that the diſeaſe is paſt cure. Now for the cure of theſe three diſtillations, which are all that make vp a compleat glaunders, you ſhall vnderſtand, that when the glaunders is of the firſt ſort, it is eaſily helped by moderate exerciſe, and warme keeping; but if it be of the ſecond ſort, you ſhall giue him warme maſhes of malt and water, and perfume his head well, and purge it by neeſing: and into his maſhes you ſhall put fennell ſeedes bruiſed. Others will take a pint of white wine, and a handfull of ſoot, a quart of milke, and two heads of garlicke bruiſed; brew them together, and giue it the horſe to drinke. Others will take a pottle of vrine, a handfull of bay ſalt, and a good quantity of browne ſugar-candy, boyle it to a quart: then adde licoras and aniſe ſeedes beaten to fine powder, and giue it luke warme to drinke. Others will take lard, or ſwines greaſe, and

boyle

boyle it in water: Then take the fat from the water, and mingle it with a little oyle oliue, and a good quantity of vrine, and halfe as much white wine; giue a quart of this luke-warme to drinke. Others vse to giue of Ale a quart, of grated bread an ounce and a halfe, the yolkes of two egges, of ginger, saffron, cloues, cynamon, nutmegs, cardimonium, sprick-nard, or lauender, galingall and hony, of each a pret-ty quantity, mix these together, and giue it to drinke. Now if the distillation be of the third sort, which is the worst of the three, you shall take halfe a pound of swines blood, and melt it at the fire, adde to it a pound of the iuice of Beets, with three ounces of *Euforbium* finely beaten; and when it hath boyled a little, take it from the fire, and adde another ounce of *Euforbium* to it: Keepe this oyntment, and an-noynt therewith two very long feathers, or little roddes, lapt with linnen about; and so annoynted, put them into his nostrilles, and after rubbing them vp and downe, tye them to the nose-band of the bridle, and walke him abrode: Doe thus three dayes together, and it will either absolutely cure him, or at least take away the eye-sore. Others vse to take a quart of Ale, an halfe peny-worth of long pep-per, a little brimstome, and a peny-worth of galingal, two peny-worth of Spygnand of Spaine, two peny weight of saffron brayed, with two ounces of but-ter boyled in the Ale: when it is luke-warme cast the horse, and holding vp his head, powre it equal-ly into his nostrilles: Then hold his nostrils close till his eyes stare, and that he sweate; which done, giue him Bayes and Ale to drinke: then let him rise, and

wold

set

set him vp warme, feeding him with warme graines and salt, or with sweete mashes; but the best is, if the weather bee warme, to let him runne abroad at grasse. Other Farriers vse to dissolue in vinegar three drammes of mustard-seede, and as much *Euforbium*: then to giue him one dramme at his nostrill euery day before he drinke. Others vse to take of *Myrrh*, *Iris Illirica*, seedes of smallage, *Aristolochia*, of each three ounces, *Sal-niter*, *Brimstone*, of each fiue ounces, bayes two ounces, saffron one ounce; make this into powder, and when you giue it, giue part in pilles, made with paste and wine, and part by the nostrilles with strong Ale: doe this for the space of three dayes at the least. Others vse to take of malmsey a pint, of strong Ale a pint, of Aqua-vitæ foure spoonefull, and brew them together with a pretty quantity of Anise seedes, Licoras, Elecampane rootes, long pepper, garlicke, and three or foure new layd Egges, and a little butter; giue this luke-warme to drinke: then walke him abrode, and set him vp warme; doe thns euery other day for a weeke together. Others vse to take stale vrine that hath stood three or foure dayes, and tenne garlicke heads, and seething them together, giue it the horse to drinke. Others vse to take Swines-grease well clarified, and as much oyle de bay as a walnnt, and giue it the horse to drinke with faire water luke-warme. Others vse to take of Elecampane, Anise seeds and Licoras, of each one peny-worth, boyle them in three pints of Ale or Beere till one pint be consumed; then adde vnto it a quarter of a pint of Sallet Oyle, and giue it him to drinke luke-warme, then with a quill

blow

blow *Euforbium* vp into his noſtrels, and within three dayes after, take Muſtard foure ſpooneſull, vinegar a pint and an halfe, butter three ounces, boyle them together, then adde thereto halfe an ounce of Pepper, and giue it the horſe luke-warme to drinke: vſe this medicine a fortnight. Others vſe to take a handfull of pil'd Garlicke, and boyle it in a quart of Milke till a pint bee conſumed; then adde thereto two ounces of ſweete butter, and a pint of ſtrong Ale, ſtirre them well together, and giue it the horſe faſting to drinke luke-warme: which done, ride him a little vp and downe, and vſe this the ſpace of nine dayes. Thus I haue ſhewed you the opinion and practiſe of all the beſt Farriers both of this Kingdome and of others, and they be all very good and effectuall; yet for mine owne part, that which I haue found euer the beſt in my practiſe is, if the diſeaſe be of the firſt or ſecond ſort, to giue the horſe to drinke faſting euery morning for a fortnight together, a pint of ſtrong Ale, and fiue ſpooneſull of the Oyle of Oates, the making of which Oyle, you ſhall reade in a particular Chapter following; but if the diſeaſe be of the third ſort, which is moſt deſperate; you ſhall then take of Tanners Ouſe a pint, and of new Milke a pint, and of Oyle Oliue halfe a pint, and the quantity of a head of Garlicke bruiſed, and a little Turmericke; mixe theſe well together, and giue it the horſe to drinke: Do this thrice in one fortnight, and it will helpe if any helpe be to be had.

Two most certaine and lately found out medicines, which will without all faile, cure any Glaunders, through our Farriers hold it impossible.

IF your horses cold be come to the worst Glaunders, which is a continuall running at the nose, and hath runne by the space of diuers monthes, so that your Farriers can do you no good: you shall then take better then two handfull of the white cankerous mosse which growes vpon an old oken pale, and boyle it in two quarts of milke till one quart be almost consumed; then straine it, and squeese the mosse well, which done, giue it the horse luke-warme to drinke: then take the goose feathers, brimstone, and butter, in such manner as is set downe in the new additions for the cold or poze in a horses head (*page* 82.) and hauing put them vp into his nostrils, ride him forth an houre or two gentle; and after he is come home, draw forth the feathers, and keepe his body warme. This disease you shall vnderstand commeth not suddenly, but growes out of long processe of time; so likewise the cure must not be expected to be done in a moment, but with much leasure: Therefore you must continue your medicine as your leasure will serue, either euery day, or at least thrice a weeke, if it be for foure or fiue monthes together, and bee assured in the end it will yeeld your desire.

Now the second certaine and well approued medicine is to take Elicampane rootes, and boyle them in milke till they be soft, that you may bruise them to pappe: Then with a horne giue them to the

the horse, together with the milke luke-warme, being no more then will make the rootes liquid: Then hauing annoynted your goose feathers, put them vp into his nostrilles, and ride him forth, as is before shewed.

Chap. 42.

Of the Mourning of the Chine.

THis disease which we call the mourning of the Chine, or as some Farriers terme it, the moyst Malady, is that fourth sort of corrupt distillation from the braine, of which wee haue spoken in the Chapter before; shewing from whence it proceedes, and the signes thereof; to wit, that the corrupt matter which issueth from his nostrilles will be darke, thinne, and reddish, with little streakes of blood in it. It is supposed by some Farriers, that this disease is a foule consumption of the liuer, and I doe not dissent from that opinion: For I haue found the liuer wasted in those horses which I haue opened vppon this disease; and this consumption proceeds from a cold, which after growes to a poze, then to a glaunders, and lastly to this mourning of the chine.

The cure whereof, according to the opinion of the oldest Farriers, is to take cleare water, and that hony which is called *Hydromel*, a quart, and put thereunto three ounces of sallet oyle, and powre it into his nostrilles each morning the space of three dayes; and if that helpe not, then giue him to drinke euery day, or once in two dayes at the least, a quart of old

old wine mingled with some of the soueraigne medicine called *Tetrapharmacum*, which is to be had almost of euery Apothecary. Others vse to take garlicke, houslicke and cheruill; and stamping them together, to thrust it vp into the horses nostrils.

Others vse to let the horse fast all night; then take a pint and a halfe of milke, three heads of garlicke pild and stamped; boyle them to the halfe, and giue it to the horse, some at the mouth, and some at the nose; then gallop him a quarter of a mile, then rest him; then gallop him halfe a mile, and rest him againe: thus do twice or thrice together; then set him vp warme, and giue him no water till it bee high noone: then giue him a sweete mash: vse this cure at least three dayes together. Others vse to take halfe a pecke of oates, and boyle them in running water till halfe be consumed; then put them into a bagge, and lay them very hot vpon the nauell place of his backe, and there let it lye thirty houres, vsing thus to doe three or foure times at the least. Others vse to take worme-wood, *Peusedanum* and *Centory*, of each like quantity: boyle them in wine; then straine them, and powre thereof many times into his nostrilles, especially into that which most runneth. Others vse to take hare-hound, licoras and anise seeds, beaten to powder: Then with sweete butter to make pils thereof, and to giue them fasting to the horse. Others vse to take wheate flower, anise seedes and licoras stamped in a morter, fiue or sixe cloues of garlicke bruised; mix all these together, and make a paste of them; then make it into pils as bigge as wall-nuts, and taking out the horses tongue, cast the balles downe the

the horses throat three or foure at a time, then giue him two new layd egges shels and all after them. Now after all these, the best and most approued medicine is, to take as much of the middle greene barke of an Elder tree growing on the water side, as will fill a reasonable vessell; putting thereunto as much running water as the vessell will hold, and let it boyle till halfe be consumed, and then fill vp the vessell againe with water, continuing so to doe three times one after another: and at the last time, when the one halfe is consumed, take it from the fire, and straine it exceedingly through a linnen cloath; then to that decoction adde at least a full third part of the oyle of oates, or for want of that, of oyle oliue, or of hogs grease, or sweete butter; and being warmed againe, take a quart thereof, and giue it the horse to drinke, one hornefull at his mouth, and another at his nostrils, especially that which casteth out the matter. And in any case let the horse bee fasting when he taketh this medicine: For it not onely cureth this, but any sickneſſe proceeding from cold whatsoeuer: It shall bee also good to vse to his body some wholesome friction, and to his head some wholesome bathe; of which bathes you shall read more hereafter in a Chapter following. For his dyet, his foode would be fodden barley, and sweete hay, and his drinke warme water, or mashes; but if it be in the Summer season, then it is best to let him runne at grasse onely.

A most rare and certaine approued Medicine to cure any high running Glaunders called the Mourning of the Chine, held of all men incurable.

THIS disease, to my knowledge, there is not any Smith or Farrier in this kingdome, can tell how to cure: For it comes not to the extremity till the horse haue runne at his nose a yeare or more; and haue at the rootes of his tongne a hard lumpe gathered, which will not be dissolued. Now for mine owne part it is well knowne I haue cured many with this medicine onely; Take of *Auripigmentum* and of *Tussilaginis* beaten into fine powder, of each of them foure drammes: Then beating them with fine Turpentine, bring them into a paste; then make of it little cakes or trotches, as broad as a groat, and drye them: This done, lay about two or three of them on a chaffingdish of coles, and couer them with a tunnell, so that the smoke may come out onely at the end thereof, and so without any losse ascend vp into the horses head through his nostrils, then ride the horse till he begin to sweate; doe this once euery morning before water till the running be stopt, which will be in a very short space, considering the greatnes of the disease.

Chap. 43.
Of the Cough.

COughing is a motion of the lungs, raised naturally from his expulsiue power, to cast out the hurtfull

hurtfull cause, as neesing is the motion of the braine. Now of coughes, there be some outward and some inward: those are said to bee outward which proceede of outward causes, as when a horse doth eate or drink too greedily, so that his meat goeth the wrong way; or when he licketh vp a fether, or eateth dusty or sharpe bearded straw, and such like, which tickling his throate, causeth him to cough: those which are said to be inward, are either wet or dry, of which we shall speake more hereafter. Now of these outward coughes, they may proceed from the corruption of the aire, which if it doe, you shall boile in running water, figges and currants together; then straining the water, adde to a quart thereof 3 spoonfull of *Diapenie*, and it will helpe. It may also proceed from dust; and then you must wash it downe by powring into his nostrils Ale and Oyle mingled together. It may come by eating sharpe and sowre things; and then you must put downe his throate, pils of sweete butter, whose softnesse will helpe him. It may proceed from some little or slight taken cold; and then you shall take the whites and yolkes of two egges, three ounces of sallet oyle, two handfull of beane flowre, one ounce of fenugreeke; mix them with a pint of old Malmsey, and giue it the horse to drinke three dayes together: or else take Tarre and fresh butter; mixe them together, and giue pils thereof to the horse foure times in seauen dayes, that is, the first, the third, the fift and the seuenth day. There be others which vse to take a gallon of faire water, and make it ready to seeth: then put thereto a pecke of ground malt, with two handfuls

of boxe leaues chopt small, and a little groundsell; mixe them all together, and giue him euery morning and euening a pint for a weeke together. If to the boxe leaues you adde Oates and Bettony, it is not amisse, so you keepe the horse warme. Others vse to giue a horse a pint of Swines blood warme. Others vse to boyle in a gallon of water one pound of Fenugreeke; then straining it, giue the water morning and euening by a pint at a time to drinke; then drying the Fenugreeke, giue it the horse with his prouender. Others vse for all maner of coughes, to take a quarterne of white Currants, and as much clarified honey, two ounces of sweete Marioram, with old fresh grease, and a head of garlicke; melt that which is to be molten, and punne that which is to be beaten; mixe them together, and giue the horse better then a pint thereof three mornings together. Others vse to giue the horse the guts of a yong Pullet dipt in hony and being warme, and certainely there is not any of these medicines but are most soueraigne and well approued. Now whereas some Farriers vse to thrust downe the throate of the horse, a willow wand, rolled about with a linnen cloath, and annointed all ouer with honey, I for my part, doe not like it: for it both torments the horse more then there is occasion, and doth but onely goe about to take away that which is gone in the strugling before the medicine can be vsed: for it is onely for a cough which commeth by a feather, or some such like matter.

Chap. 43.

Of the inward or wet cough.

TOuching all inward coughes which are gotten & ingendred by colds and rhumes of long continuance, being not onely dangerous, but sometimes mortall, you shall vnderstand that they are diuided into two kindes, the one wet, the other dry: the wet cough proceedeth from cold causes taken after great heats; which heat dissoluing humors, those humors being againe congealed, doe presently cause obstructions and stopping of the lungs. Now the signes to know this wet cough, is, the horse will euer after his coughing cast out either water or matter out of his nostrilles, or champe and chaw with his teeth the thicke matter which hee casteth out of his throate, as you shall easily perceiue, if you heedfully note him: he will also cough often without intermission; and when he cougheth he will not much bow downe his head, nor abstaine from his meate: and when he drinketh, you shall see some of his water to issue out of his nostrils. The cure is, first to keepe him exceeding warme; then forasmuch as it proceedeth of cold causes, you shall giue him hot drinkes, and spices, as Sacke, or strong Ale brewd with cynamon, ginger, cloues, treacle, long pepper, and either swines grease, sallet oyle, or sweet butter; for you shall know that all cold causes are cured with medicines that open and warme; and the hot with such as cleanse and coole. Some vse to take a pretty quantity of *Beniamine*, and the yolke of

an egge; which being well mixt together, and put into an egge shell, cast all down into the horses throat, and then moderately ride him vp & down for more then an quarter of an houre: and doe this three or foure mornings together. Others vse to keepe him warme, and then to giue him this drinke. Take of barley one pecke, and boyle it into two or three gallons of running water, till the barley burst, together with bruised licoras, anise seedes, and of raisins, of each a pound; then straine it, and to that liquor put of honey a pint, and a quarterne of sugar candy, and keepe it close in a pot to serue the horse therewith foure seuerall mornings, and cast not away the barley, nor the rest of the strainings, but make it hot euery day to perfume the horse withall in a close bag; and if he eate of it, it is so much the better: and after this you shall giue the horse some moderate exercise: and for this diet let him drinke no cold water till his cough abate; and as it lesseneth, so let the water be the lesse warmed. Now for mine owne part, though all these receits be exceeding good, and very well approued, yet for mine owne part, in this case, thus hath beene my practise. If I found either by the heauinesse of the horses head, or by the ratling of his nostrilles, that the cough proceeded most from the stopping of his head, I would onely giue him foure or fiue mornings together, three or foure good round pilles of butter and garlicke, well knoden together, in the morning fasting; and then ride him moderately an houre after; but if I found that the sickenesse remained in the chest or brest of the horse, then I would giue him twice in foure dayes, a pint of sacke, halfe a

pint

pint of sallet oyle, and two ounces of sugarcandy well brewed together, and made luke-warme; and then ride him halfe an houre after, and set him vp warme, suffering him to drinke no cold water till his cough begin to abate and leaue him. But for all wet coughes, frettized and broken lungs, putrified and rotten lungs, or any such moist disease, see the new additions for the mourning of the chine, and it is a certaine cure.

Chap. 45.
Of the dry cough.

THis disease which wee call the dry cough, is a grosse and tough humour, cleauing hard to the hollow places of the lungs, which stoppeth the vvinde-pipes, so that the horse can hardly drawe his breath. It doth proceed by ill gouernment from the rhume, which distilling from the head, falleth downe to the breast, and there inforceth the horse to striue to cast it out.

The especiall signes to know it is, by eating hot meats, as bread that it spiced, straw, dry hay, or such like, his extremity of coughing will encrease: by eating cold and moist meates, as grasse, forrage, grains, and such like, it willl abate and be the lesse: he cougheth seldome; yet when he cougheth, he cougheth violently, long time together, and drily, with a hollow sound from his chest: hee also boweth his head downe to the ground, and forsaketh his meate whilst he cougheth; yet neuer casteth forth any thing either at his mouth or nostrils.

This cough is most dangerous, and not being taken in time, is incurable: for it will grow to the pursicke or broken-winded altogether. The cure, according to the opinion of the ancientest Farriers, is, that forasmuch as it proceedeth from hot humors, therefore you shall perfume his head with cold simples, as *Camomill*, *Mellilot*, *Licoras*, dried red *Roses*, and *Camphire* boyled in water, and the fume made to passe vp into his mouth and nostrils. Others vse to take a close earthen pot, and to put therein three pints of the strongest vinegar, and foure egge shelles and all vnbroken, and foure heads of garlicke cleane pild and bruised, and set the pot being very close couered in a warme dunghill, or a horse mixion, and there let it stand foure and twenty houres; then take it forth and open it, and take out the egges which will be as soft as silke, and lay them by vntill you haue strained the vinegar and garlicke through a linnen cloath: then put to that liquor a quarterne of hony, and halfe a quarterne of sugarcandy, and two ounces of licoras, and two ounces of anise seedes, beaten all into fine powder; and then the horse hauing fasted all the night, early in the morning, about seuen or eight a clocke, open the horses mouth with a drench-staffe and a cord, and first cast down his throate one of the egges, and then presently powre after it a horne full of the aforesaid drinke, being made luke-warme; then cast in another egge, and another hornefull: and thus doe till he haue swallowed vp all the egges, or three at the least; then bridle him, and couer him warmer then he was before, and set him vp in the stable, tying him to the bare racke for the space of two houres;

houres; then vnbridle him, and giue him either some oates, hay, or grasse; yet in any case giue him no hay, vntill it haue beene somewhat sprinkled with water: for there is no greater enemy to a dry cough then dry hay, dry straw, or chaffe; then let him haue cold water the space of nine dayes. Now if you chance the first morning to leaue an egge vntaken, you shall not faile to giue it him and the remander of the drinke the morning following. If yon find by this practise that the cough weareth not away, you shall then purge his head with pilles, of which you shall read in the chapter of purgations: after his pils receiued, you shall let him fast three houres, standing warme cloathed and littered in the stable: you shall also now and then giue him a warme mash, and once a day trot him moderately abroad. There bee other Farriers which for this dry cough take onely the hearbe called Lyons foot, or Ladies mantle, Spurge and Smallage, of each like quantity; seeth them in a quart of old wine, or a wart of running water till some part be consumed, and giue it the horse to drinke; if in stead of the hearbs themselues, you giue the iuyce of the hearbes in wine, it is good. There be others which take a good quantitie of white Currants, & as much hony, two ounces of Marioram, one ounce of Peniriall, with fiue pounds of fresh grease, and nine heads of garlicke; beate that which is to be beaten, and melt the rest; giue this in 4 or 5 dayes like pils dipt in hony. Others vse to take *Myrre*, *Opoponax*, *Iris Ilyrica*, and *Galbanum*, of each two ounces, of red *Storax* three ounces, of *Turpentine* foure ounces, of *Henbane* halfe an ounce, of *Optum* halfe an

ounce; beate them to a fine powder, and giue two or three spoonefull with a pint of old wine, or a quart of Ale. Others vse to take forty graines of pepper, foure or fiue rootes of raddish, foure heads of garlicke, and sixe ounces of sweet butter; stampe them all well together, and giue euery day a ball of it to the horse for a weeke together, making him fast two houres after his taking it; and surely it is a most excellent approued medicine for any old ouergrowne cold, or cough. Other Farriers vse to take of oyle de bay, and of sweete butter, of each halfe a pound, of garlicke one pound, beat it together vnpild; and being well beaten with a pestle of wood, adde your oyle and butter vnto it: then hauing made it into balles, with a little wheat flower, giue your horse euery morning for a weeke and more, three or foure balles as bigge as walnuts, keeping him fasting after from meate, three houres, and from drinke till it be night, prouided that still his drinke be warme, and his meate, if it possible may be, grasse, or hay, sprinkled with water; as for his prouender, it would be Oates, and Fenugreeke sprinkled amongst it. Now if you perceiue that at a fortnights end, his cough doth nothing at all abate, you shall then for another weeke giue him againe the same physicke and dyet; but truely for mine owne part, I haue neuer found it to faile in any horse whatsoeuer; yet I would wish all Farriers not to be too busie with these inward medicines, except they bee well assured that the cold hath beene long, and that the cough is dangerous.

Two excellent true and well approued Medicines for any old cold, dry cough, shortnesse of breath, pursinesse, or broken-winded.

THE first is, take of tarre three spoonfull, of sweet butter as much, beat and worke them wel together with the fine powder of Licoras, Anise seedes and Sugar-candy, till it be brought to a hard paste: Then make it into three round balles, and put into each ball foure or fiue cloues of garlicke, and so giue them to the horse, and warme him with riding both before and after hee hath receiued the pils, and bee assured that he be fasting when hee takes it, and fast at least two houres after he hath taken it.

The second is, take of the white fat or lard of Bacon, a peece foure fingers long, and almost two fingers thicke both wayes: Then with your knife making many holes into it, stoppe it with as many cloues of garlicke as you can conueniently get into it, then rowling it in the powder of Licoras, Anise seedes, Sugar-candy, and Brimstone, all equally mixt together, giue it your horse fasting in a morning at least twice a weeke continually, and ride him after it, and be sure that all the hay hee eates bee finely sprinkled with water.

Chap. 46.

Of the frettized, broken, and rotten Lungs.

COughes do many times proceede from the corruption and putrifaction of the lungs, gotten either

either by some extreme cold, running, or leaping, or by ouer-greedy drinking after great thirst; because the lungs being inclosed in a very thinne filme, they are therefore the much sooner broken; and if such a breach be made, without instant cure, they begin to inflame and apostume, oppressing and sickning the whole lungs. Now the signes to know this disease, is, the horses flankes will beate when hee cougheth; and the slower they beate, the more old and dangerous is the disease: he will also draw his winde short, and by little at once: he will groane much, be fearefull and loath to cough, and often turne his head to the place grieued: To conclude, he will neuer cough but he will bring vp something which he will champe in his mouth after. The cure is, giue him two or three ounces of hogges grease, and two or three spoonfull of *Diapente* brewd in a quart of barley water, wherein currants hath beene sodden. Other Farriers vse to take a pound of Licoras, and being scraped and sliced, to steepe it in a quart of water foure and twenty houres; then to straine it, then to boyle three or foure ounces of currants in it, and so giue it the horse to drinke, and keepe him fasting three or foure houres after. There bee other Farriers which vse to take of Fenugreeke, and of linseed, of each halfe a pound, of gum dragant, of Masticke, of Myrre, of sugar, of fitch flowre, of each one ounce; let all these be beaten into fine powder, and then infused one whole night in a good quantity of warme water, and the next day giue him a quart of this luke warme, putting thereunto two ounces of the oyle of roses; and this you must do many dayes together: and if the disease

be

be new, it will certainly heale; if it be neuer so old, it will assuredly ease him; but in any case let him drinke no cold water: And for his food, grasse is the most excellent. Others vse to take of malmsey a pint, of hony three spoonfull, mix them together; then take of *Myrre*, of *Saffron*, of *Cassia* and *Cynamon*, of each like quantity, beate them to a fine powder, and giue two spoonefull thereof in the wine to drinke; do this at least a fortnight together, and it is certaine it will helpe these frettized and broken lungs; but for the putrified and rotten lungs, we will speake more in this next Chapter.

Chap. 47.

Of the putrified and rotten Lungs.

THis disease of rotten and exulcerated lungs, you shall know by these signes; hee will cough oft and vehemently, and euer in his coughing hee will cast little reddish lumpes out of his mouth; hee will decay much in his flesh, and yet eate his meate with more greedinesse then when hee was sound; and when hee cougheth, hee will cough with more ease and cleareneſse then if his lungs were but onely broken. The cure whereof, according to the practise of our ordinary English Farriers is, to giue the horse diuers mornings together a pint of strong Vinegar warme, or else as much of mans vrine, with halfe so much Hogges grease brewed warme together; but the more ancient Farriers take a good quantity of the iuice of Purslaine mixt with the oyle of Roses, adding thereunto a little *Tragagantum* which

which hath before beene layd to steepe in goats milke, or for want thereof in barley or oaten milke strained from the corne; and giue him a pint therof euery morning for seuen dayes together. This medicine is but onely to ripen and breake the impostume, which you shall know if it haue done, because when the sore is broken, his breath will stinke exceedingly: Then shall you giue him for other seuen dayes this drinke, Take of the roote called *Costus* two ounces, and of *Bassia*, or *Cynamon*, three ounces beaten into fine powder, and a few raisins, and giue it him to drinke with a pint of malmsey. Others vse to take of *Frankinsence* and *Aristolochia*, of each two ounces beaten into fine powder, and giue the horse two or three spoonefulls thereof with a pint of malmsey. Others take of vnburnt brimstone two ounces, of *Aristolochia* one ounce and a halfe beaten to powder, and giue the horse that with a pint of malmsey.

Chap. 48.

Of shortnesse of breath, or pursinesse.

THIS disease of short breath, or pursinesse, may come two seuerall wayes, that is, naturally or accidentally: Naturally, as by the straightnesse of his conduits, which conuey his breath, when they want liberty to carry his breath freely, or being cloyed vp with fat, force stoppings and obstructions in his wind-pipe, and thereby makes his lungs labour and worke painefully. Accidentally, as by hasty running after drinking, or vpon a full stomacke, by which humours are compelled to descend downe into the throate

throat and lungs, and there stoppeth the passage of the breath. The signes of this disease are continuall panting and heauing of his body without any coughing, great heate of breath at his nostrils, and a squeesing or drawing in of his nose when hee breatheth; besides, a coueting to hold out his head whilest hee fetcheth his winde. The cure, according to the opinion of some of our best Farriers, is to giue him in his prouender, the kirnels of grapes, for they both fat and purge; and you must giue them plentifully. The warme blood of a sucking pigge is excellent good also. Other Farriers vse to take *Venus-haire*, *Ireos*, *Ash-keyes*, *Licoras*, *Fenugreeke*, and *Raisins* of each a dramme and a halfe, *Pepper*, *Almonds*, *Borage*, *Nettle-seede*, *Aristolochia*, and *Coloquintida*, of each two drammes, *Algaritium*, one dramme and an halfe, hony two pound, dissolue them with water, wherein Licoras hath beene sodden, and giue him one pint euery morning for three or foure mornings. Others vse to take *Molline*, or *Longwort* and make a powder thereof, and giue two spoonefull thereof with a pint of running water or else powder of *Gentian* in the foresayd manner, and do it for diuers mornings. Others vse to take of Nntmegs, Cloues, Galingale, graines of Paradise, of each three drammes, Caraway seed and Fenugreeke, a little greater quantity, as much saffron, and halfe an ounce of Licoras, beate them all into fine powder: Then put two or three spoonefull thereof to a pint of white wine, and the yolkes of foure egges, and giue it the horse to drinke: then tye his head vp high to the racke for an houre after: that done, either ride him, or walke

him

him vp and downe gently, and keepe him fasting foure or fiue houres after at the least: The next day turne him to grasse, and he will doe well. There bee other which vse to let the horse blood in the necke-veine, and then giue him this drinke: Take of wine and oyle of each a pint, of Frankinsence halfe an ounce, and of the iuyce of *Hore-hound* halfe a pint; mixe them well together, and giue them to drinke. Others vse to giue him onely somewhat more then a pint of hony, hogges-grease and butter molten together, and let him drinke it luke-warme. Egges made soft in vinegar, as is shewed in the Chapter of the dry cough, is excellent for this shortnesse of breath, so you giue the egges encreasing, that is, the first day one, the second three, and the third fiue; and withall to powre a little oyle and wine into his nostrils, is very good also. There bee other Farriers which vse to take a snake, and cut off her head and taile, and then take out the guts and intrailes, boyle the rest in water till the bone part from the flesh: Then cast the bone away, and giue euery third day of this decoction more then a pint, till you haue spent three snakes; and this is excellent good for the dry cough also. Now the last and best medicine for this shortnesse of breath (for indeede in this case I do not affect much physicking) is onely to take anise seedes, licoras, and sugar-candy, all beaten into very fine powder; and take foure spoonefulls thereof and brew it well with a pint of white wine, and halfe a pint of sallet oyle: and vse this euer after your horses trauell, and a day before he is trauelled.

CHAP.

Chap. 49.

Of the broken-winded, or Pursicke horse.

THis disease of broken-winded, I haue euer since I first began to know either horse or horse-leach craft, very much disputed with my selfe; and for many yeares did constantly hold (as still I doe) that in truth there is no such disease; onely this I found by dayly experience, that by ouer-hasty or sudden running of a fat horse (or other) presently after his water, or by long standing in the stable with no exercise and foule food, that thereby grosse and thicke humors may be drawne downe into the horses body so aboundantly, that cleauing hard vnto the hollow places of the luugs, and stopping vp the the windepipes, the wind may be so kept in, that it may onely haue his resort backeward, and not vpward, filling the guts, and taking from the body great part of its strength and liue-li-hood; which if from the corruption of our old inuentions, we call broken winded, then I must needes confesse, that I haue seene many broken winded horses. The signes of which disease are these, much and violent beating of his flankes, especially drawing vp of his belly vpward; great opening and rising of his nostrels, and a continuall swift going to and fro of his tuell; besides, it is euer accompanied with a dry and hollow cough. The cure, I must needs say in so great an extremity (for it is the worst of all the euils of the lungs which are before spoken of) is most desperate; but the preseruations and helpes, both to

continue

continue the horses health and his daily seruice, are very many, as namely (according to the opinion of the ancident Farriers) to purge your horse, by giuing him this drinke. Take *Maiden-haire*, of *Ireos*, of *Asshe*, of *Licoras*, of *Fenugreeke*, of *Basnis*, of each halfe an ounce, of *Cardanum*, of *Pepper*, of bitter *Almonds*, of *Baurach*, of each two ounces, of *Nettle-seede*, and of *Aristolochia*, of each two ounces; boyle them all together in a sufficient quantity of water; and in that decoction dissolue halfe an ounce of *Agaricke*, and two ounces of *Coloquintida*, together with two pound of hony, and giue him a pint and a halfe of this at a time, for at least a weeke together, and if the medicine chance at any time to prooue too thicke, you shall make it thin with water, wherein Licoras hath beene sodden; and some Farriers also besides this medicine, will with a hot yron draw the flankes of the horse to restraine their beating, and slit the horses nostrils to giue the winde more liberty; but I doe not affect either the one or the other: The best diet for a horse in this cause, is grasse in Summer; and hay sprinkled with water in Winter. There bee other Farriers which for this infirmity hold, that to giue the horse three or foure dayes together sodden wheat, and now and then a quart of new sweete wine, or other good wine, mixt with licoras water, is a certaine remedy. There bee other Farriers which for this disease take the guts of a hedge-hogge, and hang them in a warme ouen till they be dry, so that a man may make powder of them: Then giue your horse two or three spoonefull thereof with a pint of Wine or strong Ale: then the rest mixe with Anise seedes

Licoras

licoras and sweete butter, and make round balles or pils thereof, and giue the horse two or three after his drinke: and so let him fast at least two houres after. Now when at any time you giue him any prouender, bee sure to wash it in Ale or Beere; then take Comin, Anise seedes; Licoras and Sentuary, of each like quantity; make them (being mixt together) into fine powder, and strew two spoonefull thereof vpon the prouender being wet. This physicke must be vsed for a fortnight at the least. Others vse to take of Cloues and Nutmegs three drams, of *Galingale* & *Cardomonum* three drams, of soot, of Bay seedes, and Comin, of each three drams, and make them into fine powder, and put it into white wine, being tempered with a little Saffron: then put to so many yolkes of egges as may countervaile the other quantity: then mixe them with water, wherein Licoras hath beene sodden, making it so thin, that the horse may drinke it; and after he hath drunke the quantity of a pint and halfe of this drinke, tye vp his head to the racke, and let him so stand at least an houre after, that the drinke may desetnd into his guts: then walke him gently abroad, that the medicine may worke; and in any case giue him no water for foure & twenty houres after: the next morning giue him some grasse to eate, and the branches of Willow or Sallow, which will coole the heate of the portion. Now there be other Farriers vvhich take of *Paunces*, *Long-wort*, *Maiden-haire*, the crops of *Nettles*, *Carduus benedictus*, hearbe *Fluetin*, the rootes of *Dragons* bruised, the rootes of *Elecampana* bruised, of vvater-hempe, of *Peniriall*, of *Light-wort*, of *Angelica*, of each

of these a good handfull, or so many of these as you can conueniently get; bruise them, aud lay them all night in two or three gallons of water, and giue it a boyle in the morning, and let the horse drinke thereof as much luke-warme as hee will; then after this drinke giue him a pretty quantity of sodden wheate: vse this diet for a weeke or more at the least: and then if the season be fit, put him to grasse. This cure is of great reputation, and thought to helpe when all other faileth: for mine owne part, I wish euery man to iudge it by the practise.

There be others which onely for nine or ten daiss together, will giue their horse water, wherein Licoras hath beene sodden mixt with Wine, and hold it a most soueraigne helpe.

There be others which will onely giue new milke from the Cow; but I despaire in that cure, because milke being onely flegmaticke, flegme is the onely substance of this disease. Other Farriers vse to keepe the horse fasting foure and twenty houres; then take a quart of Ale, a quarter of an ounce of Fenugreeke, halfe a quarter of Bayes, of the greene barke of Elder trees, of Sugarcandy, of water Cresses, of redde Mints, of red Fennell, of Haw-tree leaues, and of Primrose leaues, of each halfe an ounce, the whites of sixe egges; beat these in a morter, and seeth them in the Ale, giue it him to drinke: then let him fast after twelue houres: then giue him meate and prouender enough, yet but little drinke. Others vse to giue him wet hay and moderate trauell: then take twenty egges, and steepe them in vinegar foure and twenty houres, giuing the horse two euery morning,

ning, and after the egges are spent, a pottle of new milke from the Cow.

Now there be other Farriers which onely will dissolue in vinegar fifteene egges, and giue the horse the first day three, the second day fiue, and the third seuen, and hold it a good helpe. Others will take an ounce of Frankinsence, two ounces of Brimstone, and mixe it with a pint of Wine, and halfe a pint of hony. Others will take *Sal-niter*, burnt with the powder of pitch, and giue it with the same quantity of Wine and hony. Others will onely giue *Sal-niter* mingled with his meate, prouided alwayes, that in euery cure you keepe your horse from cold and labour, and daily chafe his head with oyle and Wine. But of this looke in the new additions for the dry cough.

Chap. 50.

Of the dry Maladie, or Consumption.

THis disease of the dry Malady, or as the auncient Farriers tearme it, a generall consumption, is nothing but a meere exulceration of the lungs, proceeding from a cankerous fretting and gnawing humour ingendred by cold and surfeit, which descending from the head, sickneth and corrodeth the lungs. Some of our ignorant Farriers will call it the mourning of the Chine; but they are thus farre forth deceiued: that the mourning of the Chine doth euer cast some filthy matter in the nose, and the dry Malady neuer casteth forth any thing.

The signes to know this dry Malady, or consump-

tion, are these: his flesh, and strong estate of body will consume and waste away, his belly will bee gaunt; his backe bone hidde, and his skinne so stretched or shrunke vp, that if you strike on him with your hand, it will sound hollow like a Tabor: his haire will hardly shed; and either hee will vtterly forsake his meate, or the meate hee eateth will not disgest, prosper, or breed any flesh on his backe; he will offer to cough, but cannot, except in a weake manner, as though hee had eaten small bones; and truly, according to the opinion of others, so I finde by practise, that it is incurable; yet that a horse may be long preserued to do much seruice, I haue found it by these helpes: First, to purge his head with such fumes and pilles as are good for the Glaunders, which you may finde in the chapter of purgations: then giue him Cole-worts small chopt with his prouender, and now and then the blood of a sucking pigge warme.

There bee other that in stead of the blood, will giue either the iuyce of leekes mixt with oyle and wine, or else wine and frankinsence, or sallet oyle and the iuyce of rue mixt together; but in my conceit, the best cure is to purge his body cleane with comfortable and gentle scourges; and then to bee suffered to runne at grasse, both for a Winter and a Summer, and there is no question but hee must necessarily end or mend; for languish long hee cannot.

CHAP.

Chap. 51.

Of the Consumption of the flesh.

THis disease which we call the Consumption of the flesh, is an vnnaturall or generall dislike, or falling away of the whole body, or as wee tearme it, the wasting of the flesh; which proceedeth from diuers grounds: as namely, from inward surfeits, either by naughty foode, or ill dyet, or from vncleane, moist and stinking lodging; but especially from disorderly labour, as by taking great and sudden colds after violent heate, or such like, all which procure the wasting or falling away of the flesh. The signes whereof are these: first, an vnnaturall and causeless leanesse, a dry and hard skin cleauing fast to his sides, want of stomacke, or appetite to his meate, a falling away of his fillets, and a generall consumption both of his buttockes and shoulders. The cure whereof, according to the Ancients, is to take a sheepes head vnflayed, and boyle it in a gallon and a halfe of Ale, or running water, vntill the flesh be consumed from the bones; then straine it through a cloath, and put thereto of Sugar halfe a pound, of Cynamon one Ounce, of conserue of Roses, of Barberies and of Cherries, of each one ounce; mingle them together, and giue the horse euery morning a quart thereof luke-warme till two sheepes heades bee spent; and after euery time hee drinketh, let him bee gently walked or ridden vp and downe according to his strength, that is, if the weather bee warme, abroad; if it bee cold and windy, then

in the ſtable, or ſome cloſe houſe, ſuffering him neither to eate nor drinke, for two houres after his medicine; and from cold water you ſhall keepe him the ſpace of fifteene dayes. Now for his ordinary foode or prouender, you ſhall repute that beſt which hee eateth beſt whatſoeuer it be; and that you ſhall giue by little and little, and not any groſſe or great quantity at once, becauſe the aboundance and glut of food taketh away both the appetite and nutriment which ſhould proceed from wholeſome feeding.

Chap. 52.

How to make a leane horſe fat.

BEſides this generall conſumption of a horſes fleſh, which for the moſt part, or altogether, proceedeth from ſickneſſe, there is alſo another conſumption, or want of fleſh, which proceedeth from neſhneſſe, tenderneſſe, freeneſſe of ſpirit, and the clymate vnder which the horſe is bred; as namely, when a horſe that is bred in a warme clymate, comes to liue in a cold; or when a horſe that is bred vpon a fruitfull and rich ſoyle, comes to liue in a barren and dry place. In any of theſe caſes the horſe will be leane without any apparent ſigne of griefe or diſeaſe, which to recouer there bee many receipts and medicines, as namely: The auncient Farriers did vſe when a horſe either grew leane without ſickneſſe or wound, or any knowne diſtemperature, to take a quarter of a pecke of beanes, and boyle them in two gallons of water till they ſwell, or burſt, then to mixe with them a pecke of wheate braune, and ſo

to

to giue it the horse in manner of a mash, or in stead of prouender: for it will fat suddenly. Others, and especially the *Italians*, will take Cole-worts, and hauing sodden them, mixe them with wheate bran, and salt, and giue them in stead of prouender. There be others which take the fatty decoction of three Tortoyse being well sodden, (their heads, tayles, bones, and feete, being reiected) and giuing it the horse, suppose it fatteth suddenly: or if you mixe the flesh of the Tortoyse so sodden with your horses prouender, that is good also; But as the simples are *Italian*, and not *English*, so for mine owne part, I referre the vse rather to them then to my countrey men. There bee others which vse to fat vp their horses by giuing them a certaine graine which we call Bucke, in the same manner as we giue Oates or pease. There be others which to fat a horse, will giue him onely parched wheate, and a little wine mixed with his water, and amongst his ordinary prouender alwayes some wheate branne; and bee exceeding carefull that the horse be cleane drest, well rubbed, and soft littered: for without such cleanely-keeping there is no meate will enioy or doe good vpon him; and also when he is fed, it must be by little at once, and not surfeited. There be other Farriers which to feede vp a leane horse, will take Sage, Sauin, Bay-berries, Earth-nuts, Beares grease to drinke with a quart of Wine. Others will giue the intrailes of a Barbell or Tench with white Wine. Others will giue new hot draffe, and new branne, and twenty hard roasted egges, the shels being pulled off, then bruise them, and then put thereto a pretty quantity of salt; then mixe all

together, and giue a good quantitie thereof to the horſe at morne, noone, and euening for his prouender; and once a day (which would be at high noone) giue him a quart or three pints of ſtrong Ale; and when the horſe beginneth to bee glutted vpon this meat, then giue him dried oates: if he be glutted vpon that, then giue him bread; if hee leaue his bread, giue him malt, or any graine that he will eate with a good appetite, obſeruing euer to keepe the horſe very warme; and with this diet in foureteene dayes, the leaneſt horſe will be made exceeding fat. There be other Farriers which to make a horſe fat, will take a quart of Wine, and halfe an ounce of Brimſtone finely beaten with a raw egge, and a peny weight of the powder of *Myrre*; mixe all together, and giue it the horſe to drinke many mornings together. Others will take three-leaued graſſe, halfe greene, and halfe dry, and giue it to the horſe in ſtead of hay, by little at once, and it will fat ſuddenly, onely it will breede much ranke blood. Other Farriers vſe to take two peny worth of pepper, and as much ſaffron, aniſe ſeedes and turmericke, a peny worth of long pepper, two peny worth of Treacle, a peny worth of Licoras, a good quantity of Peniriall, and Arehangell: giue the horſe theſe with the yolkes of egges in milke to drinke. Others vſe to take Wheat made cleane, and ſod with ſalt and lard dried in the Sunne, and giue it twice a day before each watering. Others ſtrong Ale, *Myrre*, ſallet oyle, and twenty graines of white pepper; and in ſtead of the Ale, you may take the decoction, that is, the water wherein Sage and Rue hath beene ſodden, and it will ſoone make the

horſe

horse fat. Others take sodden beanes well bruised, and sprinkled with salt, adding to the water foure times so much beane flower, or wheat branne, and giue that to the horse, and it will fat him suddenly. Wine mixt with the blood of a sucking pigge, made luke-warme, or wine with the iuyce of Feather-feaw, or an ounce of Sulphur, and a peny weight of *Myrre*, well made into powder, together with a new layd egge, will raise vp a horse that languisheth. Barley dryed, or Barley boyled till it burst, either will fat a horse. But the best way of fatting a horse (for most of the wayes before prescribed, are not to breed fat that will continue) is first to giue your horse three mornings together, a pint of sweete wine, and two spoonfull of *Diapente* brewd together: For that drinke will take away all infection and sickenesse from the inward parts: then to feed him well with prouender at least foure times a day, that is, after his water in the morning, after his water at noone, after his water in the eening, and after his water at nine of the clocke at night. Now you shall not let his prouender be all of one sort, but euery meale, if it may be, change, as thus: if in the morning you giue him oates, at noone likewise you shall giue him bread, at euening beanes or pease mixt with wheate branne, and at night sodden barley, and so forth; and euer obserue of what foode he eateth best, of that let him haue the greatest plenty, and there is no question but hee will in short space grow fat, sound, and full of spirit without either mislike or sickenesse.

The mirrour and maister of all Medicines, teaching how to make the leanest and vnsoundest horse that may bee, fat, sound and fit either for market or trauell in the space of foureteene dayes.

IF your horse be full of all the inward diseases that may bee, and brought to that dislike and pouerty that you are desperate of his life, you shall take of wheate meale sixe pound, or as Physitions write, *quantum sufficit*, of anise seedes two ounces, of Comen seedes sixe drammes, of *Carthamus* one dramme and a halfe, of Fenugreeke seedes one ounce two drammes, of Brimstone one ounce and a halfe, of sallet oyle one pint two ounces, of hony one pound and a halfe, of white wine foure pints: This must bee made into paste, the hard simples being pounded into powder, and finely searst, and then well kneaded together, and so made into balles as bigge as a mans fist; and then euery morning and euening when you would water your horse, dissolue into his cold water one of these balles, by lathering and chafing the same in the water, and then giue it him to drinke. The horse it may be, will coy at the first to drinke it, but it is no matter, let him fast till hee take it: For before two balles be spent, he will refuse all waters for this onely: This is the medicine aboue all medicines, and is truely the best scouring that can be giuen to any horse whatsoeuer: for besides his wonderfull feeding, it cleanseth the body from all bad humors whatsoeuer.

CAP.

Chap. 53.

Of the Breast-paine, or griefe in the Breast.

THough most of our Farriers are not curious to vnderstand of this disease, because it is not so common as others; yet both my selfe and others find it is a disease very apt to breed, and to indanger the horse with death. The *Italians* call it, *Granezza di petto*; and it proceedeth from the superfluity of blood, and other grosse humors, which being dissolued by some extreme and diforderly heate, resorteth downeward to the breast, and paineth the horse extremely, that he can hardly goe. The signes are, a stiffe staggering, and weake going with his fore-legges; and hee can very hardly, or not at all, bow downe his head to the ground, either to eate or to drinke, and will grone much when he doth either the one or the other. The cure is, first to bathe all his breast and fore-boothes with the oyle of *Peter*; and if that do not helpe him within three or foure dayes, then to let him blood on both his breast veines in the ordinary place, and then put in a rowell either of haire, corke, horne, or leather, of all which, and the manner of rowelling, you shall read in a more particular Chapter hereafter in the booke of Chyrurgery.

Now there be other Farriers which for this sickenesse will first giue the horse an inward drench, as namely, a pint of sweete wine, and two spoonefull of *Diapente*: then bath all his breast and legges with wine and oyle mingled together, and in some ten or twelue dayes it will take away the griefe.

Chap.

Chap. 54.
Of the sickneſſe of the Heart, called the Anticor.

THis ſickneſſe of the heart, which by the ancient Fariers is called *Anticor*, as much as to ſay, againſt or contrary to the heart, is a dangerous and mortall ſickneſſe, proceeding from the great aboundance of blood which is bredde by too curious and proud keeping, where the horſe hath much meate, and little or no labour, as for the moſt part your geldings of price haue, which running all the Summer at graſſe, doe nothing but gather their own food, and ſuch like, where the maiſters too much loue and tenderneſſe is the meanes to bring the horſe to his death as wee finde daily in our practiſe: for when ſuch naughty and corrupt blood is gathered, it reſorteth to the inward parts, and ſo ſuffocateth the heart. The ſignes whereof are, the horſe will many times haue a ſmall ſwelling riſe at the bottome of the breaſt, which ſwelling will encreaſe and riſe vpward euen to the toppe of the necke of the horſe, and then moſt aſſuredly it kils the horſe: he will alſo hang his head either downe to the manger, or downe to the ground, forſaking his food, and groaning with much painefulneſſe. This diſeaſe is of many ignorant Smiths taken ſometimes for the yellowes, and ſometimes for the ſtaggers; but you ſhall know that it is not by theſe obſeruations: Firſt, neither about the whites of his eyes, nor the inſides of his lippes ſhall you perceiue any apparant yellowes, and ſo then it cannot

cannot be the yellowes, nor will he haue any great swelling about his eyes, nor dizzinesse in his head, before hee be at the point of death; and so consequently it cannot be the staggers. The cure whereof is two fold: the first a preuention, or preseruatiue before the disease come: the second, a remedy after the disease is apparant. For the preuention, or preseruatiue, you shall obserue, that if your horse liue idly, either at grasse or in the stable, and withall grow very fat, which fatnesse is neuer vnaccompanied with corruptnesse, that then you faile not to let him blood in the necke veine before you turne him to grasse, or before you put him to feede in the stable; and likewise let him blood two or three moneths after, when you see he is fed; and at each time of letting blood, you must make your quantity according to the goodnesse of the blood: For if the blood be blacke and thicke, which is a signe of inflammation and corruption, you shall take the more; if it be pure, red and thin, which is a signe of strength and healthfulnesse, you shall take little, or none at all. There be others which vse for this preuention, to giue the horse a scouring, or purgation of Malmsey, oyle and sugar candy, the making and vse whereof you shall read in the Chapter of purgations; and this would be giuen immediatly when you put your horse to feede, and as soone as you see his kinne full swolne with fatnesse.

Now for the remedy when this disease shall bee apparant, you shall let him blood on both his plat veines, or if the Smiths skill will not extend so farre, then you shall let the horse blood on the necke veine,

veine, and that he bleed abundantly: then you shall giue him this drinke. Take a quart of Malmsey, and put thereunto halfe a quarterne of Sugar, and two ounces of Cynamon beaten to powder, and being made warme, giue it the horse to drinke: then keepe him very warme in the stable, stuffing him round about with soft wispes very close, especially about the stomacke, least any winde do annoy him: and let his ordinary drinke be warme mashes of malt and water, and his food onely that, whatsoeuer it be, which hee eateth with the best stomacke.

Now if you see any swelling to appeare, whether it bee soft or hard: then besides letting him blood, you shall strike the swelling in diuers places with a fleame or launcet, that the corruption may issue forth; and then annoynt it with hogges grease made warme: For that will either expell it, or bring it to a head, especially if the swelling bee kept exceeding warme. There be other Farriers which for this disease, vse first to let the horse blood, as is aforesayd, and then to giue him a quart of Malmsey, well brewd with three spoonefull of the powder called *Diapente*; and if the swelling arise, to lay thereunto nothing but hay well sodden in old vrine; and then keepe the same diet as is aforsayd. Others vse after the letting of blood, to giue the horse no drinke, but onely tenne or twelue spoonefulls of that water which is called Doctor *Stephens* water, and is not vnknowne to any Apothecary; and then for the rest of the cure to proceed in all things as is before specified, and questionlesse I haue seene strange effects of this practise.

CHAP.

Chap. 55.
Of tired Horses.

SInce we are thus farre proceeded into the inward and vitall parts of a horses body, it is not amisse to speake something of the tiring of horses, and of the remedies for the same; because when a horse is truely tired (as by ouer extreme labour) it is questionlesse that all his vitall parts are made sicke and feebled. For to tell you in more plainnesse what tiring is, it is when a horse by extreme and vncessant labour, hath all his inward and vitall Powers which should accompany and reioyce the heart, expelled and driuen outward to the outward parts, and lesse deseruing members, leauing the heart forlorne and sicke, insomuch that a generall and cold faintnesse spreadeth ouer the whole body, and weakneth it, in such sort that it can endure no further trauell, till those liuely heates, faculties and powers bee brought vnto their naturall and true places backe againe, and made to giue comfort to the heart whom their losse sickned.

Now for the tiring of horses, though in truth it proceedeth from no other cause but this before spoken; yet in as much as in our common and vulgar speech, we say euery horse that giueth ouer his labour is tired, you shall vnderstand, that such giuing ouer may proceede from foure causes: the first, from inward sickenesse: the second, from some wound receiued either of body or limbes: the third, from dulnesse of spirit, cowardlinesse or restinesse; and

the

the fourth from most extreme labour and trauaile, which is true tiredneſſe indeede. Now for the firſt, which is inward ſickneſſe, you ſhall looke into the generall ſignes of euery diſeaſe, and if you finde any of thoſe ſignes to be apparant, you ſhall ſtraight conclude vppon that diſeaſe, and taking away the cauſe thereof, haue no doubt but the effects of his tiring will vaniſh with the ſame. For the ſecond, which is by ſome wound receiued, as by cutting or diſmembring the ſinewes, ligaments or muſcles, or by ſtraining or ſtooming any bone or ioynt, or by pricking in ſhooing, or ſtriking nayle, yron, ſtub, or thorne into the ſole of the horſes foot, and ſuch like.

Sith the firſt is apparant to the eye, by diſ-ioyning the skinne, the other by halting, you ſhall take a ſuruey of your horſe; and finding any of them apparant, looke what the griefe is, repaire to the latter part of this booke, which intreateth of Chyrurgery; and finding it there, vſe the meanes preſcribed, and the tiring will eaſily be cured. Now for the third, which is dulneſſe of ſpirit, cowardneſſe or reſtineſſe, you ſhall finde them by theſe ſignes: If hee haue no apparant ſigne either of inward ſickneſſe, or outward griefe, neither ſweateth much, nor ſheweth any great alteration of countenance; yet notwithſtanding tireth, and refuſeth reaſonable labour, then ſuch tyring proceedeth from dulneſſe of ſpirit; but if after indifferent long trauell the horſe tire, and then the man deſcending from his backe, the horſe runne or trot away, as though hee were not tired; the man then mounting againe, the horſe vtterly refuſe to goe forward, ſuch tiring proceedeth from cowardlineſſe;

but

but if a horse within one, two, or three miles riding, being temperately vsed, and being neither put to any tryall of his strength, nor, as it were scarcely warmed, if he in his best strength refuse labour, and tire, it proceedeth onely from restinesse and ill conditions. Then for the cure of any of all these, proceeding from dulnesse, fearefulnesse, and vnwillingnesse, you shall take ordinary window-glasse, and beate it into fine powder: then take vp the skinne of each side the spurre veine betweene your finger and your thumbe, and with a fine naile or bodkin, make diuers small holes through the skinne, then rubbe glasse powder very hard into those holes; which done, mount his backe, and doe but offer to touch his sides with your heeles, and be sure if he haue life in him, he will goe forward, the greatest feare being that he will still but goe too fast: but after your iourney is ended, and you alighted, you must not faile (becausse this powder of glasse will corrode and rot his sides) to annoint both the sore places with the powder of Iet and Turpentine mixt together: for that will draw out the venom, and heale his sides againe. There be others which vse when a horse tireth thus through dull cowardlinesse or restinesse, to thrust a burning brand or yron into his buttockes, or to bring bottles of blazing straw about his eares, there is neither of the cures but is exceeding good.

But for the true tired horse, which tireth through a naturall faintnesse, drawne from exceeding labour: the signes to know it being long trauell, much sweat, and willingnesse of courage during his strength: the

cure thereof, according to the opinion of ſome Farriers, is to powre oyle and vinegar into his noſtrilles, and to giue him the drinke of ſheepes heads mentioned in the chapter of the conſumption of the fleſh, being the 51 chapter of this booke; and to bathe his legges with a comfortable bath, of which you ſhall finde choyce in the chapter of bathes: or elſe charge them with this charge: Take of Bole-armony, and of Wheate flowre, of each halfe a pound, and a little Roſen beaten into fine powder, and a quart of ſtrong vinegar; mingle them well together, and couer all his leeges therewith; and if it bee in the Summer, turne him to graſſe, and he will recouer his wearineſſe. Others vſe to take a ſlice of freſh beefe, hauing ſteeped it in vinegar, lappe it about your bit or ſnaffle, and hauing made it faſt with a threed, ride your horſe therewith, and he will hardly tire; yet after your iourney is ended, bee ſure to giue your horſe reſt, much warmth, and good feeding, that is, warme maſhes and ſtore of prouender, or elſe he will be the worſe whileſt he liueth.

Now if it be ſo that your horſe tire in ſuch a place as the neceſſity of your occaſions are to be preferred before the value of your horſe, and that you muſt ſeeke vnnaturall meanes to controlle nature: in this caſe you ſhall take (where the powder of glaſſe before ſpoken of cannot be had) three or foure round pibble ſtones, and put them into one of his eares; and then knit the eare that the ſtones fall not out, and the noyſe of thoſe ſtones will make the horſe go after he is vtterly tired; but if that faile, you ſhall with a knife make a hole in the flappe of the horſes

eare,

eare, and thrust a long rough sticke, full of nickes, through the same; and euer as the horse slackes his pace, so saw and fret the sticke vp and downe in the hole, and be sure whilest he hath any life he will not leaue going. Many other torments there are which bee needelesse to rehearse, onely this is my most generall aduice, if at any time you try your horse, to take of old vrine a quart, of salt-peeter three ounces; boyle them well together, and bathe all the horses foure legges in the same, and without question it will bring to the sinewes their naturall strength and nimblenesse; and for other defects warme and good keeping will cure them. And although some of our Northerne Farriers doe hold, that Oaten dough will preuent tiring, yet I haue not approued it so, because I could neuer get any horse that would eate it, the dough would so sticke and clambe in the horses mouth: therefore I hold the cures already recited to be fully sufficient.

Chap. 56.

Of the diseases of the stomacke, and first of the loathing of meate.

THis disease of the loathing of meate, is taken two wayes, the one a forsaking of meate, as when a horses mouth, either through the inflammation of his stomacke, doth breake out into blisters, or such like venemous sores: or when he hath the Lampas, Gigges, Woolfes teeth, and such like. The cure of all which you shall readily finde in the second part of this booke, which treateth of Surgery: the other

a dislike of his meate through the intemperature of his stomacke, being either too hot, as proceeding either from rankenesse of blood, or extremity of trauell; as you may perceiue by daily experience, when a horse is set vp in the stable very hot, and meat instantly giuen him, it is all thing to nothing but hee will loath and refuse it. Hence it comes, that I did euer hate the noone-tide bayting of horses, because mens iourneyes commonly craving haste, the horse cannot take such a natnrall cooling as hee ought before his meate, and thereby breedes much sickenesse and disease: for meate giuen presently after trauell when a horse is hot, is the mother of all infirmitie: or else it proceedeth from the intemperature of the stomacke, being too cold, as being caused by some naturall defect. Now if it proceed from heat onely, which you shall know either by his sudden loathing of his meate, or the extreame heate of his mouth and breath: then to coole his stomacke againe, you shall either wash his tongue with vinegar, or giue him to drinke cold water mingled with oyle and vinegar. There be other Farriers which vse to giue this drinke: take of milke and wine of each one pint, and put thereunto of *Mel Rosatum* three ounces, and hauing washed his mouth with vinegar and salt, giue him the drinke luke warme with a horne. But if the loathing of his meate proceede from the cold nesse of his stomacke, which onely is knowne by the standing vp, and staring of his haire: then by the opinion of the auncient Farriers, you shall giue him Wine and Oyle mixt together diuers mornings to drinke; but others of our late Farriers giue

wine,

wine, oyle, rue, and sage boyled together by a quart at a time to drinke. Others to the former compounds will adde white pepper and *Myrre*. Others vse to giue the horse onions pild and chopt, and *Rocket* seed bruised and boyled in wine. Others vse to mixe wine with the blood of a sow-pigge. Now to conclude, for the generall forsaking or loathing of meate, proceeding either from hotte or cold causes in the stomacke, there is nothing better then the greene blades of corne (especially wheate) being giuen in a good quantity, and that the time of the yeare serue for the gathering thereof. Others insteed thereof, will giue the horse sweet wine and the seeds of *Gith* mixt together, or else sweete Wine and Garlicke well pild and stampt, being a long time brewd together.

Chap. 57.

Of the casting out of a horses drinke.

THe ancient Farriers, especially the *Italians*, constantly doe affirme, that a horse may haue sitch a paulsey, proceeding from the coldnesse of his stomacke, and may make him vnable to retaine and keepe his drinke, but that many times he will vomit and cast it vp againe: for mine owne part, from those causes I haue not seene such effects, yet from other causes, as from cold in the head, where the rheume binding about the rootes and kirnels of the tongue, hath as it were, strangled and made straight the passages to the stomacke; there I haue many times seene a horse cast his water that he dranke, in

very aboundant sort backe againe through his nosthrels, and sometimes striue with great earnestnesse to drinke, but could not at all. The signes of both (from which cause soeuer it proceed) is onely the casting vp of his drinke or water, and the cure thereof is onely to giue him cordiall and warme drinkes, as is Malmsey, Cinamon, Anise-seedes, and Cloues, well brewd and mixt together, and to annoint his breast, and vnder his shoulders, with either the oyle of Cypresse, oyle of Spike, or the oyle of Pepper; and to purge his head with fumes or pilles, such as will force him to neese, of which you may see store in a chapter following: for such fumigation ioyning with these hot oyles, will soone dissolue the tumors.

Chap. 58.

Of surfeiting with glut of Prouender.

THere is not any disease more easily procured, nor more dangerous to the life of a horse, then this surfeite which is taken by the glut of prouender; it commeth most commonly by keeping the horse extreame sharpe or hungry, as either by long trauell or long standing empty; and then in the height of greedinesse, giuing him such superabundance of meate, that his stomacke wanting strength to digest it, all the whole body is driuen into an infinite great paine and extreamity. The signes are great weakenesse and feebleneſſe in the horses limbes, so that hee can hardly stand, but lyeth downe oft, and being downe, wallloweth and tumbleth vp and downe as if hee had the Bots.

The cure thereof according to the ordinary practise of our common Farriers, is to take a halfe peny worth of blacke sope, and a quart of new milke, and as much sweete butter as sope; and hauing on a chafing dish and coales, mixe them together, and giue it the horse to drinke: this will cleanse the horses stomacke, and bring it to it strength againe.

But the auncient Farriers did vse first, to let the horse blood in the necke veine, (because euery surfeit breedes distemperature in the blood) then trot the horse vp and downe an houre or more; and if he cannot stale, draw out his yard and wash it with white Wine made luke-warme, and thrust into his yard either a cloue of garlicke or a little oyle of camomill, with a peece of small waxe candle. If he cannot dung, first with your hand rake his fundament, and then giue him a glister, of which you shall reade hereafter: when his glister is receiued, you shall walke him vp and downe till he haue emptied his belly, then set him vp and keepe him hungry the space of two or three dayes, obseruing euer to sprinkle the hay he eateth with a little water, and let his drinke bee warme water and branne made mash-wise; after he hath drunke the drinke, let him eate the branne if he please, but from other prouender keepe him fasting, at the least tenne dayes.

There be other Farriers that in this case, vse onely to take a quart of Beere or Ale, and two peny worth of sallet oyle, and as much Dragon water, a peny worth of Treacle; and make all these warme

vpon the coales, then put in an ounce of Cinamon, Aniſe ſeedes, and Cloues, all beaten together, and ſo giue it the horſe luke warme to drinke. All theſe receits are exceeding good; yet for mine owne part, and many of the beſt Farriers confirme the ſame, there is nothing better for this diſeaſe, then moderate exerciſe, much faſting, and once in foure or fiue dayes a pint of ſweete wine, with two ſpoonfull of the powder of *Diapente*.

Chap. 59.

Of foundring in the body, being a ſurfeit got either by Meate, Drinke, or Labour.

THis diſeaſe of foundring in the body, is of all ſurfeites the moſt vile, moſt dangerous, and moſt incident vnto horſes that are daily trauelled; it proceedeth according to the opinion of ſome Farriers, from eating of much prouender ſuddenly after labour, the horſe being then, as it were, panting hot (as we may daily ſee vnskilfull horſemen doe at this day, whereby the meate which the horſe eateth, not being digeſted, breedeth euill and groſſe humours, which by little and little ſpreadeth themſelues thorough the member, doe at length oppreſſe, and almoſt confound the whole body, abſolutely taking away from him all his ſtrength, inſomuch that he can neither goe nor bow his ioynts, nor being laid, is able to riſe againe: beſides, it taketh away from him his inſtrumentall powers, as the office both of vrine and excrements, which cannot be performed but with extreame paine. There be other Farriers, and

to

to their opinion I rather leane, that suppose it proceedeth from suffering the horse to drinke too much in his trauaile being very hot, whereby the grease being suddenly cooled, it doth clap about, and suffocate the inward parts with such a loathsome fulnesse, that without speedy euacuation, there can bee no hope but of death onely. Now whereas some Farriers doe hold that this foundring in the body, should bee no other then the foundring in the legges, because it is (say they) a melting and dissolution of humours which resort downe-ward, they are much deceiued: For it is not as they hold a dissolution of humours, but rather a binding together of corporall and substantiall euils, which by an vnnaturall accident doeth torment the heart. Now for the hold which they take of the name of Foundring, as if it were drawne from the French word *Fundu*, signifying melting, truely I thinke it was rather the ignorance of our old Farriers, which knew not how to entitle the disease, then any coherence it hath with the name it breareth. For mine owne part, I am of opinion that this disease which wee call foundring in the body, doth not only proceede from the causes aforesayd, but also and most oftest by sudden washing horses in the VVinter season, when they are extreme fat and hot with instant trauell, where the cold vapour of the water striking into the body, doeth not onely astonish the inward and vitall parts, but also freezeth vp the skinne, and maketh the blood to leese his office. Now the signes to know this disease, are holding downe of his head, staring vp of his haire, coughing, staggering behind,

behind, trembling after water, dislike of his meate, leanneſſe, ſtiffe going, diſability to riſe when hee is downe: And to conclude, which is the chiefeſt ſigne of all other, his belly will be clung vp to his backe, and his backe riſing vp like a Camell. The cure according to the opinion of the Farriers, is firſt to rake his Fundament, and then to giue him a gliſter: which done, and that the horſes belly is emptied, then take of malmſey a quart, of ſugar halfe a quarterne, of Cynamon halfe an ounce, of licoras and aniſe-ſeedes, of each two ſpoonfull beaten into fine powder; which being put into the malmſey, warme them together at the fire ſo that the hony may bee molten, then giue it the horſe luke-warme to drinke: which done, walke him vp and downe either in the warme ſtable, or ſome warme roade the ſpace of an howre; then let him ſtand on the bit faſting two howers more, onely let him be warme clothed, ſtopt, and littered; and when you giue him hay, let it bee ſprinkled with water, and let his prouender be very cleane ſifted from duſt, and giuen by a little at once; and let his drinke be warme maſhes of malt and water. Now when you ſee him recouer and get a little ſtrength, you ſhall then let him blood in the necke veine, and once a day perfume him with Frankinſence to make him neeſe, and vſe to giue him exerciſe abroad when the weather is warme, and in the houſe when the weather is ſtormy.

Now there be other Farriers which vſe for this diſeaſe to take a halfe peny worth of garlicke, two peny worth of the powder of pepper, two peny worth of the powder of ginger, two peny worth of graines

graines bruised, and put all these into a pottell of strong ale, and giue it the horse to drinke by a quart at a time, dyetting and ordering him as is aforesayd; and when he getteth strength, either let him blood in the necke veine, or the spurre veines, or on both; to conclude, there is no drinke nor dyet which is comfortable, but is most soueraigne and good for this infirmity.

Chap. 60.

Of the greedy Worme or hungry Euill in Horses.

THIS hungry Euill is a disease more common then found out by our Farriers, because the most of our Horse-maisters out of great ignorance, hold it a speciall vertue to see a horse eate eagerly, whereas indeede this ouer-hasty and greedy eating, is more rather an infirmity and sickenesse of the inward parts; and this disease is none other then an insatiate and greedy eating, contrary to nature and olde custome; and for the most part, it followeth some extreame great emptinesse, or want of foode, the beast beeing euen at the pinch, and ready to bee chappe-falne. There bee some Farriers which suppose that it proceedeth from some extreame cold, outwardly taken by trauelling in cold and barraine places, as in the frost and snow, where the outward cold maketh the stomacke cold, whereby all the inward powers are weakned. The signes are onely an alteration or change in the horses feeding, hauing lost all temperance; and

snatching

snatching and chopping at his meate, as if he would deuoure the manger. The cure, according to the opinion of some Farriers, is first to comfort his stomacke by giuing him great slices of white bread toasted at the fire, and steeped in Muskadine, or else bread vntoasted, and steeped in Wine, and then to let him drinke wheat flower and wine brewed together. There be others which vse to knead stiffe cakes of wheate flower and wine, and to feede the horse therewith. Others vse to make him bread of pine-tree nuts and wine mingled together: or else common earth and wine mingled together; but for mine owne part, I hold nothing better then moderately feeding the horse many times in the day with wholesome Beane-bread, well baked, or oates well dryed and sifted.

Chap. 61.

Of the diseases of the Liuer in generall, and first of the inflammation thereof

THere is no question but the Liuer of a horse is subiect to as many diseases as either the Liuer of a man or any other creature, onely through the ignorance of our common Farriers (who make all inward diseases one sickenesse) the true grounds and causes not being looked into, the infirmity is let passe, and many times poysoned with false potions; but truth it is, that the liuer sometimes by the intemperateneſse thereof, as being either too hot, or too cold, too moyst or too dry, or sometimes by meanes of euill humours, as choler, or fleame, ouer-flowing

in

in the same, heate ingendring choler, and coldnesse fleame, the liuer is subiect to many sicknesses, and is diuersly pained, as by Inflammation, Apostumation, or Vlcer, or by Ostructions, Stoppings, or hard knobbes; or lastly, by the consumption of the whole substance thereof. The signes to know if the disease proceede from hot causes, is leannesse of body, the loathing of meate, voyding dung of a strong sent, great thirst, and loosnesse of belly. The signes to know if the disease proceede from cold causes, is good state of body, appetite to meate, dung not stinking, no thirst, and the belly neither loose nor costiue. Now to proceede to the particular diseases of the liuer, and first of the inflammation, you shall vnderstand that it commeth by meanes that the blood through the aboundance, thinnesse, boyling heate, or sharpnesse thereof, or through the violence of some outward cause, breaketh out of the veines, and floweth into the body or substance of the liuer; and so being dispossest of his proper vessels, doth immediatly putrifie, and is inflamed, corrupting so much of the fleshly substance of the liuer, as is either touched or imbrued with the same, whence it commeth, that for the most part, the hollow side of the liuer is first consumed, yet sometimes the full side also: This inflammation by a naturall heate is sometimes turned to putrifaction, and then it is called an Apostumation; which when either by the strength of Nature or Art, it doth breake and runne, then it is called an vlcer, or filthy sore. Now the signes of an inflammation on the hollow side of the liuer (which is least hurtfull) is

loathing

loathing of meate, great thirst, loosnesse of belly, and a continuall vnwillingnesse to lye on the left side; but if the inflammation bee on the full side of the liuer, then the signes be short breathing, a dry cough, much paine when you handle the horse about the wind-pipe, and an vnwillingnesse to lye on the right side. The signes of apostumation is great heate, long fetching of breath, and a continuall looking to his side. The signes of vlceration, is continuall coldnesse, staring vp of the haire, and much feeblenesse and fainting, because the filthy matter casting euill vapours abroad, doeth many times corrupt the heart, and occasion death. Now for the cure of these inflammations, some Farriers vse to take a quart of Ale, an ounce of Myrre, and an ounce of Frankinsence, and brewing them well together, giue it the horse diuers mornings to drinke. Others vse to take three ounces of the seedes of Smallage, and three ounces of Hysop, and as much Sutherwort, and boyle them well in oyle and wine mingled together, and giue it the horse to drinke; keepe the horse warme, and let him neither drinke cold water, nor eate dry dusty hay.

Chap. 62.

Of Obstructions, stoppings, or hard knobs on the Liuer.

THESE obstructions or stoppings of a horses liuer, doe come most commonly by trauelling or labouring on a full stomacke, whereby the meat not being perfectly digested, breedeth grosse and tough humors,

humors, which humors by the extremity of trauell, are violently driuen into the ſmall veines, through which the liuer ought to receiue good nutriment, and ſo by that meanes breedeth obſtructions and ſtoppings. Now from theſe obſtructions (when they haue continued any long time) eſpecially if the humors be cholericke, breedeth many times hard knobbes on the liuer, which knobbes maketh the horſe continually lie on his right ſide, and neuer on the left; becauſe if hee ſhould lye on the left ſide, the weight of the knobbe would oppreſſe the ſtomacke, and euen ſicken all the vitall parts in him.

The ſignes of theſe obſtructions, or ſtoppings, are heauineſſe of countenance, diſtention or ſwelling, great dulneſſe and ſloth in the horſe when hee beginneth his trauell, and a continuall looking backe to his ſhort ribs, where remaineth his greateſt paine and torment. Now the cure thereof is to ſeeth continually in the water which hee drinketh, *Agrimony, Fumitory, Camomill, Worme-wood, Licoras, Aniſe-ſeeds, Smallage, Perſley, Spickenard, Gentian, Succory, Endiue,* and *Lupins*, the vertues whereof are moſt comfortable to the Liuer. But foraſmuch as the moſt part of our Engliſh Farriers are very ſimple Smiths, whoſe capacities are vnable to diue into theſe ſeuerall diſtinctions; and that this worke (or Maiſter-peece) is intended for the weakeſt braine whatſoeuer, you ſhall vnderſtand that there bee certaine generall ſignes to know when the liuer of a horſe is grieued with any griefe, of what nature or condition ſoeuer it be; and ſo likewiſe generall receipts to cure all the griefes, without diſtinguiſhing or knowing their

natures:

natures: You shall know then if a horse haue any griefe or paine in his liuer by these signes. First, by a loathing of his meate; next, by the wasting of his flesh, dryenesse of his mouth, and roughnesse of his tongue, and great swelling thereof, and refusing to lye on the side grieued; and lastly, a continuall looking backward.

Now the generall cures for the sickenesse of the liuer, is, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, to giue the horse *Aloes* dissolued in sweete wine: for it both purgeth and comforteth the liuer. Others vse to giue him to drinke *Ireos* stampt and mixt with wine and water together, or in stead of *Ireos*, to giue him *Calamint*, called of the Latins *Pollimonia*. Others giue *Sauery* with oyle and wine mixt together. Others vse *Liuer-wort* and *Agrimony* with wine and oyle. Others vse comfortable frictions, and to steepe his prouender in warme water, and to mix with his prouender a little *Nitrum*, not forgetting to let him stand warme, and lye soft; but that which is generally praised aboue all medicines, is to giue the horse a VVoolfes liuer beaten to powder, and mixt either with VVine, VVater, Oyle, or any other medicine.

Now for a conclusion of this Chapter, if the Farriers skill be so good, that hee can distinguish the nature of each seuerall infirmity about the liuer, then I would haue him to vnderstand, that for inflammation (which are the first beginners of all diseases) would be vsed simples that mollifie and disperse humors, as be these *Linseed*, *Fenugreeke*, *Camomill*, *Anise-seeds*, *Melilot*, and such like; to which mollifying simples

simples would be euer added some simples that are astringent or binding, as are these: red Rose leaues, Bramble leaues, Wormwood, Plantaine, Myrre, Mastick, Storax, and such like. Now for Apostumes, they are to be ripened & voided, and vlcers must be cleansed and scoured downeward either by excrement or vrine; and therefore the vse of such simples as prouoke either the one or the other (of which you shall finde plenty in other chapters) is most necessary.

Chap. 63.

Of the Consumption of the Liuer.

OF the consumption of the liuer, I haue spoken something in the Chapter of the mourning of the Chine; yet because amongst our best Farriers it is diuersly taken, I will shew you their diuers opinions. First, some hold it commeth onely from sudden cold after heat, taken either by drinking or standing still. Others hold it commeth of any humor, especially of cholericke matter, shed throughout the whole substance of the liuer, which rotting by leasurable degree, doeth in the end corrupt and confound all the substance of the liuer, proceeding, as they thinke, from corrupt meates, and sweet drinkes. And the last thinketh it commeth by extreame heate gotten in trauell, which inflameth the blood, doth afterward putrifie, corrupt and exulcerate the whole substance of the liuer: because the liuer is spongious like the lungs, therefore the cure of this disease is held desperate; yet it bringeth no speedy or sudden death, but a wasting and lingring infirmity: for

the Liuer being corrupted, diſgeſtion is taken away, and ſo the body for want of good nutriment, doth in time conſume. The ſignes of this diſeaſe is a loathing of meate, and a ſtretching forth of the horſes body at length as he ſtandeth; he will ſeldome or neuer lie downe, his breath will ſtinke maruellouſly, and he will continually caſt exceeding foule matter either at one noſtrill, or at both, according as one ſide, or both ſides of the Liuer is conſumed; and on that ſide which he caſteth, he will euer haue betwixt his nether iawes, about the midſt of them, a hard knobbe, or kirnell about the bigneſſe of a wallnut. Now the preſeruatiue for this diſeaſe, (for in truth it is incurable) is, according to the opinion of ſome Farriers, to take halfe a pint of Malmſey, and as much of the blood of a young pigge, and to giue it the horſe luke-warme to drinke. Other Farriers vſe to giue the horſe no other foode for the ſpace of three dayes, then warme wort, and oates baked in an Ouen, being ſure that the horſe be kept faſting the firſt night before he receiue his medicine. Others ſuppoſe, that if into the wort which he drinketh, you doe put euery morning two or three ſpoonfull of the powder made of *Agrimony*, *redde Roſe leaues*, *Saccharum*, *Roſaceum*, *Diarchadon*, *Abbatis*, *Diſantalon*, *Licoras*, and of the Liuer of a Wolfe, that is more excellent. Others hold that this powder giuen with Goates milke luke-warme, is very good: Others hold that Malmſey, and the iuyce of Featherfew giuen to drinke is alſo good. Others vſe (and I hold it equall with the beſt) to take an ounce of *Sulphur viue* beaten into fine powder, and a peny weight

weight of *Myrre* beaten to very fine powder; mixe them together with a new laide egge, and giue them to drinke with halfe a pint of Malmsey: vse this diuers times, and keepe the horse fasting; yet separate him from other horses, for this disease is infectious.

Chap. 64.

Of the diseases in the Gall.

As is the Liuer, euen so the Gall of a horse is subiect to diuers and many infirmities, as to obstructions, from whence floweth the fulnesse and emptinesse of the bladder, and stone in the Gall, and these obstructions doe chance two seuerall wayes: first when the passage by which choler should passe from the Liuer vnto the Bladder of the Gall, as vnto his proper receptacle, is stopped; and so the Bladder of the Gall remaineth emptie: for you are to vnderstand, that the Gall is none other thing then a long slender, little greenish bladder, fixed vnderneath the Liuer, which doth receiue all the cholericke bitter moysture, which would otherwise offend not onely the Liuer, but the whole body also. Now if the passage vnto this necessary vessell bee stopped, there cannot choose but follow many infirmities, as either vomiting, the laxe, or the bloody flixe.

Secondly, when the way whereby such choler should issue forth of the Bladder of the Gall downe into the guts and excrements, is closed vp, and so superaboundeth with too much choler; from whence

springeth dulnesse of spirit, suffocating, belching, heate, thirst, and disposition to rage and fury; and truely to any beast there is not a more dangerous disease then the ouer-flowing of the Gall. The signes of both these kindes of euils or obstructions, are yellowness of the skin infected with yellow Iaundise, and a continuall costiueness of the body: and the cure of them are, according to the most auncient Farriers, to giue the horse milke, and great store of Saffron, boyled together, or in stead of milke to giue Ale, Saffron, and Anise-seedes mixt together. But there be other Farriers, with whom I much more do agree, which hold that Selladine rootes and leaues chopt and bruised, and boyled in Beere, or for want of Selladine, Rue, or hearbe of grace, and giuen the horse luke-warme to drinke, is most soueraigne.

Now for the stone in the Gall, which is of a blackish colour, it commeth from the obstruction of the conduits of the bladder, whereby the choler being too long kept in, becommeth dry, and so conuerteth first into grauell, and after into a sollid & hard stone, of which both the signes, and the cure, are those last before rehearsed.

Chap. 65.

Of all such diseases as are incident to the Spleene.

THe Spleene is a long, narrow, flat spungy substance, of a pale fleshy colour, ioyning with the Liuer and the Gall; it is the receptacle of melancholy, and the dregges of the blood, and is as subiect

iect to infirmitie, as any inward member whatsoeuer, as to inflammations, obstructions, knobbes and swellings; it through the spunginesse, is apt to sucke in all manner of filth, and to dilate and spread the same ouer the whole body: the appearance thereof is on the left side vnder the short ribbes, where you shall perceiue some small swelling, which swelling giues great griefe to the midriffe, especially after a full stomacke, taking away much more of the horses disgestion then his appetite, and being suffered to continue, it makes faint the heart, and growes in the end to a hard knobbe, or stony substance.

This disease, or diseases of the spleene, are incident to horses most in the Summer, proceeding from the surfeit, or greedy eating of greene meates. The signes of which diseases are these, heauinesse, dulnesse, paine on the left side, and hard swellings, short breath, much groaning, and an ouer-hasty desire to his meate. The cure, according to the opinion of our best Farriers, is to make the horse sweate, either by labour or cloathes, then to giue him to drinke a quart of white Wine, wherein hath beene boyled the leaues of *Tamariske* bruised, and a good quantity of Comin-seede beaten to powder, and giue it luke-warme. Others vse, after the horse hath sweat, to powre into his left nostrill euery day; the iuyce of *Myrobalans*, mixt with wine and water, to the quantity of a pint. Others take of Comin-seed and Hony, of each sixe ounces, of *Lacerpitium* as much as a beane, of vinegar a pint, and put all these into three quarts of water, and let it stand so all night,

and giue the horse a quart thereof next morning, hauing fasted all night. Others make the horse a drinke of Garlicke, *Nitrum*, hore-hound, and wormewood, sodden in sharpe Wine, and to bathe all the horses left side with warme water, and to rub it hard. There be others which vse to cauterize or scarifie the horses left side with a hot Iron; but it is barbarous and vile, and carrieth no iudgement in the practise.

Chap. 66.

Of the Yellowes, or Iaundise.

AS before I saide, from the obstructions or ouer-flowings of the Gall and Spleene, doth spring this disease which our common Smiths call the yellowes, and our better Farriers the Iaundise; and you shall vnderstand, that of this Yellowes or Iaundise, there are two kinds, the first an ouer-flowing of choler proceeding from the sickenesse of the Gall, and it is called simply the Yellowes, or yellow Iaundise; because the outward parts of the body, as eyes, skinne, mouth, inside of the lippes, and such like, are dried and coloured yellow: the other an ouer-flowing of melancholy proceeding from the sickenesse of the Spleene, and is called the blacke Yellowes, or blacke Iaundise, because all the outward parts are blacke. Now both these Iaundises, or Yellowes, haue their beginnings from the euils of the Liuer; the yellow Iaundise when the liuer by inflammation hath all his blood conuerted into choler, and so ouer-whelmes the body: and the blacke Iaundise when some obstruction in the liuer veine, which goeth to the Spleene

Spleene, hindereth the Spleene from doing his office, and receiuing the dregges of blood from the Liuer; or else when the Spleene is surcharged with such dregges of the blood, and so sheddeth them backe againe into the veines.

Now although this distinction of the blacke Iaundise, or blacke Yellowes, will appeare strange vnto our common Farriers; yet it is most certaine, that whensoeuer a horse dyeth of the Yellowes, he dyeth onely of the blacke Yellowes: for when it commeth vnto the case of mortality, then are all the inward powers conuerted to blacknesse, and the yellow substance is cleane maistered; but whilst the matter is yellow, so long the horses body is in good state of recouery. Besides, these Yellow doe euer follow one the other, and the lesser hath no sooner got preheminence, but the greater pursues him; of all the inward diseases in a horses body, this is most common oftest in practise, & yet most mortall if it be not early preuented. The signes of this disease of Yellow Iaundise, are yellownesse of the eyes, nostrils, inside of lippes, the skin, the yard and the vrine: his eares and his flanke will sweate, and he will groane when hee lyeth downe, and he will not onely be faint, but vtterly forsake his meate also. The cures which are at this day in practise for this disease, are infinite, and a world of them corrupt and poysonous: euery Smith almost making a medicine of his owne inuention, God knowes weake and to little purpose; but for the best receipts which at this day are vsed by any good Farrier whatsoeuer, I will deliuer you the whole Catalogue.

First, for the auncient Farriers, both Italian and French, they did vse to take of Time and Comin, of each like quantity, and stamping them together, to mingle it with wine, hony, and water; and then to let him blood in the pasternes.

But now the Farriers of latter dayes vse, first to let the horse blood in the necke veine, suffering him to bleed till you perceiue the blood to grow pure; then to giue him this drinke: Take of white Wine or Ale a quart, and put thereunto Saffron, of Turmericke, of each halfe an ounce, and the iuyce that is wrong out of a great handfull of Salladine, and being luke-warme, giue it the horse to drinke; then keepe him warme the space of three or foure dayes, giuing him warme water, with a little branne in it. Others vse after the horse is let blood in the necke veine: First to rake him, then to giue him a suppositary made of Salt, Hony, and Marioram, and then giue him to drinke halfe an ounce of Myrre, dissolued in a quart of Wine or Ale. Others vse to giue after blood-letting, onely cold water and Nitrum mixt together. There be others which after blood-letting, will onely stoppe his eares with Selladine, and then bind them fast vp, and let him haue no exercise for twelue houres after. Others vse after the letting him blood, to giue him a glister; then to take Saffron and Turmericke, and mixing them with a quart of milke, giue it him to drinke luke-warme. Others vse to let the horse blood in the third barre of the roofe of his mouth, with a sharpe knife, and after he hath bled well, to take a halfe peny worth of English Saffron, and a peny

worth

worth of Turmericke, and a new layd egge; with the shell and all small broken, and mixe it in a quart of stale Ale or Beere; and so set him vp warme.

Others vse to take after blood letting of Turmericke and of Saffron a like quantity, and two or three Cloues, and sixe spoonefull of vinegar or verdges, and to put into each eare of the horse, three spoonefulls thereof, and then stoppe his eares with blacke wooll, and so tye them vp for seuen or eight dayes after. Others take long pepper, graines, turmericke and licoras, all beaten into fine powder, then brew them with a quart of strong Beere or Ale, and giue it the horse to drinke. Others vse after taking and blood letting to take the iuyce Iuy leaues, and mingling it with Wine, to squirt it into the horses nostrilles; and to let him drinke onely cold water mixt with *Vitrum*, and let his foode bee grasse, or new hay sprinkled with water. Thus you haue seene, I dare well affirme, all the best practises which are at this day knowne for this disease; and where they all faile, there is no hope of cure; yet let me thus farre further informe you. This disease of the Yellowes, or Iaundise, if the keeper or maister bee not a great deale the more skilfull and carefull, will steale vppon you vnawares, and (as I haue often seene) when you are in the midst of your iourney, remote and distant farre from any Towne that can giue you succour, it may bee your horse will fall downe vnder you, and if you should let him rest till you fetch him succour, questionlesse he will be dead. In this extremity you haue no helpe, but to draw out a sharpe pointed knife, dagger, or rapier for a needle, and as neere

as

as you can (opening the horses mouth) strike him blood about the third bar of the roofe of his mouth, and so letting him eate and swallow his owne blood a good while, then raise him vp, and be sure will goe as fresh as euer hee did; but after you come to place of rest, then bee sure to blood him, and drench him as aforesayd, or else there will a worse fit come vppon him.

Now to conclude for the blacke Iaundise, which of some Farriers is called the drye yellow, though for mine owne part I hold it to bee incurable, yet there bee other Farriers which are of a contrary humour, and prescribe this physicke for the cure thereof: First, to giue the horse a glister made of Oyle, water, and *Nitrum*, after his Fundament is raked; then to powre the decoction of mallowes, mingled with sweete VVine, into his nostrilles, and let his meate bee grasse, or hay sprinkled with water, and a little nitre, and his prouender dryed oates: Hee must rest from labour, and bee often rubbed. Now there be other Farriers, which for this disease would onely haue the horse drinke the decoction of wilde cole-worts sodden in wine; the effects of all which I onely referre to experience.

Chap. 67.

Of the Dropsie, or euill habite of the body.

VVHereas wee haue spoken before of the consumption of the flesh, which proceedeth from surfeites, ill lodging, labour, colds, heates, and such like: you shall also now vnderstand, that there

it

is another dryneſſe or conſumption of the fleſh, which hath no apparant cauſe or ground, and is called of Farriers a Dropſie, or euill habite of the body, which is moſt apparantly ſeene when the horſe by diſlike doth looſe his true naturall colour, as when bayneſſe turnes to dunneſſe, blackneſſe to duskiſhnes, and whiteneſſe to aſhineſſe; and when he looſeth his ſpirit, ſtrength, and alacrity. Now this commeth not from the want of nutriment, but from the want of good nutriment, in that the blood is corrupted either with fleame, choler, or melancholy, comming (according to the opinion of the beſt Farriers) either from the ſpleene, or the weakneſſe of the ſtomacke or liuer, cauſing naughty diſgeſtion.

Others thinke it commeth from foule feeding, or much idleneſſe; but for mine owne part, albeit I haue had as much triall of this diſeaſe, as any one man; and that it becommeth not mee, to controll men of approued iudgements; yet this I dare auerre, that I neuer ſaw this diſeaſe of the euill habite, or euill colour of the body, ſpring from any other grounds, then either diſorderly and wilde riding: or from hunger, or barraine woody keeping. Betwixt it and the Dropſie, there is ſmall or no difference: For the Dropſie being diuided into three kindes, this is the firſt thereof, as namely, an vniuerſall ſwelling of the body, but eſpecially the legges, through the aboundance of water lying betweene the skinne and the fleſh. The ſecond, a ſwelling in the couering or bottome of his belly, as if the horſe were with foale; which is onely a whayiſh humour abiding betwixt the skinne and the rimme:

and

and the third a swelling in the same place by the like humour, abiding betwixt the great bagge and the keil. The signes of this disease are shortnesse of breath, swelling of the body or legges, losse of the horses naturall colour, no appetite vnto meate, and a continuall thirst, his backe, buttockes, and flankes, will bee drye, and shrunke vp to their bones; his veines will bee hid that you cannot see them, and whereseoeuer you shall presse your finger hard against his body, there you shall leaue the print thereof behind you, and the flesh will not rise of a good space after: when he lyeth downe hee will spread out his limbes, and not draw them round together, and his haire will shed with the smallest rubbing. There bee other Farriers which make but onely two dropsies, that is, a wet dropsie, and a windy dropsie; but beeing examined, they are all one with those recited, haue all the same signes and the same cure, which according to the ancient Farriers is in this sort. First, to let him bee warme couered with many cloathes, and either by exercise, or otherwise, driue him into a sweate; then let his backe and body bee rubbed against the haire, and let his foode be for the most part, Cole-worts, Smallage, and Elming Boughes, or what else will keepe his body soluble, or prouoke vrine: when you want this foode, let him eate Grasse, or Hay sprinkled with water, and sometimes you may giue him a kinde of pulse called Ciche, steeped a day and night in water, and then taken out and layed so as the water may droppe away.

There be other Farriers which onely would haue the

the horse to drinke parsley stampt and mixt with wine, or else the roote of the hearb called *Panax* stampt and mixt with wine. Now whereas some Farriers aduise to slit the belly a handfull behind the nauell, that the winde and water may leasurely issue forth, of mine owne knowledge I know the cure to bee most vile; nor can it be done, but to the vtter spoyle and killing of the horse: for a horse is a beast, and wanting knowledge of his owne good, will neuer be dreft but by violence, and that violence will bring downe his kell, so as it will neuer be recouered. Now for these dropsies in the belly, although I haue shewed you the signes and the cures, yet they are rare to be found, and more rare to be cured; but for the other dropsie, which is the swelling of the legges, and the losse of the colour of the haire, it is very ordinary and in hourely practise: the best cure whereof that euer I found, is this: Take of strong Ale a gallon, and set it on the fire, and skumme off the white froth which riseth: then take a handfull of worme-wood with stalkes, and put them into the Ale, and let them boyle till it bee come almost to a quart: then take it off, and straine it exceedingly, then dissolue into it three ounces of the best treacle, and put in also an ounce and a halfe of long pepper and graines beaten to very fine powder: then brew them all together till it be no more but luke-warme, and so giue it the horse to drinke; the next day let him blood on the necke veine, and annoynt his fore-legges with traine oyle, and so turne him into good grasse, and feare not his recouery.

CHAP.

Chap. 68.

Of the diseases in the guts of a horse, and first of the Cholike.

THe guts of a horse are subiect to many and sundry infirmities, as namely, to the wind cholicke, fretting of the belly, costiuenesse, laxe, bloody flixe, and wormes of diuers kinds. Now for the cholicke, it is a grieuous and tormenting paine in the great gut or bagge, which because it is very large and spacious, and full of empty places, it is the more apt to receiue diuers offencied matters, which doe breede diuers infirmities, especially winde, which finding no ready passage out, maketh the body, as it were, swell, and offendeth both the stomacke and other inward members. This disease doth not so much appeare in the stable, as abroad in trauell: and the signes are these: the horse will often offer to stale, but cannot, he will strike at his belly with his hinder foote, and many times stampe; he will forsake his meate, and towards his flanke you shall see his belly appeare more full then ordinary, and hee will desire to lie downe and wallow. The cure thereof, according to the most ancient Farriers, is onely to giue him a glister made either of wilde Cowcumbers, or else of hennes dung, *Nitrum* and strong vinegar, the manner whereof you shall see in the Chapter of glisters; and after the glister labour him.

Others vse to giue the horse the vrine of a childe to drinke, or a glister of sope and salt water. Others vse to giue him fiue drammes of *Myrre* in good wine, and

and then gallop him gently thereupon. Others vse to giue him Smallage and Persley with his prouender, and then to trauell him till he sweate, but for mine owne part, I hold it best to take a quart of malmsey, of cloues, pepper, cinamon, of each halfe an ounce; of sugar halfe a quarterne, and giue the horse luke-warme, and then ride him at least an houre after; but before you ride him, annoynt all his flankes with oyle de Bay, or oyle of Spike. Now if whilest you ride him, hee will not dung, you shall then rake him, and if neede be, enforce him to dung, by thrusting into his fundament a pild onion iagged crosse-wayes, that the tickling of the iuyce may enforce ordure; and by no meanes for foure or fiue dayes let him drinke no cold water, nor eate any grasse or greene corne, but keepe him vpon wholesome drye meate in a warme stable.

Chap. 69.

Of Belly-ake, or fretting in the Belly.

BEsides the cholicke, there is also another grieuous paine in the belly, which Farriers call the Belly-ake, or fretting in the belly, and it proceedeth either from eating of greene pulse when it growes on the ground, or raw vndried pease, beanes, or oates: or else when sharpe fretting humors, or inflammations, or aboundance of grosse matter, is gotten betweene the great gut and the panicle. The signes are much wallowing, great groaning, and often striking at his belly, and gnawing vppon the manger. The cure, according to the opinion of some Farriers,

is

is first to annoynt your hand with sallet oyle, or butter, or grease; and then thrusting it in at the horses fundament, pul out as much dung as you can reach, which is called raking a horse; then giue him a glister of water and salt mixt together, or in stead thereof giue him a suppositary of hony and salt, and then giue him to drinke the powder Sentuary and Wormwood brewd with a quart of Malmesey. Others vse onely to giue the horse a suppositary of New-castle sope, and for mine owne part I hold it onely the best.

Chap. 70.

Of Costiueneſſe, or Belly-bound.

COstiueneſſe or belly-bound is when a horse is so bound in his belly that hee cannot dung; it is a disease of all other most incident to running horses, which are kept in a dry and hot dyet. Now my maisters, the great Farriers, affirme that it proceedeth from glut of prouender, or ouer much feeding and rest; or from winde, grosse humors, or cold, causing obstructions, and stoppings in the guts; but I suppose (and imagine that all the best keepers of hunting or running horses, will consent with me) that it rather proceedeth from much fasting, whereby the gut wanting fresh substance to fill it, doth out of it owne great heate, bake and dry vp that little which it containeth: for it is a certaine rule that nothing can ouer-flow before it be full. Or else it may proceede from eating too much hot and dry food, which sucking vp the fleame and moysture of the body, leaues not sufficient whereby it may be disgested; howeuer,

it

Chap. 72.

Of the Bloody Flixe in Horses.

IT is not to be doubted but that a horse may haue the Bloody Flixe, for in my experience I haue seene it, besides the confirmation of all my Maisters, the old Farriers. Now of the bloody Flixe they make diuers kinds: for sometimes the fat of the slimy filth which is voyded, is sprinkled with a little blood: sometimes the excrement is a watrish blood like the water wherein bloody flesh hath beene washed: sometimes blood mixed with melancholly, and sometimes pure blood; but all these proceeding from one head, which is the exulceration of the gut, they may all very well be helped by one cure. Yet that you may know whether the exulceration be in the inward small guts, or in the outward great guts, you shall obserue if the matter and blood bee perfectly mixt together, then it is in the inner small guts; but if they be not mixed, but come out seuerally, the blood most commonly following the matter, then it is in the thicke outward guts. Now this bloody Flixe commeth most commonly of some sharpe humours, ingendred either by naughty raw food, or vnreasonable trauell; which humours being violently driuen, and hauing to passe through many crooked and narrow wayes, doe cleaue to the guts, and with their heate and sharpenesse fret them, and cause exulceration and grieuous paine. Sometimes this bloody Flixe may come from extreame cold, extreame heate, or extreame moistnesse, or through the

lent, take a quarter of a pound of white Sope, and a handfull of Spurge, bray them very well together, and giue it the horse to drinke with a quart of Ale luke-warme; then let him fast and exercise him more then halfe an houre after, and be sure to keepe him very warme, and let his drinke be onely warme Mashes. A world of other scouring receipts there be; but you shall finde them more at large in the Chapter of Purgations, Glisters, and Suppositaries.

Chap. 71.

Of the Laxe, or too much scouring of Horses.

THe Laxe, or open Fluxe of a horses body, is a dangerous disease, and quickly bringeth a horse to great weakenesse and faintnesse, it proceedeth sometimes from the aboundance of cholericke humours, descending from the Liuer or Gall downe into the guts: sometimes by drinking ouer-much cold water immediately after trauelling, sometimes by sudden trauelling vpon a full stomacke before his meate be digested; sometimes by hasty running or galloping presently after water; and sometimes by licking vp a feather, or eating Hens dung: there is no disease that taketh more sore vpon a horse in short time then this; and yet sith nature her selfe in this disease seemeth to be a Physition to the horses body, I would not wish any Farrier to goe about too suddenly to stop it; but if you finde that by the continuance, nature both leeseth her owne strength, and the horse the good estate of his body, then you shal seeke remedy, and the cure thereof according

cording to the opinion of auncient Farriers, is this. Take of Beane flowre and *Bole-armony*, of each a quarterne; mixe them together in a quart of redde wine, and giue it the horse luke-warme to drinke, and let him be kept very warme and haue much rest: also let the water that he drinketh be lucke-warme, and mixt with beane flowre; yet by no meanes let him drinke aboue once in foure and twenty houres; and then not to his full satisfaction. Others take a pint of red Wine, the powder of one Nutmegge, halfe an ounce of Cinamon, and as much of the rinde of a Pomegranat, and mixing them together, giue it the horse luke-warme to drinke, and let him not drinke any other drinke, except it be once in foure and twenty houres, halfe a horses draught of warme water mixt with beane flowre. Others take a halfe peny-worth of Alome beaten into fine powder, and *Bole-armony* beaten small, and a quart of good milke; mingle them together till the Milke be all on a curd, and then giue it the horse to drinke, obseruing the dyet before rehearsed: but if this disease shall happen to a sucking Foale, as commonly it will, and I my selfe haue seene many that for want of experience haue perished thereby, you shall then onely giue it a pint of strong Verges to drinke, and it is a present remedy: for the Foale feeding onely vpon Milke, and that Milke auoyding in as liquid forme as it was receiued, the Verges will curdell it, and so make it auoide in a grosser, and more tougher substance.

it is a dangerous infirmity, and is the beginning of many other euils. The signes are onely abstinence from the office of nature (I meane dunging) which is most vsuall in all beasts. The cure whereof according to the opinion of the ancientest Farrier, is to take the water wherein Mallowes haue beene long boyled to the quantity of a quart; and put thereto halfe a pint of Oyle, or in stead thereof halfe a pint of Butter very sweete, and one ounce of *Benedicte Laxatue*, and powre that into his Fundament glisterwise: then with a string fasten his Taile hard to his Tuell, and then trot the Horse vp and downe a pretty while, that the medicine may worke so much the better; then let his Taile loose, and suffer him to voide all that is in his belly, then bring him into the Stable, and hauing stood a while, giue him a little wel-clarified hony to drinke; then couer him and keepe him warme, and let his drinke for three or foure dayes, be nothing but sweete Mashes of Malt and Water. Other Farriers vse to take eleuen leaues of Lorell, and stamping them in a Mortar, giue it the horse to drinke with one quart of strong Ale. Others vse to take an ounce of Brimstone finely beaten to powder, and mixing it with Spurge, to giue it the horse in a mash to drinke. Now for mine owne part, I would wish you, if the disease be not very extreamely violent, onely but to rake the horses Fundament, and then to gallop him in his cloathes till he sweate, and then giue him a handfull or two of cleane Rye, and a little Brimstone mixt with it: for Brimstone being giuen with prouender at any time, will scoure; but if the disease be raging and violent,

violence of some extreame scouring formerly giuen, wherein some poysonous simple, as *Siamony*, *Stibium*, or such like, might bee applyed in too great a quantity; or it may come from the weakenesse of the liuer, or the other members which serue for disgestion. The signe of this disease, is onely the auoiding blood with his excrements, or blood in stead of excrements: and the cure according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is to take Saffron one ounce, of Myrre two ounces, of Southernewood three ounces, of Parsley one ounce, of Rue three ounces, of Spittlewort and Hyssop of each two ounces, of Cassia, which is like Cinamon, one ounce; let all these be beaten into fine powder, and mingled with Chalke, and strong Vinegar, wrought into paste; of which Paste make little Cakes, and dry them in the shadow, and being dryed, dissolue some of them in a pint and a halfe of Barley Milke, or for want thereof, in that iuyce which is called *Cremor ptisane*, and giue it the horse to drinke: for it not onely cureth the bloodly Flixe, but being giuen with a quart of warme water, it healeth all griefe and paine either in the belly or bladder, which commeth for want of staleling. Now for mine owne part, I haue euer vsed for the bloody Flixe, but this medicine onely. Take of red wine three pints, halfe a handfull of the hearbe called *Bursa Pastoris*, or Shepheards Purse, and as much Tanners Barke taken out of the Fat and dryed; boyle them in the VVine till somewhat more then a pint be consumed, and then straining it very hard, giue it the horse luke-warme to drink: if you do adde vnto it a little Cinamon, it is not amisse. There be

other Farriers which vse to dissolue in a pint of red wine, foure ounces of the sirrop of Slowes, and giue it the horse to drinke; but either of the other medicines are fully sufficient.

Chap. 73.

Of the falling downe of a horses Fundament.

HOrses sometimes, by meanes of the disease formerly spoken of, which is the bloody Flixe, and sometimes by a naturall weakenesse in the inward bowels, comming through the resolution of the Muscles, seruing to draw vp the Fundament, will many times haue their Fundaments fall downe in great length, both to the much paine of the horse, and great loathsomnesse to the beholders. Now the resolution or falling downe, may come partly by ouermuch straining to dung when a horse is costiue, and partly by ouer-great moisture, as it happens in young children: for then a horse, no creature hath a moister body. Now the signe is apparant, hanging downe of the fundament, and the cure is this. First, you shall looke whether the fundament bee inflamed, that is, whether it be much sweld or no; if it be not inflamed, then you shall annoint it with oyle of Roses warmed on a Chafing-dish and coales, or for want of such oyle, you shall wash it with warme red Wine; but if it be inflamed, then you shall bathe it well with a soft Spunge, dipt in the decoction of Mallowes, Camomill, Linseed, and Fenugreeke, and also you shall annoint it well with Oyle of Camomill and Dill mingled together, to asswage the swel-

ling; and then with a gentle hand, and warme linnen cloathes, thrust it faire and softly vp into his true place: that done, bathe all the tuell about with red Wine, wherein hath bene sodden *Acatium*, Gals, Acorne cuppes, and the parings of Quinces: then throw vpon it either the powder of *Bolearmonicke*, or of Frankinsence, or *Sanguis Draconis*, *Myrre*, *Acatium*, or such like, & then giue him to drinke the dry pils of Pomgranats beaten to powder, either with wine or warme water; and be sure to keepe the horse very warme, and in his body neither too soluble or loose, nor too costiue or hard bound, but of a meane and soft temper; for the extreamity of either is most hurtfull.

Chap. 74.

Of the Bots, Truncheons, and Wormes in a horses body.

MY Maisters, the old Farriers, are of opinion that the guts of a horse doe breed three sorts of wormes, that is to say, little short wormes with great red heads, and long small white tailes, which we call Bots; short and thicke wormes all of a bignesse like a mans finger, which wee call Truncheons; and great long wormes as bigge as a mans finger, and at least sixe inches in length, which wee call by the simple name of wormes onely.

Now for mine owne part, I am of opinion, that the first which are Bots, are not bred in the guts but in the stomacke onely; becausse hauing cut vp many horses, I neuer could finde any one Bot in the

guts, yet great store of both the other wormes; nor euer cut vp the stomacke of a horse, but I found great abomdance of Bots, and neither of the other wormes: whence I am confidently opinlated, that Bots are euer bred in the stomacke, and both the other sorts of wormes in the guts: Truth it is, that all three doe proceede from one selfe-cause, which is a raw, grosse, and flegmaticke matter, apt to putrifaction, and ingendred by foule and naughty feeding; and as they proceed from one selfe-cause, so haue they all one signe, and all one cu[illegible]he signes then are, the horse will forsake his [illegible]e, and not stand vpon his legges, but wallow and tumble, and beate his belly with his feete; and sometimes the paine will be so extreame that he will beate his head against the ground; and truely the violence of these wormes are wonderfull, for I haue seene horses whose stomackes haue ben eaten quite through with them, so that the meat which they eate, could not abide in their stomacke, but fell vpon the swallowing into the body, making the body swell like a Tun, and so haue dyed with huge torment. Now the cure, according to the ancientest Farriers, is to take a quart of sweet Milke, of Hony a quarterne, and giue it him luke-warme; then walke him vp and downe for the space of an houre after, and so let him rest for that day with as little meate and drinke as may be; and by no meanes suffer him to lye downe. The next day when the horse is fasting, take of Rue a handfull, of Saum as much, and being well stampt, put thereunto a little Brimstone, and a little soote of a chimney beaten into fine powder; put all these

things

things together in a quart of Wort, or new Ale and there let them lye in ſteepe the ſpace of an houre or two, then ſtraine it hard through a faire cloth, and giue it the horſe to drinke luke-warme; then bridle him and walke him abroad the ſpace of an houre, then ſet him vp, and let him ſtand on the bit, two or three houres after, and then giue him a little hay. Other Farriers vſe onely to giue the horſe for this diſeaſe, the warme guts of a new ſlaine Henne or Chicken, beeing thruſt downe the horſes throate, and ſure it is paſſing good, eſpecially if a little ſalt be mixed with them: And this muſt be done three mornings together faſting, keeping the horſe from drinking three or foure houres after. Others vſe to take three ounces of the rootes of Caphers, beaten with halfe ſo much Vinegar, and put it downe the horſes throate: or elſe a pint of milke, and a ſpoonefull of Sope giuen the horſe to drinke; or Brimſtone and Milke giuen to drinke, all be very ſoueraigne. Others vſe to binde about the ſnaſle, or bit, mans dung new made, and ſo ride him therewith.

Others take of *Gentian*, *Aloes*, and *Sauin*, of each halfe an ounce, and brew them together with Hony and ſtrong Ale. Others vſe to take onely a quart of cold ſweet Wort. Others take *Sauin* and *Southernwort*: or elſe Wormewood, and the tops of Broome ſmall chopt, and mix it with the horſes prouender. Others vſe to giue the horſe to drinke luke-warme, Elder-berries ſodden in Milke. Others vſe to giue the horſe with his prouender, his owne haire chopt ſmall, and mixt with Bay-ſalt. Others put hot embers in water, and preſently ſtraine it, and giue it the horſe to drinke.

drinke. Others make little round balles of Hony, and the fine powder of Chalke, and putting them into Ale make the horse swallow them. Others vse to take, especially for the long wormes, a halfe peny worth of Fenugreeke, of Anise-seedes a quarter of a pound, a halfe-peny worth of Bay-berries, as much Licoras, and as much Turmericke, and a little quantity of Brimstone; beate them into powder, put them into a quart of Ale, and giue it the horse fasting luke-warme to drinke; then ride him an houre after, then set him vp warme foure and twenty houres after. Others vse, especially for the Truncheons, to take two spoonefull of the powder of VVorme-wood, finely searst, and put it in a pint of good Malmsey, and after it is brewed a while, let it stand and soke all night; then giue it the horse in the morning fasting, then keepe him without meat or drinke foure houres after. Others vse to giue the horse to drinke, two spoonefull of worme-seede, and as much Brimstone, or powder of *Sauin*, with a quart of Malmsey, Ale, or Beere. Others vse to take as much blacke Sope as a VValnut, and as much Brimstone beaten to powder, and a head or two of Garlicke pild and bruised, and put into a quart of good Ale, and giue it the horse luke-warme to drinke.

This medicine also may be administred to a Mare great with Foale, if shee be troubled with the bots or other wormes, so that the blacke Sope bee left out, for it is a violent purger, and may kill the Foale in the Mares belly; yet for mine owne part, I neuer giue any inward Physicall medicine to a Mare great with Foale, but if I finde her troubled with wormes,

as

as is eaſie to be done by the ſtinking of her breath, by the ſlimineſſe of her mouth, and by the greatneſſe of the worme veines vnder his lips: then preſently I do nothing but let her blood in the roofe or palat of her mouth, and make her eate her owne blood; for that I know, will both kill wormes, and helpe moſt inward maladies. But leauing Mares with Foale, let vs returne againe vnto horſes. There bee other Farriers which vſe to take a handfull of new Hennes dung, and a quart of ſtale Ale, and braying them well together, then take a handfull of bay ſalt, and put two egges to it, and hauing mixt them all well together, giue it the horſe to drinke. Others vſe to take a halfe-peny worth of Saffron, and as much Allum, and mixe them with a pint of Milke, and giue it the horſe to drinke: or elſe giue him greene VVillow and greene Reede to eate. Others vſe (and thinke it the beſt of all other medicines) to take the guts of a yong Henne or Pidgeon, and rolle it firſt in a little blacke Sope, then in bay-ſalt, and ſo force it downe the horſes throate. Others vſe (eſpecially for the Truncheons) to let the horſe drinke Hennes dung, Mints, Sage, and Rue, with beere or ale, and to let him blood in the noſtrels. To couclude, except you ſee the horſe very much pained, you ſhall neede to giue him nothing but Roſen and brimſtone mixt together, & blended with his prouender, hauing care that euer you giue it faſting, and long before the horſe do drinke.

CHAP.

Chap. 75.

Of the paine in the Horses Kidneyes.

THERE is no question but the same infirmities which do belong vnto the Liuer, or Spleene of a horse, doe also belong vnto the Kidneyes, as Inflammations, Obstructions, Apostumes, and Vlcers; and truely in opening of Horses, I haue found the Kidney sometimes wasted, which I imputed to some matter of Inflammation: I haue likewise found much grauell, which was onely through Obstructions; and I haue seene the Kidneyes as blacke as Inke, which could not come without an vlcerous Apostumation. But forasmuch as a horse is a Beast, who cannot tell the manner of his paine, nor we so heedfull as wee might haue beene, to obserue the *Symptome* of euery griefe, we are enforst to conclude all vnder one name, which is paine in the Kidneyes, gotten either by some great straine in leading, or by some great burthen bearing. The signes are, the horse will goe rolling and staggering behind, his vrine will bee blackish and thicke, and his Stones (if hee haue any) will bee shrunke vp into his body; if hee haue none, you shall perceiue the sheath of his yard to bee drawne backe-ward; and the great veine which runneth vp the inside of his Thigh, called the Kidney-veine, will flacke and beate continually. The cure according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers is, first to bathe his backe and loines, with Oile, Wine, and *Nitrum*, warmed together [illegible] after he is bathed couer him with warme cloathes, and let him

him stand in litter vp to the belly; then giue him to drinke water wherein hath beene sodden dill, fennell, anise-seedes, sinallage, pasley, spicknard, myrre, and cassia, or as many as you can conueniently get of these simples. The next morning fasting giue him to drinke a quart of Ewes milke, or for want thereof, halfe so much sallet oyle, and Deeres suet molten together: Or, if you can get it, the roote of Daffadill boyled in wine, and let his prouender be dryed oates; and in this dyet keepe him about ten dayes, and he will recouer.

Chap. 76.

Of the diseases belonging to the Bladder or Vrine, and first of the Strangury.

According to the determinate opinion of all the best and ancientest Horse-leaches, the bladder of a horse is subiect to three dangerous diseases, as first, the Strangury, or Strangullion; the second, the Paine-pisse, and the third, the Stone, or Pissuppresse. Now for the first, which is the Strangury or Strangullion, it is, when the horse prouoked to stale often, and auoydeth nothing but a few droppes: it commeth questionlesse, either by the heate and sharpnesse of vrine, caused either by great trauell, or by sharpe and hot meates and drinkes, or else by the exulceration of the bladder, or by meanes of some apposteme in the Liuer and Kidneyes, which apostume being broken, the matter resorteth downe into the bladder, and with the sharpnesse thereof causeth a continuall prouocation of pissing. The

signes

signes are (as I sayd before) a continuall desire to pisse, yet auoyding nothing but a few droppes, and those with such paine, that he will whiske, wry and beate his Taile as he pisseth.

The cure whereof, is to bathe the horses hinder Loines with warme water, and then take bread and Bayes of Laurell, and temper them together with May Butter, and giue him two or three balles thereof downe his throate three dayes together. Others vse (and I haue euer found it the best) to take a quart of new Milke, and a quarterne of sugar, and brewing them well together, giue it the horse to drinke sixe mornings together, obseruing to keepe the horse from all sharpe meates, as mow-burnt hay, Bran, and such like.

Chap. 77.

Of the Paine-pisse, or pissing with paine.

THis disease of Paine-pisse, is when a horse cannot pisse but with great paine and labour, and doeth proceede sometimes from the weakenesse of the bladder, and the colde intemperature thereof; and sometimes through the aboundance of fleame and grosse humours stopping the necke of the bladder. The signes whereof are, the horse will stretch himselfe out as though hee would stale, and thrust out his yard a little, and with the paine clap his Tayle betwixt his thighes to his belly, and hauing stood so a good while, in the end stale a good quantity.

The cure whereof, according to the opinion of some

some Farriers; is to take the iuice of Leekes, sweete Wine, and Oyle, and mingling them together, to powre it into his right nostrell, and walke him a little vppe and downe vpon it: or else to giue him to drinke Smallage seede, or else the roote of wilde Fennell sodden with wine. Others vse to put fine sharpe Onions cleane pil'd, and a little bruised into his Fundament, and then to chafe him immediately vpon it, either by riding him, or running him in a mans hand; or else to take the scraping of the inward parts of the horses owne houes, beaten into powder, and mingled with wine, and powre it into his right nosthrell, and then ride him vpon it. Others vse to leade the horse to a sheepe-coate, or sheepe-penne, where great store of sheepe are wonted: and making the horse to smell of the dung and pisse of the sheep, it will prouoke him to stale presently. Others vse to giue the horse white dogs-dung, dryed and mingled with *Amoniacum*, salt, and wine, to drinke; or else hogges dung onely with wine, or the dregges of horse pisse and wine.

Chap. 78.

Of the Stone, or Pisse-suppresst in a Horse.

THE stone or pisse-suppresst in a horse, is when a horse would faine stale, but cannot at all; and therefore may well be called the suppression of the vrine: It proceedeth according to the opinions of my Maisters, the old Farriers, sometimes from the weakenesse of the bladder, when the water conduit is stopped with grosse humours, or with matter descending

descending from the liuer; or from some inflammation or hard knobs growing at the mouth of the conduit; or for that the sinewes of the bladder are numbed, so as the bladder is without feeling: or it may come by keeping a horse in long trauell, and not suffering him to stale; but most commonly and oftest commeth from obstructions in the kidneyes; where, by the causes aforesaid, a certaine red grauell being bred, and falling downe into the conduits, by mixture of fleame and other grosse humors, is there brought to be a hard stone, and stoppeth the passage of the vrine: For the signes there needeth no more but this, that he would faine pisse, but cannot.

The cure, according to the opinion of the most ancientest Farriers, is first to draw out his yard, and bath it well with white wine, and picke it and scoure it well, least it bee stopped with durt and filthinesse; then put a little oyle of Camomill into his yard with a waxe candle, and a bruised cloue of garlicke; but if that will not force him to stale, then take of parsley two handfulls, of coriander one handfull, stampe them and straine them with a quart of white wine, and dissolue therein one ounce of cake-sope, and giue it luke-warme vnto the horse to drinke; and see that you keepe him as warme as may be, and let him drinke no cold water for the space of fiue or sixe dayes; and when you would haue him to stale, let it either be of good plenty of straw, or vpon the grasse, or in a sheepe-coat. Others (and those of the best esteeme for Horse-leach-craft at this day) vse onely to giue white wine, cake-spoke, and butter very well mixt together, and let the horse drinke it warme.

Others

Others vse to annoint the horses belly first with warme water; then when it is dryed, to annoint it againe with sallet oyle, horse-grease and tarre mixt together, and made warme, and to hold a hot yron against his belly whilst it is annoynting, that the oyntment may the better enter the skin: but I hold this medicine to bee much better for the strangury, or any other paine in the belly, then for the stone; yet it is approued good for all. Others vse to take a pint of white Wine or Ale, and mixe it with a little garlicke, and the whites of tenne egges, and giue it the horse to drinke: or else giue him the iuyce of redde Cole-worts mixt with white Wine, or the root of *Alexanders* bruised, and sodden in Wine to drinke, and wash his yard with Vinegar. Others vse to take either Wormewood, Southernwood, or Galingale, or Mallowes, or Pimpernell; some of these, or any one of these, stampt and strained, and giue it the horse with Ale to drinke. Others vse to take a pint of white Wine, halfe a pint of Burre seede beaten very small, two ounces of Parsley seede, halfe a handfull of Hyssope, halfe an ounce of blacke Sope; mixe them all well together, and warme it, and giue it the horse to drinke: or else take vnset Leekes, and stampe them small, and Sope, Milke, and Butter; and being mixt together, giue it the horse to drinke. Others vse to take a Nutmegge, and a handfull of Parsley seede, beate them to powder; then take as much butter, and mixe them all together in a quart of strong Ale, and giue it the horse luke-warme to drinke: or else take the seed of Smallage, Parsley, *Saxefrace*, the rootes of *Philupendula*,

Cherry-stone kirnels, grummell seedes, and broome-seedes, of each a like quantitie; beate them into fine powder, and giue it the horse with a pint or a quart of white Wine. Now albeit these medicines before rehearsed, are daily in practise, & approued very soueraigne, yet for mine owne part, I haue found none more soueraigne then this: Take a quart of strong Ale, and put it into a pottle pot: then take as many keene radish rootes, cleane washt, being slit through and bruised, as will fill vp the pot: then stopping the pot very close that no aire may come in, let it so stand foure and twenty houres; then straine the Ale and the rootes very hard into a cleane vessell, & giue it the horse fasting in the morning to drinke: then ride him a little vp and downe, and so set him vp warme, and watch him, and you shall see him stale. This you must doe diuers mornings together.

Chap. 79.

Of a Horse that pisseth blood.

THere is nothing more certaine then that a horse many times will pisse blood in stead of vrine, the cause (as the most ancient Farriers suppose) proceeding from some one of these grounds: either ouermuch labour, or too heauy a burthen, especially when the horse is fat: for by either of them the horse may come to breake some veine in his body, and then you shall see cleare blood come out, and no vrine at all, but if the blood be mixt with vrine, then they suppose it commeth from the kidneyes, hauing some ragged stone therein, which through great

trauell

trauell doth fret the veines of the kidneyes, and makes them bleed, through which as the vrine passeth, it taketh the blood away with it also; but for mine owne part, I haue not found any greater cause for the pissing of blood, then the taking vp of a horse from grasse in the strength of Winter (as about Christmas) and presently, without a dayes rest in the stable, to thrust him into a long and weary iourney: from this cause I haue seene many horses after two or three dayes iourney to pisse blood in most grieuous manner. The signes are needlesse. The cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is this: First, let the horse blood in the palate of the mouth, to conuert the blood the contrary way; then take of *Tragagant* which hath beene steeped in Wine, halfe an ounce, of Poppy seed, one dramme, and one scruple, and of *Storax* as much, and twelue pine-apple kirnels; let all these things be beaten, and mingled well together; and giue the horse thereof euer morning the space of seuen dayes, the quantity of a Wall-nut, infused in a quart of sweete Wine. Other latter Farriers vse to let the horse blood in the necke, and boile that blood with Wheate, and with the powder of dryed Pomegranate pilles; then straine it, and giue it him three or foure mornings together to drinke; and let him by no meanes trauell thereupon: or else giue him of husked beanes boyled with the huskes of Acornes, beaten small, and mixt together. Others vse to make him a drinke with the rootes of *Daffadill* mingled with Wheate flowre, and *Sumach* sodden long in water, and so to be giuen to the horse with sweete Wine: or else to

make him a drinke of Goates Milke, and sallet oyle, straining thereunto a little frumenty: or else to giue him sodden beanes and Deeres suet in Wine; each of these are of like force and goodnesse. Now there bee others which vse for this disease to take Barley, and seeth it in the iuyce of Gumfolly, and giue him the Barley to eate, and the iuyce to drinke: or else take the powder of Licoras and Anise-seedes rold vp in Honey, and make round balles thereof, and cast downe the horses throat two or three of them: or else Licoras, Anise-seedes and Garlicke bruised together with a little sallet oyle and Hony, and giuen in a quart of new milke to the horse to drinke, is very soueraigne also; and these two medicines last rehearsed, are exceeding good also for any cold or Glaunders.

Chap. 79.

Of the Colt euill.

THe Colt euill by the most ancient Farriers, especially the Italians, whose hot countrey affoordeth the beasts of more hot and strong natures then ours doth, is thought to be a continuall standing together with an vnnaturall swelling of the yard, proceeding either from some winde filling the Arteries, and hollow sinew, or pipe of the yard, or else through the aboundance of seede, prouoked by the naturall heate of the horse; but our Farriers, who haue not seene that experience, because our horses are of colder temper, say it is onely a swelling of the sheath of the yard, and of that part of the belly

belly about the yard, together with the codde also, proceeding from corrupt seede, which commeth out of the yard, and remaining within the sheath, there putrifieth: and this iudgement wee finde by experience to be most true. Now you shall vnderstand, that Geldings as well as horses are subiect thereunto, because they want naturall heate to expell their seed any further. The signes are onely the outward swelling of the sheath and codde, and none other: and the best cure is first to wash the sheath cleane with luke-marme Vinegar; then draw out the yard and wash it also: which done, ride the horse twice euery day, that is, morning and euening into some deepe running water vp to the belly, tossing him to and fro to allay the heate of members till the swelling be vanished; and if you swim him now and then it will not doe amisse. Others vse to bathe his coddes and yard with the iuyce of Houselicke, or with the water wherein kinholme hath beene sod. Now this Colt euill will sometimes stop the horses vrine that he cannot pisse: then you shall take new Ale, and a little blacke Sope, and giue it the horse to drinke. Others vse to wash rhe horses cods and sheath with butter and vinegar made warme. Others vse to wash his yard and cods with the iuyce of Hemlocke, or else take beane flowre, vinegar and *Bolearmonicke* and mixing them together lay it plaister-wise to his sheath and cods. Others make him a plaister of wine Lees, Houslicke and bran mixt together, and laid to his sheath and cods; but if the first receit will serue, I would not wish you to vse any other medicine.

Chap. 81.

Of the mattering of the Yard.

THis disease of the mattering of the yard, is seldome seene but amongst the hot races or breeds of horses, as the *Jenet*, the *Barbary*, and such like; and it happeneth euer at couering time, when the horse and mare both being too hot, doe burne themselues, by which meanes there issueth forth of the horses yard much filthy matter. The signes are the falling down of the matter, and a swelling at the end of the yard; and the horse can by no meanes draw vp his yard, or couer it within his sheath. The cure is to take a pint of white wine, and boyle therein a quarterne of Roch Allome; and with a large ferring or squirt, squirt in three or foure squirtfull into his yard one after another; and be sure that your squirt goe home vnto the bottome, that the liquor or lotion may scoure the bloody matter away: this doe fiue or sixe times euery day till the horse be whole.

Chap. 82.

Of the shedding of the Seede.

THe shedding of the Seede or the falling away of the sperme in horses, is none other then that which we call in men the running of the reynes: it commeth, as our old Farriers say, either by aboundance and rankenesse of seed, or by the weakenesse of the stones, and seede vessels, not able to retaine the seed vntill it be disgested and thickned; but truly for mine

mine owne part, I thinke it commeth oftner (especially amongst our English horses) by some great straine in leaping, or by teaching a horse to bound, and making him bound the compasse of his naturall strength. The signes are onely the shedding of his seede, which will bee white, thinne, and waterish. The cure, according to the ancient experiments, is first to ride the horse into some cold water vp to the belly, insomuch that his stones may be couered with water: which done, bathe his fundament with water and oyle; then couer him exceeding warme, and giue him euery day to drinke, red wine and hogges dung till the fluxe of his seed stag; but latter experience hath found this receipt better. Take of red wine a quart, and put therein a little *Acatium*, the iuyce of Plantan, and a little Masticke, and giue it him to drinke; and then bathe all his backe with red wine, and oyle of Roses mixt together; but other Farriers take *Venice* Turpentine, and being washt, beat it well with halfe so much Sugar, and then make round bals as bigge as wal-nuts, and giue the horse fiue euery morning, till the fluxe stay.

Chap. 83.

Of the falling downe of the yard.

THe falling downe of the yard is when a horse hath not strength to draw vp his yard within the sheath, but lets it hang downe betweene his legges ill-fauouredly: it commeth (as our best Farriers suppose) either through the weakenesse of the member, by meanes of some resolution in the muscles and

sinews seruing the same, caused by some great straine or stripe on the backe: or else through extreame wearinesse and tyring. The signe is onely the apparant hanging downe of the member: and the cure is (according to some opinions) to wash the horses yard in salt water from the sea, or for want thereof, with water and salt; but if that do not preuaile, then pricke all the outmost skin of his yard with a sharpe needle, but yet as slightly as may be, and not deepe; and then wash all the prickes with strong vinegar, and this will not onely make him draw vp his yard againe, but also if at any time his Fundament chance to fall, this cure will put it vp againe. There be other Farriers which for this disease will put into the pipe of the horses yard, hony and salt boiled together, and made liquid, or else a quicke flye, or a graine of Frankeinsence, or a cloue of Garlicke cleane pild and bruised, and bathe his backe with oyle, wine and *Nitre*, made warme and mingled together. But the best cure, according to our English practise, is first, to wash all the yard with white wine warmed, and then annoynt it with oyle of roses and hony mixt together, and so put it vp into the sheath, and with a little bolster of canuase keepe it from falling downe; and dresse him thus once in foure and twenty houres, vntill he be recouered, and in any case let his backe be kept as warme as is possible, both with cloath, and a charge of plaister made of *Bolearmonicke*, Egges, Wheate-flowre, *Sanguis draconis*, Turpentine and Vinegar, or else lay next his backe a wet sacke, or wet hay, and a dry cloth couer it, and that will keepe his backe exceeding warme.

CHAP.

Chap. 84.
Of the diseases incident to Mares, and first of the barrennesse of the wombe.

THE onely disease incident to the wombe of a Mare (as farre forth as our Farriers are experienced) is barrennesse, which may proceede from diuers causes, as through the vntemperateneſſe of the matrixe, being either too hot and fiery, or too cold and moyst, or too dry, or else too short, or too narrow, or hauing the necke thereof turned awry, or by meanes of some obstruction, or stopping in the matrixe, or in that the Mare is too fat, or too leane, and diuers other such like causes. Now the cure thereof, according to the old Farriers, is to take a good handfull of leekes, and stampe them in a mortar with foure or fiue spoonefull of wine, then put thereunto twelue flies, called *Cantharides*, then straine them all together with a sufficient quantity of water to serue the Mare therewith two dayes to together, by powring the same into her nature with a glister-pipe made for the purpose, and at the end of three dayes next following, offer the horse vnto her that should couer her, and after she is couered, wash her nature twice together with cold water.

There be others which vse to take of *Nitrum*, of Sparrowes dung, and of Turpentine, of each like quantity well wrought together, and made like a Suppositary; and put that into her nature, and it will cause her both to desire the horse, and also to conceiue. There bee some of opinion, that it is good

to

to put a Nettle into the horses mouth that should couer her. Of all which let onely experience be your warrantise.

Chap. 85.

Of the pestilent consumption in Mares.

THERE is a certaine pestilent consumption incident to mares when they are with foale, proceeding from cold fleame, gathered by raw foggy food in the Winter season, which descending from the kidneyes, doth oppresse the matrixe, and makes the Mare consume and pine away; so that if shee be not holpen; she will want strength to foale her foale. The signes are, sudden leanesse, and a dropping of spirit, with much dislike of meate, and a continuall desire to be layd. The cure is, to powre into her nostrilles three pints of fish brine, called *Garume*, three or foure mornings together, and if the griefe be very great, then to take fiue pints, and it will make her vent all fleame at her nostrilles.

Chap. 86.

Of the rage of Loue in Mares.

IT is reported by some of our *English* Farriers, that Mares being proudly and high kept, will at the Spring of the yeare, when their blood begins to wax warme, if they chance, when they goe to the water, to see their owne shadowes therein, that presently they will fall into an extreme loue therewith, and from that loue into such a hot rage, that they will forget

forget either to eate or drinke, and neuer ceaſe running about the paſture, gazing ſtrangely, and looking oft about and behinde them. The cure of this folly is preſently to leade the Mare to the water againe, and there to let her ſee her ſelfe as before; and that ſecond ſight will vtterly extinguiſh the memory of the firſt, and to take away her folly.

Chap. 87.

Of Mares which caſt their Foales.

THE occaſions why Mares caſt their Foales, that is, to foale them either before their times, or dead, are very many, as ſtraines, ſtrokes, intemperate riding, ruſhings, hard wintring, or too great fatneſſe, and ſuch like. Now you ſhall vnderſtand that this aborſement, or vntimely caſting of a Foale, is moſt dangerous to the life of the Mare: For nature being, as it were, detained from her true and perfect cuſtome, which is the preſeruation of health, cannot chooſe but giue way to the contrary, which is death and mortality, and the body and pores being ſet open to the ayre, before it be able to defend the cold, cannot chooſe but bee ſuffocated with vnwholſome vapours. If therefore you haue a mare at any time which doeth caſt her foale, and withall falleth ſicke vpon the ſame, you ſhall preſently take her into the houſe, and ſet her vp very warme, then giue her two ſpoonefull of the powder *Diapente*, well brewd in a pint of ſtrong ſacke, and feede her with ſweete hay, and warme maſhes for at leaſt a weeke after.

Chap.

Chap. 88.

Of Mares that are hard of foaling.

IF it happen by any mischance, or otherwise, that the passages, or other conduits, which leade from the matrixe, be so straitned that the mare cannot foale, and so be in danger of her life: Then it shall be good that you helpe her by holding and stopping her nostrilles with your hand in a gentle manner, that her breath may not haue passage; and she will foale with a great deale the more ease, and much sooner: and sure the paine is nothing, because a Mare alwayes foaleth standing. Now if at any time when your Mare hath foaled, she cannot voyd her secundine, which is the skinne wherein the foale is wrapped, in that naturall manner as she ought, you shall then take a good handfull or two of fennell, and boyle it in water: Then take halfe a pint of that, and another halfe pint of old wine, and put thereto a fourth part of oyle, and mingle them all together ouer the fire, and being but luke-warme, powre it into the Mares nostrilles, and hold her nostrilles close with your hand, to keepe it in a pretty while after, and no question but she will voyd her secundine presently.

Chap. 89.

Of making a Mare to cast her Foale.

IF at any time you would haue your Mare to cast her foale, as hauing present occasion to vse her, or in that the foale is not worthily enough begot, you

you shall take a pottle of new milke, and two handfuls of *Sauin* chopt and bruised, and putting them together, boyle them till one halfe bee consumed; then straine it very hard, and giue it the Mare lukewarme to drinke; then presently gallop her a good pace, then set her vp; doe thus two mornings, and before the third she will haue cast her foale. Others vse with their hand to kill the foale in the mares belly, but it is dangerous, and the former medicine is more sufficient. And thus much of the infirmities of mares. Now let vs returne againe to Horses and Mares in generall.

Chap. 90.

Of the drinking of Horse-leaches by Horses.

IF a horse at any time drinke downe horse-leaches, they will sucke his blood and kill him. The signes are, the horse will hang downe his head to the ground, and aboundance of filthy slauer will fall from his mouth, and sometimes some blood also. The cure is, presently to giue him a pint of sallet oyle to drinke, and that will make them fall away and kill them.

Chap. 91.

Of swallowing downe Hennes dung, or any venimous thing whatsoeuer.

IF a horse chance to swallow downe any hens-dung with his hay, it will fret his guts, and make him to auoyde most filthy matter at his Fundament. The cure

cure whereof is to take a pint of wine, halfe a pint of hony, and two spoonfuls of smallage seede bruised, and mixing them well together, to giue it the horse to drinke; and then to walke him well vpon the same, that he may empty his belly. But if the horse chance to licke vp any other venemous thing, as Neut, or such like, which you shall know by the instant swelling of his body, and the trembling of all his members; then the cure is first to put him into a sweate, either by cloathes or exercise; then to let him blood in the palate of the mouth, and looke how much he bleedeth, so much let him swallow downe hot: or else giue him strong wine and salt mixt together: or else take the roote, and leaues, and fruite of Briony, which being burnt to ashes, giue the horse a good spoonefull thereof with a pint of sweete wine to drinke. Now for mine owne part, I haue euer vsed to take a pint of sallet oyle, and two spoonefull of Sugarcandy beaten to powder, and as much of the powder *Diapente*, and brewing them together, giue it the horse to drinke: or for want of *Diapente*, so much of the shauing either of Iuory, or of an old Stagges horne, especially the tips thereof.

Chap. 92.

Of Purging Medicines in generall, and first of the Suppositary.

PVrging is sayd of our most ancientest Farriers, to be an emptying and discharging of all superfluous humours which distemper the body with their euill qualities: For such humors breede euill nutriment,

ment; which when it will not bee corrected nor holpen with good dyet, alteration, nor the benefite of nature and kindly heate, then must it of force either be taken away by Purgation, Glister or Suppositary. Now forasmuch as a horse is troubled with many diseases in the guts, and that nothing can purge the gut with that gentlenesse which a Suppositary doth, I will here first begin to speake of Suppositaries.

Vnderstand then that a horse being surfeited, and full of euill humors, needing to be purged, it is best first to giue him a Suppositary; least if you should come to apply a glister, the great gut being stopped with dry, hard, and hot excrements, the medicine not able to worke beyond it, loose both labour and vertue; so that I make account the Suppositary is but onely a preparatiue to the glister, and but onely to cleanse and make loose the great gut, which commeth to the tuell. The gentlest Suppositary then, and that which purgeth fleame in the best manner, is to take a square peece of cake-sope, or white New castle sope, about fiue or sixe inches long, and shauing it round till it bee not aboue three inches about in the midst, and a little smaller at each end then in the midst; then annoynt it ouer with sallet oyle, and so with your hand thrust it vp more then a full spanne into his fundament; then suddenly clappe his taile to his tuell, and hold it hard and close more then halfe an houre, in which space the most part of the suppositary will be wasted; then gently take away your hand, and let him voyde the suppositary at his pleasure. The next Suppositary to this, and which

purgeth

purgeth choler aboundantly, is to take *Sauin*, stampt small, stauesaker and salt, and boyle them in hony till it be thicke; then take and knead it, and rolle it of a pretty thicke long rolle, as before you were taught for the hard sope, and administer it at his tuell. The next to this, and that which purgeth melancholy, is to take a keene onion, and pilling off the skin, iagge it a little crosse-wise with your knife; and so thrust it vp into the horses Fundament. There is besides these Suppositaries, one other Suppositary, which is to take a quart of hony, and boyle it on the fire till it come to be thicke like a salue, then powre it forth vpon a table, and kneade it like a peece of dough: then when it begins to harden, or grow stiffe, (as it will doe when it begins to coole) then rolle it vp vnder your hand, and make it in the forme of a Suppositary, as is before shewed, and administer it in the same manner. This Suppositary is good to purge the gut of any foule humor, and therewithall is comfortable to the body.

Now you must also vnderstand, that as these Suppositaries are preparatiue before glisters, so they are likewise to be vsed simply of themselues, where the sickenesse of the horse carrieth no great danger: For vppon euery sight occasion, or small dryenesse which is to be dissolued with the most gentle medicine, to administer a glister, were to bring the horses body to such an intemperate loosenesse, as would prooue much worse then the contrary dryenesse. Therefore I wish euery carefull Farrier (because the body of a horse would not bee tempered withall too much by Physicke) first, in the cause of costiuenesse,

or

or inflammation of the inward parts, to approue a suppositary; which if it worke effectually, and keepe the horses body soluble, then to proceede no further; but in case it doe not, but that the offensiue matter still increaseth, then to administer a Glister; and where that faileth to take away the offence, to administer a purgation. Now by the way, you are to take with you this generall rule, and neuer to faile in the performance, which is, neuer to administer either Suppositary or Glister, but first immediately before you giue it, to rake your horse, which raking is in this manner. First, you shall annoint all your hand and arme ouer either with Sallet Oyle, sweete Butter, or fresh Grease; and then thrust it into the horses Fundament, and draw out all the dung, fleame, and filthy matter that you can feele, euen as high vp as the great bagge: which done, then administer either your Suppositary or Glister, which you please, at your pleasure; and in any case, whilst the horse is thus in Physicke, keepe him exceeding warme.

Chap. 93.

Of Glisters and their vses.

THe natures and properties of Glisters are diuers, and therefore it is necessary that euery carefull Farriers learne to know to what end they serue, and with what drugges or simples ought to bee compounded: for euery Glister is to be made according to the disease. Now of Glisters some are to ease griefes, and to allay the sharpenesse of the humours,

some to binde, some to looſen, and some to purge, and some to heale vlcers. These Gliſtets by cleanſing the guts, refreſh the vitall parts, and prepare the way before for euery inward and ſtronger purgation. Therefore whenſoeuer a horſe through groſſeneſſe of humours, corruption of blood, or aboundance of fleame, choller, or melancholly, is brought vnto that euill habite of body, that of neceſſitie he muſt be purged, and that eſpecially his paine is in his guts and body, you ſhall then, as before I ſaid (hauing made a probation of a Suppoſitary) firſt of all adminiſter a Gliſter; leſt by purging ſuddenly with any Purgation or Potion, you ſtirre vp a multitude of euill humours, which finding no paſſage downward (becauſe the guts be ſtopped with wind and dregs) doe ſtrike vpwards, and ſo perhaps put the horſe into much greater danger.

Now for the compoſition of gliſters, you ſhall vnderſtand that they be made of foure things, that is, of decoctions, of drugs, of oyle, or ſuch like vnctious matters, as Butter, or ſoft Greaſe; and fourthly, of diuers ſalts, to prouoke the vertue expulſiue. A decoction is the broth of certaine hearbes and ſimples boyled together in water vntill the third part be conſumed. Now ſometimes for want of ſuch decoctions, you may if you pleaſe, vſe ſome fat Beefe broth, or the broth of a ſheepes head, or ſuch like, or milke or way, or ſome ſuch like liquor, mingled ſometimes either with Hony or with Sugar, according to the quality of the diſeaſe; the Gliſter being either lenitiue, that is to ſay, eaſing of paine; or glutinatiue, which is, ioyning of things together; or elſe abſterſiue,

absterſiue, which is, wiping away, or cleanſing of filthy matter. Now of this decoction or broth being cleane ſtrained, you ſhall neuer take aboue three pints at the moſt, and many times but a quart, into which you ſhall put ſuch drugges as are needfull, exceeding not at the moſt, aboue three or foure ounces, according as the ſimples be more or leſſe violent: of Oyle you ſhall neuer vſe in a Gliſter aboue halfe a pint, and of Salt not aboue three or foure drams. You ſhall alſo continually adminiſter your Gliſter luke warme, either with ſome long horne, or a large gliſter pipe made for the purpoſe, and fixed to the largeſt bladder you can get; and this gliſter pipe is of all the beſt, and doth leaſt looſe labour. When you doe adminiſter a gliſter, you ſhall ſet the horſes hinder parts ſomwhat higher then the foreparts, and then you ſhall put the gliſter pipe in at his tuell into his fundament vp to the head, and hauing the confection within the bladder, wring it with good ſtrength into his body. A Gliſter would be adminiſtred to a horſe when hee is rather empty then full paunched, whether it be in the fore-noone or afternoone. Now for the retaining or holding of the Gliſter in the horſes body, three quarters of an houre is ſufficient, of what quality ſoeuer it be. Now you are to note by the way, that as ſoone as the Gliſter is adminiſtred into the horſes body, you muſt draw out the pipe with all the gentleneſſe that may bee, and ſuddenly clappe his taile to his tuell, and ſo hold it with your hand, without any mouing or ſtirring of the horſe till the medicine haue his full time of working. Now to come vnto particular

Glisters, that you may know which Glister is for which purpose, the first is; take of the pulpe of *Coliquintida* halfe an ounce, of *Dragantium* three quarters of an ounce, of *Centuary*, and of Wormewood, of each halfe a handfull, of *Castoreum* a quarter of an ounce; boyle them in three pints of water, then being strained you shall dissolue therein of *Gerologundinum* three ounces, of salt three quarters of an ounce; and of Oyle Oliue halfe a pint, and so luke-warme administer it Glister-wise, as hath beene before expressed: this Glister is exceeding soueraigne for the pestilence in horses, as for any Feuer of what nature soeuer.

The next is to take the decoction of Mallowes, and to mixe therewithall, either fresh Butter, or Sallet Oyle, and so luke-warme administer it: this is of all Glisters the most gentlest, and as the former Glister is absterstiue or cleansing, so this is lenitiue and a great easer of paine; it is most soueraigne for a horse that is taken, or that hath any contraction or convultion, and generally for any costiuenesse in a horse whatsoeuer, proceeding from inward surfeite or sicknesse, as from the surfeite by prouender, foundring in the body, and such like. The next is to take of salt water, or cleane Brine a quart, and dissolue therein a pretty quantity of Sope, and then luke-warme administer it: the Glister ir good for the Chollicke, or any sickneſſe of the guts or belly. And thus from these three Glisters you may compound many Glisters; but in mine opinion, if you vse one more but them onely, they will be fully sufficient.

CHAP.

Chap. 94.

Of Purgations and their vses.

THe purging of horses is euer by one of these two wayes, either by Pils, or by Portion: Pils are any solid and substantiall stuffe fixed together in one body, and being made into round balles, are cast downe the horses: and a portion, is when you giue the horse any liquid purging matter to drinke, whether it bee purging powders dissolued in Wine or Ale: or that it be any other liquid stuffe, Now for Pils, they onely purge and make cleane the head and braine, bringing fleame and other grosse humours downe into the excrements; and Potions cleanse the stomacke, guts, and euery other inward member. Now the Art of the carefull Farrier is in choosing the simples, whereof these Pilles or Portions are to be compounded, and in aptly, or artificially applying the same. First then, it is needfull that euery Farrier (before he goe about to purge his horse) know with what ill humors a horse is oppresst, as whether it proceede from choller, fleame, or melancholy, and where the humours doe most abound; and then what simples are best to purge those humours, and with what property, quality and temperament they be indued; for some simples are most violent, and next cousins to strong poysons, as *Scamony*, or *Coloquintida*; some againe are gentle, and rather nourishing then medicinall, as *Manna*, *Cassia*, Whay, Prunes, and such like: and some are neither to violent, nor too gentle, but of a meane, as *Rewbarbe*,

Agaricke, *Sene*, and *Aloes*. Now the ancient Farriers did vse to purge their horses with the pulpe of *Coloquintida*, sometimes with the rootes of wild Cowcumbers, and sometimes with the broth of a sodden whelpe mixt with *Nitram*, and such like; but at this day they are not of our practise, and therefore I wish him that for his experience mill make a tryall of strong medicines, or know the workings of euery simple (which is a most praise-worthy ambition,) first to make his proofes vpon Iades, whose losse hee respecteth not, and so by that working to aduenture on better horses. But to returne to my purpose, the Farrier who goeth about to purge a horse by purgation, must consider the nature of the horses disease, and the strength of the horse, and with them ioyne the nature, strength, and quantity of the medicine; hee must also consider the climate vnder which the horse is bred, the time of the disease, the time of the yeare, and the time of the day: for as the diseases, and the humours which cause the diseases, are sundry, so they must be auoided by sundry medicines, sundry wayes compounded, according as experience from a continuall practise shall instruct you; wherein you are to obserue, that weake, delicate, and tender horses are not to bee purged with that violence which strong, stubborne, and sturdy horses are; and therefore in such cases, the quality and quantity is to be looked into of euery simple. The climate is to be respected, as whether it be hot or cold; and the time of the disease: for some diseases must bee purged at the beginning, as Feuers, Pestilence, Yellowes, Staggers, and all violent

lent inward diseases; and some not till the matter be throughly disgested, as Colds, Strangles, and Apostumations. Now albeit the sickenesse proceede from cold humours, yet you must not administer as hot simples in Summer as in Winter; nor in the contrary case, so cold things in Winter as in Summer; whereby you see the season of the yeare is to bee respected. Then touching respect of the day, you are to obserue that day to bee best that is most temperate, sith too much heat maketh a horse faint, and too much cold doeth hinder the medicine from working. A little regard is to be had to the winde and weather; for a moyst day with a South winde, is to bee preferred before a North winde with a dry day. Now the best houre of receiuing any Potion, is euer in the morning after he hath fasted from meate and drinke all the night before. As soone as your horse hath receiued any Pill or Potion, let him be walked or gently ridden vp and downe one houre at the least; and then set vp, and suffered to stand on the bit two houres after, well littered, cloathed and stopped; but if you perceiue that hee beginneth to grow sicke (as most commonly horses will) then you shall suffer him to lye downe, and assoone as his sickenesse is past, you shall offer him a Mash of Malt and water luke-warme: for any other meate keepe him fasting till his medicine haue done working.

Now to come to particular receipts and medicines themselues, you shall vnderstand that although the ancient Farries doe make but two kinds, that is to say, Pils and Purgations, yet I diuide them

into three, that is to ſay, Scourings, Pils, and Purgations. Scourings are thoſe wholeſome, naturall, and gentle purging medicines, which ſtirring vp no great Fluxe of humours, doe onely keepe the body cleane from ſuch euils as would grow, being euery way as wholeſome in health, as in ſickneſſe, and may moſt properly be tearmed preparatiues or preparers of the body to entertaine more ſtronger medicines. To ſpeake then firſt of the moſt gentleſt and naturall ſcouring, it is onely graſſe being giuen to a horſe onely fifteene dayes together, and no more, for after that it fatteth and not ſcoureth. Next vnto graſſe is forrage, which is onely the blades of greene corne, as Wheate, Rye, Barley, and ſuch like, being giuen ſeuen dayes and no mores. Next is greene Thiſtles, being cut vp, and giuen the horſe to eate the ſpace of fiue dayes and no more. And the laſt of this nature is the Maſh made in this manner: take a pecke of ground Malt, and put it into a paile, then take a gallon and a halfe of water boyling hot from the fire, and put it to the Malt, then with a ſtaffe maſh and ſtirre them together at leaſt halfe an houre, till taſting the water you feele it as ſweete as hony, then being luke-warme, giue the horſe to drinke. All theſe ſcourings doe onely but cleanſe the guts and coole the body, adding comforts to the ſpirits, and ingendring ſtrength, onely the maſh is to be vſed after labour, or in ſtead of drinke in the time of any great ſickneſſe. Scourings of a little ſtronger nature are theſe: firſt, when you giue your horſe any prouender, to mixe with halfe a pecke of Oates, a handfull or two of cleane dreſt hempe-ſeede: or elſe

to

to take a good quantity of boxe leaues, and put them into a pewter dish, then set them before the fire, and let them dry leasurely till they bee so hard that you may crush them to powder; then take as much of the powder of Brimstone as there is powder of Boxe, and mixe them together, and amongst halfe a pecke of Oate mixe a handfull of this powder, and giue it the horse to eate; both these scourings are to be vsed after labour, especially when the horse hath sweate much. These two scourings worke vpon no matter but what nature is willing to expell, they purge the stomacke, head, and intrailes, they kill all manner of wormes, and dry vp fleame. Scourings of the strongest nature, are to take of Sallet Oyle halfe a pint, and of new Milke from the Cow a pint, brew it together, and giue it the horse luke-warme; or else take a pint of Muskadine, and halfe a pint of Sallet Oyle, and being mixed together, giue it the horse to drinke: Or else halfe a pint of Oyle, and a pint of Sacke mixt together, and giuen the horse to drinke luke-warme. These scourings cleanse the head, body, and guts, of all fleame or molten grease, which any violent labour hath dissolued: They are exceeding good for any manner of cold or stoppings in the winde-pipes. Now for Pils, you shall vnderstand that the first and easiest are these, either to take twenty cloues of Garlicke cleane pild and bruised, then a quarter of a pound of sweete Butter; and so rolle vp the Garlicke in foure or fiue balles or pellets, as big as two walnuts a peece: And so taking out the horses tongue thrust them downe his throat one after another; or else to take a quarter of a

pound

pound of butter, and as much red saunders; beate them well together in a mortar, and then make it into foure or fiue balles, and put them downe the horses throate. Pils of a somewhat stronger nature, are to take a handfull of Rose-mary leaues, and chopping them small, mixe them with a quarter of a pound of sweete butter; and then making it into round balles, giue them vnto the horse: Or else take round peeces of raw Mellons, and thrust them downe the horses throate: or else to take fiue greene figges, and put them downe the horses throate. The strongest pill is this: take of lard two pound, layd in water two houres, then take nothing but a quarter of a pound of the cleane fat thereof, and stampe it in a mortar, and thereto put of licoras, of anise-seedes, and of fenugreeke, of each beaten into powder, one ounce and a halfe; of aloes likewise in powder one ounce, of *Agaricke* halfe an ounce; knead all these together like paste, and make thereof foure or fiue balles, and giue it to the horse. The last recited pill is singular good for the dry cough, and all the other pilles are most soueraigne for all infirmities of the head, which grow either from fleame, melancholy, or any other colde or moyst cause whatsoeuer. Now for purgations, which are the strongest cleansers of the body, they be these: Take two ounces of *Myrre*, and mixe it with a pint of wine, and it will purge all sickenesse which proceedeth of choler: the signes whereof are, his belly will swell, be very hot, and hee can neither dung, nor breake wind. Take a pint of wine, and beate a raw egge therein, and adde to it a quarter of an ounce of brimstone, and halfe an ounce of

Myrre,

Myrre beaten to powder, and giue it the horse luke-warme, and it will purge all inward diseases proceeding of melancholy. Two spoonefull of the powder *Diapente*, giuen with halfe a pint of swines grease, purgeth all diseases proceeding of fleame. Take as much blacke sope as a wall-nut, a quart of new milke, and quarter of a pint of sallet oyle, and giue it the horse luke-warme, and it purgeth all cold infirmities. Take the guts of a Tench or Barbell, being cut into little small peeces, and giue it the horse in a quart of white wine, and it will purge the horse from all costiuenesse or paine in the guts. Rye beeing boyled, so that it burst not, then dried againe, and giuen the horse in stead of prouender, purgeth and killeth all manner of wormes. Take of radish roots one ounce, of the roote called *Panax*, and of *Scamony*, of each halfe an ounce; beate all these together, and boyle them in a quart of hony, then giue the horse two spoonefuls of this in a quart of Ale luke-warme to drinke, and it will purge all grosse humours, from whence proceedeth either the falling euill, or any disease of the braine. Take and boyle *Elicampanæ* rootes in milke till they bee so soft, that you may bruise them to pappe, and then adding thereto halfe a pint of sallet oyle, giue it the horse to drinke luke-warme, and this will purge and cleanse any glaunders. Take of sweete sope a quarter of a pound, and make it into three balles, and giue them to the horse, and it will purge all euill humors whatsoeuer, both violently, and most aboundantly.

A most excellent rare scouring for any horse, sicke or sound, and especially for running or hunting horses, whose grease must necessarily bee molten.

FOrasmuch as the greatest Art which doeth belong to the keeper either of running or hunting horse, consisteth in the taking away from the horse his grosse glut and fat, which not onely offendeth the vitall parts, but also stoppeth vp the conduites and vessels of winde, and that it cannot any way be done, but by scouring after exercise, you shall vnderstand that the best of all scourings which hath hitherto beene approued, is this which I will here set downe: You shall take twenty raisins of the Sunne, and picke out the stones, and tenne figges, which you shall slit in the middest round-wise, boyle them in a pottle of running water till the water be consumed, and thickned: Then take the powder of Licoras, Anise-seeds, and sugar-candy finely searst, and mixe it with the raisins and figges, stamping and working them together till it bee brought to a stiffe paste; then making round balles thereof of a pretty bignesse, role and couer them all ouer with sweete butter, and giue so many of them to the horse as you shall thinke meete for his strength; prouided that the day before you must giue your horse such exercise as will bee sure to melt his grease; and that immediatly before you giue him this medicine, you also warme him throughly, that the humors being againe stirred vp, the medicine may worke more effectually.

CHAP.

Chap. 95.

Of Neesing or Fumigation, and the vse thereof.

THERE is also another manner of purging of a horse, and especially his head, and that is by forcing him to neese or snort violently at his nose, casting forth all filthy and grosse matter, which otherwise would offend and oppresse the Braine; and this neesing is wrought sometimes by fumes or smoakes, sometimes by Powders, and sometimes by Oyles; the sharpenesse of which tickling the tender and quicke parts of the head, doe compell this snorting and sneesing: Surely there is no purgation more wholesome, for as it cleanseth and separateth grosse matter, so it comforteth and maketh strong the Braine. Now to come vnto the particular medicines which doe procure this neesing, they be these: Squirt into an horses nostrilles, either mans vrine which is old or the vrine of an Oxe which hath had much rest, and it will force a horse to neese, and is most wholesome for any Quotidian Feuer. Take the powder of *Gumdragant*, *Ensens*, and Damaske Roses well mixt together, and blow it with a quill into the horses nostrelles, and it is good either against the Feuer in Summer or VVinter. Take warme vinegar and squirt it into his nostrilles, and it is comfortable against the Feuer which commeth by raw digestion.

Take of Garlicke stalkes a handfull, being broake into little peeces, and a good quantity of Frankinsence, and being put vppon a chafing-dish and coles, hold

hold the chafing dish vnder the horses nostrilles, so that the fume may ascend vp into his head; and this is most excellent against the head-ache. Take feathers and brimstone, and burne them on a chafing dish and coales vnder the horses nose; or blow pepper and *Perithre* beaten to powder vppe into his nosthrels; either of both these are most excellent against the sleeping euill. Take the powder of Motherwort, and blow it vp into a horses nosthrels, and it is good against the falling euill. Take two goose feathers annoynted ouer with oyle de Bay, and thrust them vp and downe in the horses nostrells: or else to take Sage, Penytiall, and Wheate, long sodden togethe, and put into a bagge as hot as may be, which bagge would be so close fastned to the horses head, that all the smoke and sauour thereof may ascend vp into his nosthrels: Or take a clout annointed with Sope or Oyle de bay, and rub it vp and downe his nostrels as high as may be. Any of all these, or all these together, are most excellent against any cold, poze, or other obstruction in the head. Take orpiment and sulphure, and burne them on the coales, and hold it vnder the horses nose: or take oyle de Bay, *Euforbium*, and white *Ellebore*, and annointing two feathers therewith, thrust them vp into the horses nosthrels; both these are good against the Glaunders.

Take of the stalkes of Bryony or wild Vine, two handfuls, and bruise them betwixt two stones, and being so bruised, put them into a linnen bag, and fasten the bag so to the horses head, that the sent may go vp into his nosthrels without touching the hearbe with his mouth: And this is excellent against the mourning

ning of the Chine, or any inward Cough. Take of Rosemary, of Narde, and of Sage, dryed and beaten into fine powder, of each like weight, and with a quill blow them vp into the horses nosthrels: or take the powder of white pepper, or of *Sal-niter*, or of *Iris Ilirica*, or blacke *Eleboris*, and blow them with a quill vppe into the horses nosthrels; or take linnen cloth dipt in the dregs of oyle, and setting it on fire, then suddenly put it out againe, and let the smoake ascend vp into the horses nosthrels: Or squirt into his nostrels *Aristolochia*, mixt with wine: or *Sal-niter* mixt with water: or salt and Roche-allum mixt with wine: or take ground Iuy beaten small, and thrust vp into his nose: or Bay-berry beaten small, and burnt on the coales vnder the horses nose: or a coale of fire put into a lumpe of wet hay, making a smothering smoke, and held vnder the horses nose. Any of all these are most excellent against any diseases of the head, especially Staggers, Colds, Glaunders, Strangle, and such like.

Chap. 96.

Of Frictions or Bathes, and of their seuerall vses.

FRictions or Bathes, are a certaine rubbing, annoynting or bathing of a horses body all ouer, especially against the haire, because the medicine may sinke in so much the better with comfortable and soueraigne vnguents, whose vertues doe loosen the skinne, cheare vp the inward spirits, and spread a liuely heate and feeling ouer the whole body: And of Frictions, both according to the opinion

of

of the old Farriers, and also all the best of this present age, these are the most soueraigne. Take of Damaske Roses one pound, of old oyle a pint, of strong vinegar a pint and an halfe, of Mints and Rew, beaten into powder, of each one ounce and a halfe, together with one old dry Nut; beate them, and mingle them well together: Then being strained and made luke-warme, if it be in the Summer time, and that the Sunne shine hote, take the horse abroad; but if otherwise, keepe him in the Stable, and heating a barre of Iron exceeding hot, hold it ouer, and one each side the horse, and with the oyntment rubbe and chafe the horse all ouer against the haire, vntill the horse beginne to sweate, then cloathe the horse very warme, and let him stand. This Friction is excellent against all VVinter Feuers, or any inward sickenesse that commeth of colde. Take of blacke *Elleborus* two or three handfuls, and boyle it in a sufficient quanty of strong vinegar; and with that rubbe and chafe all the horses head and body quite ouer once or twice a day; and it is most excellent against frenzy, madnesse, or any dryenesse or scallynesse of the skinne. Take oyle de Bay, or *Dialthea*, and annoint all the horses body all ouer therewith; holding a panne of coales, or a hot barre of Iron, neare the oyntment to make it sinke in; or else make him a bathe of running water, whereia is boyled Rew, VVorme-wood, Sage, Iuniper, Bay-leaues, and Hyssope, and bathe all his body therewith: Either of these are most soueraigne for the mourning of the Chine, or any disease of the Liuer, Lungs, or Spleene. Take wine and oyle, and hauing mixt them

them together, chafe and rub the horſes body therewith, and it is moſt ſoueraigne for any inward ſickneſſe, eſpecially the liuer. To bathe a horſe in ſalt water, is very wholeſome, both for the horſes skin, and alſo for any diſeaſe in the ſtomacke.

Laſtly, take of Mallowes, of Sage, of each two or three handfuls, and a Roſe cake; boyle them together in water, then being boyled till the water be all conſumed, adde a good quantity of butter, or ſallet oyle, and mixing them together, bathe all the horſes foure legges therewith, and all the parts of his body alſo: and there is nothing more ſoueraigne for a horſe that hath beene tyred or ouer-trauelled. To let blood, and with that blood, and Oyle, and Vinegar, preſently to annoynt his body, helpeth moſt ſorts of infirmities.

Chap. 97.

Generall Drenches, or Medicines for all the inward Diſeaſes or ſurfeites in Horſes.

THere is no Medicine more ſoueraigne for all diſeaſes which breed in a horſes body, then to take two ſpoonefull of the powder called *Diapente*, and brew it with a pint either of Sacke or Muskadine, and ſo giue it the horſe to drinke faſting in a morning; and doe this at leaſt three mornings together, eſpecially when the horſe beginneth firſt to droope. The next to this, is to take of ſelladine two handfuls, both roote and leaues, choppe them and bruiſe them: then take of rew as much, of redde ſage and mints as much, and of Aloes halfe an ounce:

boyle these in pottle of Beere or Ale till the one halfe be consumed; and then giue it the horse lukewarme to drinke. Take foure ounces of *Diapente*, and mixe it with foure ounces of clarified hony, and keepe it in a close glasse, and giue halfe an ounce thereof with a pint of sweete Wine to the horse to drinke, and it is an excellent drench. Take of licoras an ounce, of anise-seedes and comen seeds of each halfe an ounce; of *Elicampanam* rootes as much; of turmericke and bayes, of each a quarter of an ounce, of long Pepper and Fenuricke, of each two drams; beat these small and searse them, and put fiue spoonefull thereof into a quart of Ale warmed with a little butter or oyle, and it is very soueraigne for any disease comming of cold causes. Take a quart of good ale or wine, a raw egge beaten and mingled with twelue scruples of quicke Sulphure, and foure scruples of *Myrre* made into powder, and giue it the horse to drinke, it is a good drench. The powder of brimstone mixt with sweete Wine is a good drench also. The roote of the sea onion, the rootes of popler, called the Greeke *Rhammos*, mingled with common salt, giuen in water, keepeth the horse long in health. Take fine powder of Fenugreeke, and bruise it, seeth it in water till it waxe thicke, adde a pound of sweete butter, an ounce of linseede oyle, and as much of the oyle of nuts; mingle them well together, and giue it the horse in three or foure dayes to drinke, by a pretty quantity at a time. Selladine simply of it selfe, or Rue simply of it selfe, boyled in Beere or Ale, and as much Brimstone as a wall-nut, is an excellent drench for any long taken surfeite.

Garlicke

Garlicke and houſleeke beaten together in a morter, and then boyled in Beere or Ale from a pottle to a quart; then mixt with licoras, aniſe-ſeedes, and ſugar-candy, and a pretty quantity of ſallet oyle, is an excellent drench for any inward ſickeneſſe which doth proceed from hot cauſes, as is the Frenzie, the Anticor, and ſuch like. And thus much of generall drenches, and their vſes.

Chap. 98.

How to make the powder called Diapente.

THis word *Diapente* is as much as to ſay a compoſition of fiue ſimples: for the receipt is thus compounded. Take of *Gentian*, of *Ariſtolochia*, of *Bay berries*, of *Myrre*, and of the ſhauings of *Iuorie*, of each like quantity; beat them into very fine powder, and then ſearſe it. This powder is praiſed to be a ſoueraigne preſeruatiue or medicine againſt all inward diſeaſes: and therefore I would wiſh euery Farrier, and all ſuch as are the maiſters of good horſes, neuer to be without it.

Chap. 99.

A moſt famous receipt, which is both a ſingular drench, and a ſingular Oyntment.

TAke of *Euforbium* halfe an ounce, of *Caſtoreum* one ounce, of *Adraces* halfe a quarter of a pound, *Bdelium* halfe an ounce and halfe a quarter, of Pepper a quarter of a pound, Fox-greaſe halfe an ounce, *Opoponax* one ounce, *Lacerpitium* three quarters

of an ounce, *Amoniacum* halfe a quarter of a pound, Pidgions dung as much, *Galbanum* halfe an ounce, *Nytrum* one ounce one quarter, *Spuma nitri* three quarters of an ounce, *Ladanum* a quarter of a pound, *Perethrum* and Bay-berries, of each three quarters of an ounce, *Cardanum* two ounces, seed of Rew, halfe a quarter of a pound, seed of *Agnus Castus* one ounce, Parsley halfe an ounce, dryed rootes of *Ireos* or Flower-deluce one ounce one quarter; Hyssop and *Carpobalsamum* a quarter of a pound, oyle of Flower-deluce a quarter of a pound and halfe a quarter, Oyle de Bay as much, Oyle of *Spikenard* three quarters of a pound, *Oleum Cyprinum* three quarters of a pound and halfe a quarter, the oldest oyle Oliue one pound and a halfe, pitch a quarter of a pound and two ounces, Turpentine a quarter of a pound; melt euery one of these that will melt, severally by themselues, and then mingle them together with the rest of the simples beaten to fine powder; and after that they haue beene a little boyled on the fire take it off, and straine it into a faire vessell; and whensoeuer you will giue your horse any thereof, giue it him with Wine, or foure or fiue spoonefull with a pint of Sacke or Muskadine: and if with long keeping it waxeth a hard, then soften it with the oyle of *Cypresse*, so that it may bee good and thicke. This confection is both a medicine and an oyntment, if you put it in the horses nostrels, it will draw out all noysome humours, and discharge his head of all griefe: if you annoynt his body therewith, it healeth all convultions, colds, and drinesse, or withering

thering of the body; and if you bathe his limbes therewith, it drieth away all wearinesse and tiring; and if you giue it him with Wine to drinke, it cureth all kind of inward maladies.

Chap. 100.

How to make the oyle of Oates.

TAke of milke two gallons, and warming it on the fire, put therto a quarter of a pound of burnt Allome, which will make it runne of curds; then take out the curd and cast it away; then straine the whay through a course cloath into a cleane vessell: then take a quarter of a pecke of cleane husked Oates that were neuer dried, and put them into the whay, and set them on the fire till the Oates burst, and be soft; then take them off, and put them into a Collander that is full of holes, so that the whay may goe gently from them without any pressing (for you must keepe the Oates as moist as may bee:) this done, put the Oates into a frying pan, and set them ouer the fire, stirring them continually till you see the vapour or smoke of them not ascend vpwards, but as it were runne about the pan; then suddenly take them off, and putting them into a presse, presse them most exceedingly, and looke what commeth from them, is onely the oyle of them, which you must saue in a close glasse. Now there are other more artificiall and curious wayes, to distill and extract this Oyle, but this of all is the most easiest and surest for euery meane capacity. This Oyle of Oates is of all medicines and simples whatsoeuer, the most excellent

and soueraigne for a horses body, as being extracted from the most naturall, wholesome and best foode which doth belong vnto a horses body. This oyle being giuen by foure or fiue spoonefull in a pint of sweete Wine, or a quart of strong Ale, and some of the Whay powred into the horses nosthrilles, doth cure the Glaunders before all other medicines. It is also (giuen in the same manner) the best of all purgations; for it purgeth away all those venemous and filthy humours which feedeth the most iucurable farcie whatsoeuer. And for mine owne part, as long as I can conueniently come by this oyle of Oates, so long I will neuer in any medicine whatsoeuer, vse any oyle or vnctious matter then it onely; I hauing found by experience, that it is the soueraigne of all simples of that kind, whatsoeuer they be.

Chap. 101.

Certaine briefe Obseruations to bee obserued at home and abroad whilst the horse is in health.

THese Obseruations following are gathered from the most exact principles, and vnfallible grounds of all the best and surest approued Horsemen, either of this Kingdome, or of any other Nation within Christendome. First then for the generall feeding of your horse when he is in health, you shall feede him with Straw, Hay, Oates, fine little Wheat, Beanes, Barley, bread made of Beanes, Pease or Fitches, or any other meat that swelles not in the horses body.

It

It is the opinion of *Camerarius* first to giue prouender, then hay, and lastly water; but our English custome is, first hay, then water, and lastly prouender.

In your trauell feede your horse betimes for all night, that thereby the horse may sooner take his rest.

The quantity of prouender which you shall giue your horse at one time, shall be as much as you can hold in the palmes of both your hands at six times.

Horse-bread which is made of cleane beanes, cleane pease, or cleane fitches, feedeth exceedingly.

Let your horses meate and drinke be exceeding sweete and cleane, yet his water by no meanes extreme cold running water from the rocke, for it pierceth too much.

To rubbe your horses mouth with salt and Wine, will make him both eate and drinke with a much better appetite.

Let your horse neither eate when hee is hot, nor drinke when hee is hot, neither presently after his trauell.

Labour your horse moderately when the weather is either extreame hot, or extreame cold, that so you may auoid extreame heates, or sudden colds.

Trauell not your horse too late, that your owne eye may see him well dried, and well fed before you take your owne rest.

Neuer take your saddle from your horse backe suddenly.

Lend not your horse, least your selfe walke on foote.

Let your horse lie cleane and dry, keepe your stable

sweete, let no swine lye neere it, nor let any pullen come within it.

Let your horse euer be tied with two reines.

Let the light of your stable be euer towards South and North, yet so as the North windowes may in the Winter be shut close at pleasure, and opened in the Summer to giue fresh aire.

Ride your horse oft a little on stony wayes, that hee may the better feele his feete, and harden his hooues.

Haue euer neere your stable some close plaine greene, that your horse being let loose, he may oft tumble himselfe thereon.

Let your horses bed be of soft sweete straw, somewhat aboue his knees, of which Rie straw is the best; for though Barley straw bee the softest, yet a horse will couet to eate it, and it is vnholsome; and Wheat straw though it be not vnholsome to eate, yet it is hard to lye vpon: as for Oate straw it is the best in the superlatiue; for it is both wholsome to eate, and soft to lye vpon.

Curry or dresse your horse twice a day before water, and when he is curried, rub him with your hand, and with a rubber; his head would be rubbed with a wet cloath, and his coddes made cleane with a dry cloath; his foretop, his maine, and his taile, would be oft wet with a wet maine combe, and euer where the horses haire is thinnest, there curry the gentlest.

Let the plaunchers of your stable lye euen and leuell, that your horse may stand at his ease, and not proue lame, by too much oppressing his hinder parts.

Let

Let not any mud wall be within your horses reach; for he will naturally couet to eate it, and nothing is more vnwholsome.

Giue your horse plenty of garbadge (which is chopt wheate straw) both with his prouender, and without.

Let your hay bottles be very little, and tyed very hard: for so your horse shall eate with the best stomacke, and make least waste.

To sprinkle water vpon your hay, is most wholesome, and to sprinkle fenugreeke vpon your prouender, is as soueraigne; the first is good for the winde, the latter for wormes.

Giue your horse daily exercise: for that gets the best stomacke to his meate.

Purge your horse once a yeare with grasse, or with greene blades of corne, called forrage, for fifteene dayes together; yet before you so purge him, in any case let him blood; and whilest hee is in purging, by no meanes let him haue any prouender.

A horse after trauell hath euer more blood then any beast whatsoeuer.

Greene grasse or forrage cleanseth the blood, encreaseth strength, healeth diseases, auoydeth melancholy, helpeth the horses growth, and maketh the skinne smooth; whilest the horse is at soyle, by no meanes let him take cold.

The Northerne man watereth two houres before he rideth at the least: Then lets the horse eate a little hay, then giues prouender, but not much, and bridleth the horse vp a quarter of an houre before hee rideth: At night hee watereth two miles before hee taketh his lodging,

lodging, then rideth easily; hee neither walketh his horse, nor stuffeth him, nor looseth any girth; but onely rubbeth him very cleane, and so lets him bite vpon his bridle halfe an houre after, with good store of litter vnder him; then he giues the horse hay, and after prouender; before he goeth to bed, hee watereth againe, (yet but a little) then sees the horse throughly well dresst and rubbed, well littered, and most sufficiently meated.

There bee others which walke after labour, then rubs well, littereth and vnbridleth; both which be good, so that the one haue not too much walking, nor the other too cold a stable. But howsoeuer, stuffe not your horse backeward, but betwixt his forelegges, and formost girth: For backward stuffing is perilous, least drawing his yard when hee would stale, hee draw backe into his sheath any of the litter that stoppes him. The Northerne mans vse agreeth with the French principles, which sayth, Vse no other walking then your selfe on your horses backe, by riding him gently till you come to your Inne; and so make him cold; then shake litter vnder him, rub his legges, his belly, and euery part of his body well, till he be dry, then vnbridle him, rubbe his head well, and giue him hay; slacke no girth till it be night that the windowes be shut; suffer the horse to drinke but a little at once, to auoyd suddaine cooling of the stomacke, or driuing the horse into a shaking feuer: At night rubbe and curry well, and feede according to the horses stomacke.

Other good Farriers ride gently till the horses sinewes be chafed, and neuer water in trauell till the horse

horse haue staled, and forbeare to trauell him fast before he hath drunke, that hee may not drinke in his great heate, and they hold the standing water the best; after water for a mile they ride softly till his water be warmed in his belly, and before they come to their Inne they do not water, nor of an houre after they haue vnbridled; then they clothe well, and giue prouender, hauing a care that their horses stand not in the wind, and that they haue beene rubbed dry and cleane, Now all these principles are exceeding good, yet I would wish euery traueller to learne how his horse hath beene vsed, and that custome (if it bee not too much against reason) still to follow.

If you come late to your Inne, and that your iourney bee great and hasty, so that your horse will not eate till he haue drunke, and yet is hote notwithstanding, then let his drinke be Milke giuen in the darke, least the whitnesse make him refuse it; this is both cordiall and pleasant: if you cannot get milke enough, then mingle milke with water luke-warme, for no drinke would be giuen to a horse hotter.

If your horse either by labour or surfeits be brought low, leane, and weake, you shall giue him Mares milke to drinke many dayes together, and it will make him strong.

It is not good to wash your horse, if hee be very hotte or very fat; otherwise you may wash his legges aboue his knees, so that in no case you wash his belly, and that you ride him a good round pace after his washing, then by no meanes walke him, but set him vppe and dresse him; the purer the water is wherein you wash your horse, the more wholesome

it

it is, so that it be not too extreme cold.

The best houres to water your horse in (when he liues at rest) is betwixt seuen and eight in the morning, and foure and fiue in the euening.

When you trauell, at euery steepe hill light, both to refresh your horse and your selfe.

Let a fat or hot horse haue his water at foure times, and not as much as hee will drinke at once; giue him prouender twice at night, and but once in the morning; let his cloath neither bee too hot, nor with straw too much stuffed: when hee eateth good hay, let him haue lesse prouender then when hee eateth straw: giue his meat by a little at once to auoyd glutting of him, and let him stand two houres euery day without meate.

Rubbing much, hard, and well, doth profite, preserue, and doth keepe both strength of body, and legges: For in rubbing and combing a horse doeth take much delight, and it better then much meate.

To feede with barley (according to the opinion of the ancient Italians) ingendreth good blood, encreaseth strength and courage, and maintaineth health; but with vs here in England, we find oates to be much better feeding.

In the dogge dayes it is not wholsome to ride your horse oft into the water, to allay his naturall heate.

The maisters eye to see his horse well curried, and with the hand well rubbed, and well meated, and the stable sweete and cleane kept, preserueth health, and wonderfully feedeth the horse.

Cleanse and picke the soales and bottomes of your

your horses feete oft, and stuffe them with Oxe dung, and annoynt his hooues with fresh grease, tarre, or Turpentine.

Much rest is the mother of many diseases.

When you ride, looke often to your saddle, and your horses shooes, and you shall finde much more ease in your iourney.

CHAP. 107.

Certaine speciall Principles in Foales and in Horses.

THe Foales whose legges be long, will euer be tall, for of all beasts their legges in length euer grow the least, and by the bigneſſe of their legges you shall geſſe the strength and greatneſſe of their bodies.

Let your colts, if you can possible, neuer be housed till they be past three yeares old.

The Greeke horse (which we call the Turkey horse) is a most excellent horse, swift, bold, well headed, tall and strong, many of them be white, some bay, some sorrell, and some blacke.

Arabian horse is most swift, and most beautifull.

The horse of *Affrica*, which we call the Barbary horse, is of good courage, swift, and nimble, and therefore both the Turkey horse and hee must be vsed with all lenity and gentlenes, and not with beating.

The *Freeſland* horse is fiery, yet the worst of any.

The *Flemish* horse is worse then the *Freeſland*.

The *Spanish Ienet* is good, swift, and light.

The *Neapolitan* courser for all vses is most excellent and beautifull.

And

And the Englisſh horſe is beſt both for great burthen or long trauell.

Obſerue euer to winne your horſe by patience and gentleneſſe, and neuer bee angry or mad with your horſe, if he be of great mettall; ouely the dull horſe muſt with much beating be quickned and inflamed.

Annoint your bit when you put it firſt into your horſes mouth, with hony, and the powder of Licoras, or elſe with hony and ſalt; and at no time put any bit or ſnaſle into your horſes mouth before you haue waſht.

Neuer take your horſes backe before you haue the bridle reynes faſt in your hand; and when you walke downe any Hill, by no meanes driue your horſe looſe before you.

If your horſe haue a long backe, let him haue a large Saddle, if he haue a low backe, let the Saddle haue a high ſeate; and if his backe be ſhort, let the ſaddle boulſters ſtand the neerer and cloſed together.

If your horſe be dull, you muſt ſpurre him ſoundly, and after ſuch ſpurring, rub his ſides with ſalt.

Chap. 103.

Certaine generall Obſeruations concerning Mares.

IN length and height, a Mare groweth till ſhe bee fiue yeares old, and a horſe till he be ſixe.

When a Mare is paſt two yeares old ſhee may bee couered, but the beſt time is after foure yeare old.

Common Mare may bring Foales euery yeare; but let your beſt Mares bring but euery ſecond yeare,

yeare, especially if they bring horse colts.

After couering by no meanes trauell your Mares.

To get horse Colts, couer before the full of the Moone; and to get Mare Colts couer after the full.

To make a Mare stand to her horsings, set her by the horse two or three dayes, that hee may much desire and be acquainted before hee couer her: After bring them out, and let him serue her, and haue ready a paile of water, which when the horse shrinketh from her, powre vpon the ridge of the Mares backe; then set them so farre asunder as that the one may not heare the other: Doe this three mornings and three euenings together, then let her not come neere the horse after, till she be knit, lest the desire of him againe, make her to shoote out that which she kept before.

To know whether your Mare be with Foale about Christmas or no, powre a little water into her eare, and if shee onely shake her head, shee is then with Foale, but if she shake both head and body also, she is not with Foale.

When you weane your Foales, take them from the Mares foure dayes before the full of the Moone; and after the Foales haue so remained foure and twenty houres, let them againe sucke till they wax very full; then remoue them for altogether, and the next morning giue euery one three slips of Sauin, and so after let them haue till they be three yeares old, all plenty of meate abroad, rather then in the stable.

Let your Stallion for Trotters bee either *Neapolitan* Courser, or *Arabian*, *Turke*, or *Barbary*; and for amblers, either the *Spanish* Ienet, or the *Irish* hobby.

Put

Put your mares to the horse from midde March till midde May, or midde Iune, the Moone hauing newly chang'd.

It is good to put the horse and the mare for three or foure nights together in some vast empty house, and in the morning take the horse away, and feede him well; but feede your mare sparingly, especially giue her little water.

At the end of sixe moneths, by no meanes chafe your mares: for then they are in quickning, and may easily be made to cast their foales.

The wall-eye either in mare or in horse, doeth neuer see perfectly, especially when there is any snow on the ground.

A mare goeth with foale eleuen moneths, and ten dayes.

Let your mares be of a meane stature, large and broad, and of good shapes; and the Stallion of like shape, but somewhat taller, and temper their natures thus: Put vnto the hot horse the coole mare, and to the hot mare the coole horse; and let your grounds wherein you breede, be dry, hilly, and with running streames in it.

Chap. 104.

Certaine speciall Notes to be obserued in the buying of a horse.

First, marke his colour and his shape, that is to say, a comely well proportioned head, with an out-looking eye, good well raised shoulders, and a thicke large breast, broad brawne, large and broade flat legges

legges, short pasternes, and little feete: for long pasternes shew weakenesse, and broad feete shew dulnesse; feele if hee haue no Glaunders, betweene his chappes, no splents, curbe nor spauen, looke hee bee not pursicke or broken winded; put your hand before his eyes, to know if he see well. Looke into his mouth for his age. If hee bee past eight yeares old; feele all downe the strunte of his taile with your hand, and if you feele that it be smoth, then the horse is not very old; but if it haue any rough knobs towards the end, buy him not, for his good dayes are past. Let him runne at the halters end: for if he be lame, (hauing that liberty) hee will fauour that legge which is amisse, and leane vpon it. If he turne vp the white of his eye, or lay his eare to his necke when hee is ridden, hee is a sullen Iade, and full of naughty qualities; if when you stirre him in the stable, he stare and looke backe vpon you with a stout countenance, it is a token of a good stomacke in him, and great aptnesse to be taught; If he stirre the end of his taile as he passeth out and is ridden, and yet doth not whiske it, it sheweth that his pace is vnperfect; bee sure to see him turne as short as may be, that you may know whether he be swayed in the backe or no, the middle stature is the best, and the short knit horse is the strongest. The wall eye euer seeth the worst. The horse that is of nature gentle, swift, light, nimble, of easie pace, good colour, strong feete, good loynes, speedy in eating, and good at his prouender, is euer the best for vse, and the readiest money in the Market. See if the haire in the spurring place be white: for it argueth slowneſſe

and spur-galling. The horse that will paw and beate the ground with his foote when hee is staied from going forwards, is euer likely to be good and durable in trauell. Many other notes there are, which by the obseruing of these, will easily come into your memory.

Chap. 105.

Generall Notes concerning some Simples already spoken of.

ALL manner of Marrowes or Pitches, of what kind soeuer they bee, must bee kept by themselues in a dry coole place, and preserued from all filth or vncleanesse, and from the annoyance either of winde or fire, and so they will last fully out a whole yeare.

You shall keepe no Sirrops, nor sweete *Electuaries*, nor Pilles, nor Powders, nor conserues of Flowres, nor any Oyntments, Sewets, or Emplaster, aboue one whole yeare; onely bitter Electuaries, or conserues of Fruites or Rootes will last fully out two yeares.

Of Oyle some will last long, some must bee new made: Oyles extract out of wood or Mettals will last long.

Gather roots in *Autumne*, but take the small sprigs from them and make them cleane and dry.

Dry small rootes in the shade and winde, and great rootes either in the winde and Sunne, or by the fire, lay them in a dry place towards the South, and they will keepe long, prouided that neither Sun nor moysture hurt them.

Gather

Gather all manner of hearbes when they doe most flourish, and dry them in the shade, except they be very moist and apt to putrifie; they last for the most part a whole yeare.

Gather seedes and fruites when they be fully ripe; they also last but one whole yeare.

Gather the rinde or barke of any simple when the hearbe is ripe; dry them, and they will last many yeares.

The end of the first Booke.

THE SECOND BOOKE:

CONTAINING ALL CVRES CHYRVRGICALL, OR such infirmities as being onely outward, craue the vse of Surgery, and are called in Horse-leach-craft, *Horses Sorrances.*

Newly imprinted, Corrected, and Enlarged with many notable, and most *certaine approued Medicines.*

Written by GERVASE MARKHAM. Gent:

LONDON,
Printed by *Nicholas Okes*, and are to be sold by *Richard Whitakers*, dwelling at the signe of the Kings head in *Paules* Church-yard. 1623.

THE SECOND BOOKE.

CHAP. I.

What proportion of measure is required in euery member of a well-shapen Horse.

FORASMVCH as the great substance of this Arte of Surgery, or second part of Horse-leach-craft, applyed onely vnto outward infirmities, consisteth of incisions, cauterizings, corrodings, and dismembrings, as well as of comfortings, incarnating, cleansing, conglutinating, and binding vp members in their true forme; and that all ioyntly together, goe but about to make a true and wel-formed body: I thinke it meetest that I beginne with the true proportion and measure which is required in euery member of a well shaped horse, that the carefull Farrier thereby vnderstanding how, and in what fashion euery lineament should bee placed, or what portion and quantity they doe containe, he may at no time through ignorance

norance either diſmember o r diſgrace the ſame; as I haue many times ſeene ſimple Farriers doe, when contrary to all Art and Rule, they haue cut in ſunder the maine cords, ſinewes, and tendants, by which a horſes limbes are gouerned. To beginne then, you ſhall vnderſtand that according to the deſcription of the moſt ancient and worthy Farriers; there are in a horſes pa'ate of his mouth, twelue barres or degrees like ſteps, one aboue another, ſtanding (when his mouth is turned vpward) like a paire of ſtaires: his tongue would be halfe a foote long, his vpper lippe ſixe inches, and his neather lippe fiue inches long; each of his Iawes would bee ten inches long, his head from his eye downe-ward full twelue inches long, his eares fiue inches long, the circuit or compaſſe of his eye, foure inches about, his necke from the nape of his head vnto the withers would bee ſeuen handfuls, from the withets to the fillets twelue handfuls, and from the fillets to the ſetting on of the taile ſixe handfuls: the length of the ſhoulder would bee twelue inches, and the length of his ſhanke ſixe inches; the length of his hinder hough would bee twelue inches, and his cambrell fiue inches, and the length of the whole body from the head to the taile would be an hundred inches. Now as horſes are bigger or leſſer, ſo theſe meaſures either exceede or are leſſe, neither doe I confidently build vpon theſe inch quantities of the ancient Farriers, becauſe I hauing my ſelfe meaſured many horſes, I neuer yet could finde any certainty in the proportions; onely this is the moſt certaineſt rule that euer I could finde, that looke what quantity

is

is betweene the nape of the horſes necke, and the vttermoſt part of the withers, there muſt euer bee twice ſo much betweene the withers and the ſetting on of the taile; and looke what quantity is betweene the toppe of the ſhoulder-blade, or toppe of the withers to the elbow of the horſe, it muſt be twice ſo much from the elbow to the ſetting on of the hoofe; and looke how much it is from the toppe of the hippe to the ſtifling place, it muſt be twice ſo much from the ſtifling place to the ſetting on of the hinder hoofe: And this is the certaineſt rule that euer I could finde for a horſes trueſt proportion. And therefore for your better ſatisfaction, behold this picture, which is the Anatomy of a moſt perfect horſe, with lines drawne from euery member, directing and ſhewing all the outward diſeaſes or ſorrances belonging to a horſes body.

Chap. 2.

Of the Veines belonging to a Horſe, and how many there be.

IT is moſt neceſſary that euery carefull Farrier know all the principall veines in a horſes body, eſpecially thoſe which in the time of neede, or in ſickneſſe, are to be opened: And therefore to beginne you ſhall know that from the Liuer which is the fountaine of blood, both in man and beaſt, doeth ariſe one maine great conduit or large veine, which aſcending into the body, doeth diuide it ſelfe into thus many ſeuerall branches or leſſer riuers. Firſt, within

within the palate of the mouth, aboue the first and third barres, are two notable veines which the best Farriers doe touch or strike when the horse hath any disease in his head, braine, or stomacke: Hee hath also other two which descend downe from the lower part of his eyes vnto his nosthrels, and are euer opened for any griefe in the eyes: He hath two others which are aboue his eyes, and runne crosse the Temples of his head, and are called the Temple-veines, which are likewise opened for all manner of cold diseases in the head; hee hath also two great maine veines running alongst each side of his wind-pipe, euen from the vppermost ioynt of his neather chap downe to the breast, which are called the necke-veines; and are those which are ordinarily opened for any disease whatsoeuer. He hath then two veines which arise vpward from betweene his fore-legges to the top of his breast, and are called the breast-veines; and they are opened when the horse hath any feuer, or is sicke at the heart. He hath other two which likewise ascend from betweene the fore-legs, but do not mount so high as the breast-veines, but rest vpon the formost bough of the fore-legge; and they be called the plat-veines, and they be opened either for foundring, or other griefe in the limbes. Hee hath other two veines which run downe from the elbow of the fore-shoulder, downe all along the inside of the fore-legges, and are called the shanke-veines, which are opened for splents, mallanders, or such like. Hee hath then foure veines which runne alongst the fetlockes of the horse, and are called the shakle-veines; which albeit they are but small, yet they are many

times

times opened for ſtiffenes in the ioynts, or for tiring: then he hath foure veines about the cronets of his hooſes, and are called the cronet-veines, and are opened for foundring in the feete, or for ring-bones: then he hath foure veines within his foure hooſes, running about his toes, and are called the feete-veines, and are onely opened for foundring or frettizing in the feete: he hath then two maine great veines which deſcend downe from his ſtones alongſt the inſide of his thighes to his cambrell; and are called the kidney-veines, which onely are opened for diſeaſes in the kidnies: He hath then two other veines which deſcend from aboue the hinder cambrell, all alongſt the inſide of the hinder-legs downe to the fet-lockes, and are called the Spauen-veines, which are opened for the blood ſpauen onely: He hath then two veines in his flankes, which are called the flanke-veines, and are opened for any griefe in the reines or fillets: Hee hath then two veines in his hinder hanches called the hanch-veines, and are opened for any manner of conſumption of the fleſh, or ſuch like: Then he hath two veines which run alongſt his ſide, euen from the elbow of the foreleg vnto the flanke, and are called the ſpur-veines, and are opened for foundring or ſpurre-galling. Laſtly, he hath one ſingle veine in his taile, which is called the taile-veine, and is opened for the ſheding of the haire or any mangines. So there is in a horſes body of principall veines which vppon occaſion muſt be opened, iuſt thirty ſeuen, as you may perceiue by this Figure, which is the true Anatomy of all the principall veines and others within a horſes body; where you are to vnderſtand that the letter *A* ſheweth

sheweth the Temple-veine, *B* the eye-veines, *C* the Palate-veines, *D* the Neck-veine, *E* the Breast-veine, *F* the Plat-veines, *G* the Shank-veines, *H* the Cronet-veines, *I* the Hoofe-veines, *K* the Spurre-veines, *L* the Kidney-veines, *M* the Spauen-veines, *N* the Flanke-veines, *O* the Hanch-veines, *P* the Taile-veine, and *Q* the Fet-locke-veines. Now for the other small thrids, or veines, which as it were, ouer-spread the whole body, because nature will allow no part or member to be empty or voyd of blood, they be also veines, deriued from the other maine great veines, yet of no efficacy or force, but such as vppon any necessary incision may very well be cut asunder without any fluxe of blood, or other danger; but for the other maister veines, they may not be cut but with great perill. And thus much for veines, which are the instruments of heate.

Chap. 3.

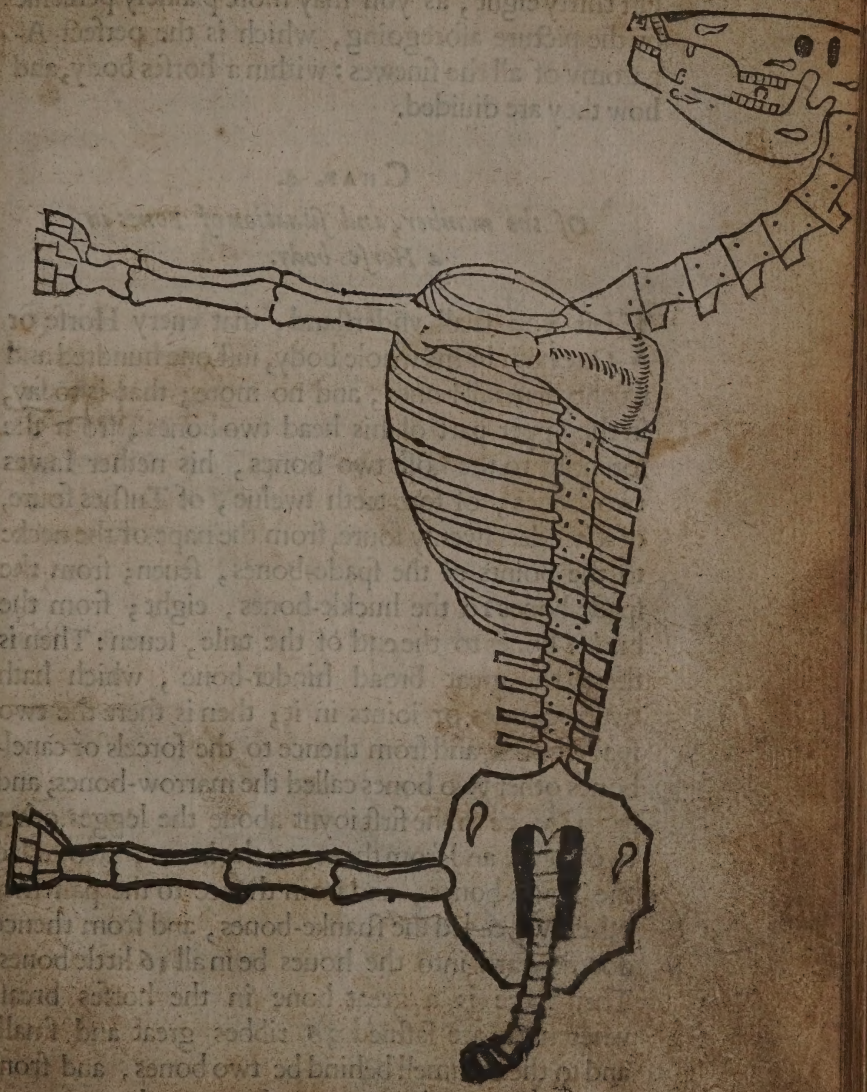
Of the Sinewes in a Horses body.

TOuching the sinewes within a horses body, you shall vnderstand that from the braine, which is the principall fountaine or well spring of sinewes whatsoeuer, there is deriued one great maine sinew or tendant, which passing through the hollownesse of the necke and backe-bone, doeth extend it selfe euen to the nethermost ioynt in the horses strunt: From this maine sinew is deriued two smaller branches, which passing throug h certaine holes in the top of the horses skull, runne downe alongst the horses cheekes, euen to the point of his nostriles: Then hath

B
C
D
E
F
G
R
K
L
M
N
O

hath he two other branches which passing through certaine holes in his nether chap, knit that and the vpper together, and so runne downe by his great Teeth, and meete iust below his nether lippe: Then hath hee twenty eight small thrids, which running through so many small holes in the seuen bones of his necke, knit them fast together: So likewise hath he small thrids which running through small holes, knit all his Chine euen to the nether end of his Strunt fast together; the number whereof is infinite and vncertaine: Then hath hee two maine great sinewes which extending themselues ouer both the spade-bones, are diuided into many branches, and runne downe into the fore-legges, euen into the coffins of the houes, and knit euery ioynt fast and substantially together: then hath he two other maine sinewes which comming through two holes in the great columell or flat bones of the hippes or huckle, doe extend themselues (being diuided into many branches) downe both the hinder legges, euen within the coffin of the hoofe also, and bind all these seuerall ioynts fast and strongly together. Now lastly you shall vnderstand, that from the setting on of the horses necke, vnto the flat columell or huckle-bone, doth extend one great broad sinew of three inches broad, being of one onely thicke and smooth substance, without any one thrid or branch deriued from it, which not onely holdeth together the shoulder-blades, but also couereth all the horses chine quite ouer; and this of the common Farriers is called Pax-waxe: So that a horse hath in all of maine and principall sinewes, from whence a world of other sinewes are deriued,

iust



iuſt thirty eight, as you may more plainely perceiue by the picture aforegoing, which is the perfect Anatomy of all the ſinewes: within a horſes body, and how they are diuided.

Chap. 4.

Of the number, and ſituation of Bones in a Horſes body.

FIrſt you ſhall vnderſtand, that euery Horſe or Oxe hath in his whole body, iuſt one hundred and ſeuenty ſeuerall bones, and no more; that is to ſay, in the vpper part of his head two bones, from the forehead to the noſe two bones, his nether Iawes two bones, of fore-teeth twelue, of Tuſhes foure, of Grinders twenty foure, from the nape of the necke to the points of the ſpade-bones, ſeuen; from the ſpade-bones to the huckle-bones, eight; from the huckle-bones to the end of the taile, ſeuen: Then is there the great broad hinder-bone, which hath twelue ſeames or ioints in it; then is there the two ſpade-bones, and from thence to the forcels or canel-bones other two bones called the marrow-bones; and from thence to the firſt ioynt aboue the legges other two bones, and from thence to the knees, two called the Thigh-bones, and from thence to the paſternes other two called the ſhanke-bones, and from thence downe-ward into the houes be in all 16 little bones. Then there is a great bone in the horſes breaſt whereunto are faſtned 36 ribbes great and ſmall, and to the columell behind be two bones, and from the molairs to the ioynts other two bones; and

alſo

also two bones towards the ribs, from the bending of the hough vnto the legge, are two small bones, and from the legges to the two focils of the legge other two little bones, and from the pasternes into the hoofe, sixteene little bones; all which, and their seuerall situations, you shall more plainely behold in this picture, which is the most perfect Anatomy of the bones of a horse, being simply compounded together, that can be made by demonstration.

Chap. 5.

How and when a horse should be let blood, the end whereof, and the signes of the necessitie.

THe ancient Farriers, and those of these present times, are at great difference touching the letting of a horse blood: for some would haue him let blood foure times in the yeare; that is to say, in the Spring, in the Summer, in Autumne and in Winter. Others would haue him onely let blood three times in the yeare; namely in May when hee is turned to grasse; because then the blood beginneth to encrease: secondly, in September, that blood if it be inflamed, may then euacuate and breathe forth: and thirdly in December to let goe the grosse and knotty blood which is bred by labor or careleesse keeping. Others would haue a horse to be let blood but once in the yeare; namely, in the beginning of May onely, when he is to be put to grasse, alledging this reason, that if the horse be not let blood in the Spring, the new blood beeing mixt with the old corrupt blood, will be apt to be inflamed, and so draw vpon the

the horſe ſome grieuous ſickneſſe. Others would haue the horſe to be let blood in the nocke veine not aboue once in the yeare; namely, at the beginning of May: but in the palate of the mouth they would haue him let blood at the leaſt once euery moneth, alledging that it will cleare the ſight, comfort the braine, and giue him good appetite to his meate; but to conclude, there is not any of theſe opinions, but are ſound and good, ſo the horſe be yong and in ſtrength, his blood encreaſing; but if he be old, and his blood in the ebbe, then you cannot let blood too ſeldome. Now that it is fit a yong horſe ſhould bee let blood, is proued by the daily experience of the *Polander* horſes, who being at liberty, out of a naturall inſtinct in themſelues, faile not once a yeare to let themſelues blood; yet wee haue diuers of our beſt Farriers who would not haue a horſe let blood before there be vrgent neceſſity, leaſt the vſe of letting blood bring a horſe to an euill cuſtome, and draw on ſickneſſe vnexpected; but with that opinion I cannot agree, becauſe I hold it more vertue to preuent a danger before it come, then to driue it away being preſent. Now that oft letting of blood breedeth in a horſe weakeneſſe, and maketh the blood to reſort to the inward parts, cloying the heart and intrailes, and making the outward parts fat and vnweldy, there is no queſtion but that the letting a horſe blood twice in the yeare; namely, at the beginning of May, and the end of December, (at which times onely I would haue a horſe let blood and no other) ſhould be accounted oft, I ſee no reaſon. Now for Stallions, the ancient Farriers would

by no meanes haue them let blood;becauſe,ſay they, the couering of Mares is as great an expence of blood as may be, affirming that one ounce of ſeede doth countervaile fiue ounces of blood, and truely I am of that opinion to;but whereas they likewiſe aduiſe by no meanes to let Geldings blood, becauſe the loſſe of their ſtones is the loſſe of their naturall heate; to that I am much contrary, becauſe I haue found it by continuall experience, that geldings doe as oft dye through the corruption and aboundance of blood,as horſes; nay, and much more ofter, in as much as they want the helpes which horſes haue for purging their bloods from vncleanneſſe. Now in the letting of horſes blood, euery carefull Farrier is firſt to reſpect the clymate vnder which the horſe is bred, knowing that thoſe horſes which are bred in could countries, haue euer more blood then thoſe which are bred in the hot: then he muſt conſider the time of the yeare, which would euer be the Spring, or the fall of the leafe, both thoſe times being moſt temperate, neither exceeding in heate nor cold. Next hee muſt regard the time of the day, which would euer be in the morning faſting, ſo it be not at the horſes awaking from ſleepe, but at leaſt an houre or two after: then he muſt looke vnto the ſtate of the Moone, that the ſigne be not in that part of the body where he intendeth to let blood: next he muſt looke to the horſes age, for if he be young, and not come to his growth,it will hinder his waxing; and if he be old and come to decrepidneſſe, his blood had more need be repaired then waſted. Laſtly, he ſhall looke to the horſes ſtrength and ancient cuſtome, and ſo according

accordingly he ſhall deale with him, obſeruing that ſome horſes may better ſpare two or three pound of blood, then other ſome one pound. Now thus much I haue ſpoken touching ordinary and naturall letting of blood without compulſion of any ſickneſſe or diſeaſe; but in caſe where ſickneſſe or infirmity craueth this office of letting blood, there you ſhall neither reſpect clymate, ſeaſon of the yeare, time of the day, ſigne, age, ſtrength nor cuſtome, but ſetting all aſide, apply your ſelfe onely to the remouing of the infirmity. Now the ſignes to know if a horſe ſtand in need to be let blood, are theſe: his eyes will looke red, and his veines will ſwell more then ordinary; alſo he will haue a certaine itch about his maine and his taile, and ſtill be continually rubbing them; and ſometimes will ſhed ſome of his haire alſo; he will now and then pill about the rootes of his eares, or in thoſe places where the head-ſtall of the bridle lyes: his vrine will be red and high coloured, and his dung will be blacke and hard: alſo if he hath red inflammations, or little bubbles on his backe, or doth not diſgeſt his meate well, it is a ſigne the horſe would be let blood: or if hee haue any apparant ſigne of yellowes in the whites of his eyes, or in the inſide of his lippes, either vpper or nether, it is a ſigne hee would be let blood: for after any of theſe ſignes doeth moſt commonly follow ſome one or other grieuous ſickneſſe, which to preuent, is the true Art of a skilfull Farrier. Now it is meete that when you intend to let a horſe blood (hauing leaſure to doe the ſame) that you ſuffer him to be thinly dyetted a day or two before he be let blood, to the end

that his body may be quiet, and not troubled with disgestion. Now for the manner of letting a horse blood, you shall as neere as you can, let him stand vpon euen ground, & if it be the neck veine which you would strike, you shall take a small long cord with a noose, and putting it ouer the horses necke, as close to the setting on of the shoulder as you can, there draw it as strait as is possible, and then fasten it with a running knot, and straight you shall see the veines to appeare as bigge as a mans little finger, euen from the nether chap downe the necke. Now you are to obserue that the place where you are to strike the veine in, is euen within three fingers or foure fingers at the most of the nether chap; as thus, if your horse haue a long, fine, thin necke and skin, then you may strike the veine within three fingers, or lesse of the chap (sith the higher is euer the better) but if he haue a short chub necke, with a thicke skin, and many wreathes or rolles, about the setting on of his chaps, then you shall strike the veine at leasts foure fingers from the chap, lest those wreaths together with the thickenesse of the skin, do so defend the veine that your fleame cannot reach it. When you haue thus raised the veine vp, you shall cause one to stand on the contrary side the horse, and with his fist to to thrust the veine forth hard against you: then you shall either with a wet spunge, or with a little spittle, wet that part of the veine which you meane to strike, and then separating the hayre, set your fleame euen and directly vpon the veine; and then with a good smart blow, strike it into the veine: which done, you shall cause one to put his finger

finger into the horſes month, and tickling him in the roofe thereof, make him chaw and moue his chappes; for that will force the blood to ſpin forth. Now the blood which you take from the horſe, it is very neceſſary that you ſaue in diuers veſſels, for diuers cauſes, as firſt, that you may ſee when all the corrupt blood is come forth, and that when the colour thereof is growne pure, and ſo remaineth being cold, that then you ſuffer the horſe to bleed no more; or elſe that you ſaue it to bathe the horſes body therewith, which is moſt wholeſome: or elſe to make a medicine therewithall by mingling with the blood vinegar and oyle, and ſo bathe the horſes body therewith, eſpecially that place which was let blood; for the ancient Farriers hold an opinion, that is endued with a certaine naturall vertue and power to comfort the weake and feeble members of a horſe, and to dry vp all euill humours. Now as ſoone as your horſe hath bled ſufficiently, you ſhall let looſe the cord, and immediately the veine will ſtoppe; then with that cord you ſhall ſtroake downe the veine iuſt ouer the orre-fire twiee or thrice, which will both cloſe vp the hole, and alſo turne the courſe of the blood: this done, ſet the horſe vp in the ſtable, and let him ſtand faſting two or three houres after, and then after dyet him according as in your diſcretion you ſhall thinke meete, that is to ſay, if he be a ſicke horſe, then like a ſicke horſe with good prouender and warme maſhes; but if hee be a ſound horſe, then like a ſound horſe, either turne him to graſſe, or keepe him in the ſtable after his ancient cuſtome.

Now if you would let your horſe blood either in the temple veines or the eye veines, you ſhall then cord him hard about the midſt of the necke, and not neere his ſhoulders, hauing care that you touch not his wind-pipe, and ſo throttle him: for it will make both theſe veines ſhew moſt apparantly. If you intend to let the horſe blood in the breſt veines, or plat veines, of ſome called the foure-thigh veines, you ſhall then cord him behind the ſhoulders, cloſe to the elbowes of the horſe, and ouer-thwart his withers, and that will make theſe two veines ſhew. Now you ſhall vnderſtand, that not any of theſe veines laſt ſpoken of, as about the head or the breaſt, muſt bee let blood by ſtriking them with a Fleame (though it be the manner of our common Smithes) for it is moſt beaſtly and butcherly, and alſo full of much danger by ſtriking through the veine; but you ſhall with a fine ſharpe lancet open the veine, euen in ſuch ſort as you ſee a skilfull Chyrurgion open a veine in a mans arme. Now for the letting of a horſe blood in the palate of the mouth, you ſhall but onely with a ſharpe ioynted knife, pricke the horſe betweene the ſecond and third barre, as deepe as a barley corne is long, and he will bleed ſufficiently: as for all other veines in a horſes body whatſoeuer, which are to be opened, you ſhall vnderſtand that whenſoeuer it is needfull that they bleed, that then they muſt be taken vp, and not corded at all. Now touching the taking vp of veines, and the manner how to doe it, you ſhall read more at large in particular chapters towards the end of this booke.

Chap. 6.

Of outward Sorrances what they are, and of certaine generall obseruations in the cure of them.

OVtward Sorrances, according to my meaning in this place, are taken two manner of wayes, that is to say, either it is an euill state and compositi-on of the body, which is to be discerned either by the shape, number, quantity, or site of the member e-uill affected and diseased: or else it is the loosning and diuision of an vnity, which as it may chance di-uersly, so it hath diuers names accordingly. For if such a diuision or loosing be in the bone, then it is called a fracture: If it be in any fleshly part, then it is called a wound, or an vlcer: If it be in the veines, then a rupture: If in the sinewes, then a convulsion or crampe; and if it be in the skinne, then it is called an excoriation: and of all these seuerally I intend to intreate in the following chapters. Now forasmuch as in this generall Arte of Surgery, or Sorran-ces, there are certaine generall obseruations, or ca-ueats to be held inuiolate, I will before I proceede any further, giue you a little taste thereof. First there-fore you shall vnderstand, that it is the duty of eue-ry good Farrier, neuer to burne or cauterize with hot yron, or with oyle, nor to make any incision with knife, where there be either veines, sinewes, or ioynts, but either somewhat lower, or somewhat higher.

Item, You shall neuer apply to any ioynt or si-newy part, either *Resalgar*, *Arsnicke*, *Mercury sublimate*,

mate, nor any such violent corrosiue.

Item, It is euer better to launce with a hotte Iron then a cold, that is, it is better to cauterize then to incise.

Item, Blood doth euer produce white and thicke matter, choler a waterish thin matter, but not much; salt fleame great aboundance of matter; and melancholy many dry scabs.

Item, When you let blood, you must take but the fourth part from a Colt, which you take from a growne horse.

Item, You must neuer let blood, except it be either to diuert sickenesse, and preserue health, or to refresh and coole the blood, or else to diminish blood, or to purge bad humours.

Item, In all Impostumes, or swelling sores, called Tumors, you must obserue the foure times of the sickenesse, that is to say, the beginning of the griefe, the increase of the griefe, the perfection and state of the griefe; and lastly, the declination and ending of the griefe.

Item, In the beginning of euery such swelling apostumes (if you cannot quite destroy them) vse repercussiue medicines, if they be not neere some principall part of the body; but then not, for feare of endangering life: in the augmentation, vse mollifying medicines, and supling to ripe them; and when they are ripe, launce them, and let them out, or drie them vp; and in the declination of them, vse cleansing and healing medicines.

Item, All swellings are either hard or soft; the hard commonly will corrode, the soft will continue long.

Item,

Item, If you thruſt your finger vpon any ſwelling vpon a horſes legges, then if it preſently riſe againe, and fill, then is the hurt new and recouerable; but if the dent doe remaine and continue ſtill behind, then is the hurt old, and commeth of cold humours, and askes great Art in healing.

Item, When ſores begin to matter, then they heale, but if the putrifaction be great, then beware they rot not inwardly.

Item, All cauterizing, or burning with hot Irons, ſtraineth things enlarged, dryeth vp what is too much moyſtned, diſſolueth things gathered together or hardned, draweth backe things which are diſperſed, and helpeth old griefes: for it ripeneth, diſſolueth, and maketh them to run and iſſue forth matter.

Item, You muſt ſometimes burne vnder the ſoare, to diuert humours, and ſometimes aboue, to defend and with-hold humours.

Item, It is euer better to burne with copper then with Iron, becauſe Iron is of a malignant nature; ſteele is of an indifferent vertue betwixt both.

Item, All actuall burnings is to burne with inſtrument, and potentiall burning is to burne with medicines, as are cauſticks and corroſiues.

Item, If you vſe oft to blow powders into a horſes eyes, it will make him blind.

Item, By no meanes take vp any veines in the fore-legs, vnleſſe great extremity compell you: for there is nothing that will ſooner make a horſe ſtiffe and lame. Many other obſeruations there are, which becauſe they are not ſo generall as theſe be, and that I

ſhall

ſhall haue occaſion to ſpeake of them in other particular chapters, I thinke it here meete to amit them, and the rather becauſe I will not be tedious.

Chap. 7.

Of the diſeaſes in the Eyes, and firſt of the weeping and watering eye.

THe eyes of a horſe are ſubiect to many infirmities, as firſt to bee rhumaticke, or watry, then to be blod-ſhotten, to be dimme of ſight, to haue the pinne and webbe, the haw, the wart in the eye, the inflammation of the eyes, the canker in the eye, or a ſtroke in the eye; of all which, ſome come of inward cauſes, as of humors reſorting to the eyes; and ſome of outward cauſes, as heat, cold, or elſe by ſome ſtripe or blow.

And firſt to begin with the rhumaticke or watry eye, you ſhall vnderſtand, that according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, it doth proceed many times from the fluxe of humours diſtilling from the braine, and ſometimes from the anguiſh of ſome blow or ſtripe receiued. The ſignes are, a continuall watering of the eye, and a cloſe holding of the liddes together, accompanied ſometimes with a little ſwelling. The cure, according to the opinion of ſome Farriers, is to take of *Bolearmonicke*, of *Terra-ſigillata*, and of *Sanguis Draconis*, of each a like quantity; make them into powder, and then adde vnto them as much of the white of an egge and Vinegar, as will make them moyſt; and then ſpread it plaiſter-wiſe vpon a cloath, and lay it to

the

the horſes temples of his head aboue his eyes ; and doe this three dayes together. Others vſe to let the horſe blood in the veines vnder his eyes ; then to waſh the eye twice or thrice in the day with white wine, and then to blow into the ſore eye with a quill, the powder of *Tartar*, *Salgemma*, and cuttle bone, of each like quantity : or elſe take the yolke of an egge roaſted hard, and mixe therewith the powder of Comen, and bind it hot to the eye, and ſo let it reſt a night more. Other Farriers vſe to take of Pitch and Roſen, and of Maſticke a like quantity ; melt them together : then with a little ſticke, hauing a clout bound to the end thereof, and dipt therein, annoynt the temple veines on both ſides a handfull aboue the eyes, as broad as a twelue-pence ; and then clap vnto it immediately a few flockes of like colour to the horſe, holding them cloſe to his head with your hand, vntill they ſticke faſt to his head ; then let him blood on both his eye-veines, if both eyes bee ſore ; and then waſh his eyes with white Wine. Others vſe onely to take a pretty quantity of life hony, and to diſſolue it in white Wine, and to waſh the horſes eyes therewith : and ſure if it proceede from any blow, it is a medicine ſufficient enough ; but if it proceede from any rhume, or inward cauſes, then you ſhall take ground Iuy beaten in a mortar, and mixt with waxe, and ſo laide to the eyes like a plaiſter, or elſe boyle wormewood in white Wine, and waſh the horſes eyes therewith : alſo to ſpurt Beere or Ale now and then into the horſes eyes, will cleare the ſight paſſing well.

CHAP.

Chap. 8.

Of the blood-ſhotten Eye, proceeding from any cauſe whatſoeuer.

FOr any blood-ſhotten eye, proceeding from any cauſe whatſoeuer, either outward or inward, you ſhall take (according to the opinion of the moſt ancient Farriers) of roſe water, of Malmſey, and of fennell water, of each three ſpoonfull; of *Tutie* as much as you may eaſily take vp betweene your thumb and your finger; of cloues a dozen beaten into fine powder; mingle them well together, and being lukewarme, or cold, if you pleaſe, waſh the inward parts of the eye with a feather dipt therein twice a day vntill the eye be well: or in ſtead hereof, to waſh the eye either with the white of an egge, or with the iuyce of Selladine. Others vſe to take the toppes of hawthornes, and boyling them in white Wine, waſh the eye therewith. Other Farriers take a dramme of *Synoper*, and as much of life hony, and as much of Wheat floure; mixe them with faire running water, ſo that they may be liquid and thin: then ſeeth them with a very ſoft fire vntill they be thicke like an oyntment, and therewithall annoint the eye. But the beſt receipt that euer I found for this griefe, is to take the whites of two egges, and beat it till it come to an oyle; then put to it two ſpoonefull of Roſe water, and three ſpoonfull of the iuyce of Houſleeke; mixe them well together: then dippe therein little round plegants of flat cakes, of ſoft tow as bigge as a horſes eye, and lay them vpon the horſes eyes, renuing them

them as oft as they grow hard, and in a day or two it will make the horſes eyes ſound againe.

Chap. 9.

Of Dimneſſe of ſight, or Blindneſſe.

Dimneſſe of ſight, or blindneſſe, may happen to a horſe diuers wayes, as by ſome ſtraine when the inward ſtrings of the eyes are ſtretched beyond their powers, or by the violence of great labour, or by the ſupporting of a great burthen beyond the horſes abilitie, or by ſome blow or wound: any of theſe are mortall enemies to the eyes and ſight. The ſigne is the apparant want of ſight, and an euill affected colour of the eye. Now for the cure, it is thus: If the ſight be gone, and yet the ball of the eye bee ſound, then you ſhall take, according to the opinion of ſome Farriers, a pretty quantity of May butter, with as much Roſemary, and a little yellow Roſen, with a like quantity of Selladine; then ſtampe them and fry them with the May butter; then ſtraine it, and keepe it in a cloſe boxe (for it is a iewell for ſore eyes) and annoynt your horſes eyes therewith at leaſt twice a day: it is alſo good to heale any wound. Other Farriers vſe to let the horſe blood in the eye-veines, and then waſh his eyes with red Roſe water. Others vſe to take the gall of a blacke ſheepe, and beat it, and ſtraine it: and then to waſh the eyes therwith. Others vſe to burn the horſe vnder the eyes that the ill humours may diſtill forth; and then to annoynt his eyes either with the marrow of a ſheepes ſhanke, and Roſe water mixt together, or elſe with

the

the iuyce of ground Iuy. Other Farriers vſe to take a Moulde-warpe, and lapping her all ouer in clay, burne her to aſhes; and then to take of that powder and blow it into the horſes eyes. Others vſe to take an empty egge-ſhell, and fill it with bay ſalt; then burne it till it bee blacke: then adde to it of burnt Allome the quantity of your thumbe; beate them together to fine powder; then mixe ſome of this powder with freſh butter, and wipe it into the horſes eye with a feather; then clappe the white of an egge dipt in flaxe, ouer his eyes: doe this once a day for a ſeuen night, and after but onee in two dayes: this is moſt excellent for any filme, and alſo for a pearle. Others vſe to take two dry tile-ſtones, and rub them together, and blow the powder of it with a quill into the horſes eyes three or foure dayes together.

A moſt rare approued medicine for any deſperate blindneſſe in a horſe, proceeding from any rhumaticke cauſe, ſurfeite, ſtraine, ſtroake, or ſuch like.

TAke of Vermillion, Bettony and Lauender, and beat them in a mortar with the beſt Venice Turpentine, till they come to a thicke ſalue like paſte: then make it into cakes or troches, each as broad as a groat, and dry them: then lay one or two of them vpon a chaffing-diſh and coales: and then couering them with a tunnell, let your horſe receiue the ſmoke vp into his noſtrilles, and this doe morning and euening: and euery time you thus fume him

him you ſhall alſo waſh his eyes inwardly, either with the water of Eye-bright ſimply, or with the water of Eye-btight, and the iuyce of ground Iuy mixt together. Now I haue knowne many which doe miſtake this ground Iuy, and ſuppoſe that the Iuy which is common, and runnes along on the ground to be ground Iuy, but it is not ſo; for ground Iuy is a weede which commonly growes in bottomes of hedges, by the Dikes ſide, in good big tuffts, it hath a little round rough leafe, and is iagged on the edges, and of all ſimples none is more ſoueraigne for the eyes.

Chap. 10.

Of the Pearle, Pinne, Webbe, or any ſpot in the Horſes eye.

THe Pearle, the Pinne, the Webbe, or any vnnaturall ſpot, or thicke filme ouer a horſes eye, proceedeth, for the moſt part, from ſome ſtroake receiued; yet the Pearle, which is a little round, thicke, white ſpot like a pearle, growing on the ſight of the horſes eye, comes many times from naturall cauſes, and euen from deſcent of Sire and Damme, as I haue often found by experience. The ſigne is, the apparant ſight of the infirmity; and the cure, according to the opinion of the moſt ancient Farriers, is to take ſixe leaues of ground Iuy, and a branch of Selladine, and bray them in a Mortar, with a ſpoonefull or two of Womans milke; and then ſtraine it through a cleane linnen cloth, and put it into a cloſe glaſſe, and then drop of it as much into

the horſes eye at a time, as will fill halfe a hazle nut ſhell: and it is the fitteſt to be done at night onely: doe thus thrice at the leaſt, and for three dayes after, keepe the horſe as much as may be from any light. Other Farriers vſe to annoint the horſes eyes with the marrow of Goates ſhankes, or Deeres ſhankes, and Roſe-water mixt together; or elſe to waſh his eyes with the iuyce of the berries and leaues of ground Iuy, or other Iuy mixt with white wine; and to blow into his eyes the powder of blacke flint, or of land Oyſters; but that powder muſt be made ſo exceeding fine, as by art in ſearcing can any wayes be brought to paſſe. And then for the taking away of any filme or pearle, there is no medicine more ſoueraigne. There be other Farriers which vſe to take the leane of a Gammon of Bacon, and dry it, and thereof make a powder, and blow it into the horſes eye. Others vſe to take white ginger made into very fine powder, and blow it into the horſes eyes; yet before you ſo doe, if the web haue continued any long time, it ſhall not be amiſſe, firſt to annoint the horſes eye with Capons-greaſe. Others vſe to blow into the horſes eye, the powder of Elder leaues dryed, or elſe the powder of mans-dung dryed; or the powder of a gray whet-ſtone mixt with the oyle of hony, and put into the horſes eye: Others vſe to take the yolk of an Egge, with ſalt burnt and beaten to powder, and blow it into the horſes eye: or elſe the powder of the cuttell-bone. Others vſe to take either Elder-leaues dryed, or mans dung dryed, and mixe it with the powder of the ſhell or bone of the Crab-fiſh, and blow it into the horſes eye. Others take *Tutty* beaten

to

to powder, and with a quill blow it iuſt vpon the pearle. Other Farriers vſe to take (and ſure it is not inferiour to any mediceine whatſoeuer) a good quantity of white ſalt, and lapping it round vp in a wet cloath, put it into the fire, and burne it to a red coale: then taking it forth and breaking it open, you ſhall finde in the midſts thereof, a white chore as big as a beane, or bigger: then picke out that chore, and beate it to powder, and mixe it with a little white wine: then after it hath ſtood a while, take the thicke thereof that lyeth in the bottome, and put it into the horſes eye; and with the thin waſh his eye: doe thus once a day till the pearle be conſumed. Others vſe to take the iuyce of Rue, and put it into the horſes eye: or elſe to make a hole in an Egge, and put forth all that is within it, and fill the ſhell with pepper; and cloſing it in an earthen pot, put it into a hot burning ouen till it bee white hot, then take it foorth, and beat the Pepper to powder, and blow thereof into the horſes eye. Others vſe to take of Pommis ſtone, of Tartarum, and *Salgemma*, of each like weight, and being beaten into very fine powder, to blow a little of that into the horſes eye, continuing ſo to doe till the eye be well. Others vſe onely to blow the powder of *Sandeuoire* into the horſes eye, affirming that it alone hath ſufficient force and vertue to breake any pearle or web in a very ſhort ſpace, without any other compoſition; but ſurely I haue found the powder of Flint, and the powder of white ſalt burnt, to be much more ſtronger.

A most excellent and infallible cure for any Pinne, webbe, Pearle, or spot in a horses eye.

TAke an Egge, and making a hole in the top, put out halfe the white, then fill vp the empty place with Salt and Ginger finely mixt together, then roſt the Egge extreame hard, ſo as you may beate it to powder, hauing formerly lapt it in a wet cloth, then morning and euening, after you haue waſht the horſes eye with the iuyce of ground Iuy, or Eye-bright water, you ſhall blow of this powder thereinto, and it is a certaine remedy.

Chap. II.

Of the Haw in the Horſes eye.

THe Haw is a griſtle growing betwixt the nether eye-lidde and the eye, and it couereth ſometimes, more then the one halfe of the eye. It proceedes of groſſe and tough fleamy humours, which deſcending downe from the head, and knitting together, doe in the end grow to a horne or hard griſtle. The ſignes thereof, are a watering of the eye, and an vnwilling opening of the nether lidde; beſides an apparant ſhew of the Haw it ſelfe, if with your Thumbe you doe but put downe the nether lid of the horſes eye.

The cure is, firſt take a needle and a double threed, put it through the tippe of the horſes eare, which done, put the needle likewiſe through the

the vpper eye-lid of the horſe vpwards, and ſo draw vp the eye-lid, and faſten it to the eare; then with your thumbe put downe the nether lidde, and you ſhall plainely ſee the Haw: then thruſt your needle through the edge of the Haw, & with the thrid draw it out, ſo as you may lay it vpon your finger; then faſten the thrid about your little finger to hold it conſtantly; and then with a very ſharpe knife cut croſſe the griſtle of the inſide next the horſes eye, and ſo ſeparating the skinne and the fat from the griſtle, cut the griſtle quite out: then cutting your thrids, draw them cleane out, both of the eye lids, and out of the Haw: then waſh all the horſes eye either with Ale, Beere, or white Wine, and plucke away all the long haires from about the horſes eyes, being ſure to leaue no blood within the horſes eye. And in this manner of cure you muſt obſerue, that by no meanes you cut away too much of the waſh or fat about the Haw; nor any part of the blacke that groweth by the end of the Haw, for that will make the horſe bleare eyed. There be other Farriers which vſe after they haue cut out the Haw, to annoynt the eye ſixe dayes after with ſallet oyle, the marrow of Sheepes-ſhankes and ſalt mixt together. Others vſe to take of the iuyce of ground Iuy ſtampt in a mortar, with the iuyce of Iuy berries, and mixe them either with water or white wine; and ſo plaiſter-wiſe lay it to the horſes eye, renewing it morning and euening, and it will eate way the Haw. Others vſe after the Haw is cut away, to lay to the eye a plaiſter of Camomill and of hony beaten together; any of all which is ſufficient enough. Now you

are to note by the way, that the horſe which hath one haw, commonly hath two: for they continually goe together.

Chap. 12.

Of Moone-eyes, or Lunaticke-eyes.

THe Moone-eyes, or Lunaticke-eyes, are of all ſore eyes the moſt dangerous and noyſome, and doe proceede from hot humours, deſcending from the head, and ſtirred vp by the extremity of ouer-riding, or compelling a horſe to doe more then nature will giue him leaue; as I haue ſeene a ſlothfull and heauy horſe brought to be Moone-eyed by the folly of his rider, who would force him to ſtand and trot contrary to the vigor of his ſpirit; ſo likewiſe I haue ſeene delicate mettald horſes brought to be Moone-eyed, when the riders would not temper the freeneſſe of their natures, but haue giuen them leaue to runne into all violence. Now they be called Moone-eyes, becauſe if the Farrier doe obſerue them, hee ſhall perceiue that at ſometimes of the Moone, the horſe will ſee very prettily, and at ſome times of the Moone, he will ſee nothing at all. Now the ſignes hereof are, when the horſes eyes are at the beſt, they will looke yellowiſh and dimme; and when they are at the worſt, they will looke red, fiery and angry.

The cure is to lay all ouer the temples of the horſes head, the plaiſter of Pitch, Roſen, and Maſticke, mentioned in the chapter of watry eyes: then vnder each of his eyes with a ſharpe knife make a ſlit

of

of an inch long about foure fingers beneath his eyes, and at leaſt an inch wide of the eye-veines; then with a cornet looſen the skin about the bredth of a groat, and thruſt therein a round peece of leather as broad as a two-pence with a hole in the midſt, to keepe the hole open; and looke to it once a day that the matter may not be ſtopped, but continually runne the ſpace of ten dayes; then take the leather out, and heale the wound with a little flaxe dipt in this ſalue. Take of Turpentine, of Hony, and of Waxe, of each like quantitie, and boyle them together, which being a little warmed will be liquid to ſerue your purpoſe; and take not away the plaiſters which are vpon his temples vntill of themſelues they fall away; which being fallen, then with a ſmall hot drawing Iron, make a ſtarre in the midſt of each Temple-veine, where the plaiſters did lye, vvhich ſtarre vvould haue a hole in the midſt, made vvith the butten end of your drawing Iron in this ſort. ✠

Now there be other Farriers vvhich in ſtead of the ſlits vnder the eye, and the peece of leather, vvhich is a plaine rowell, onely doe take a ſmall blunt hot Iron, and about an inch and an halfe beneath the nether lidde, to burne ſome fiue holes all of a row, according to the compaſſe of the horſes eye, and to burne thoſe holes euen into the bone; and then once a day to annoint them vvith freſh-greaſe, or ſweete butter.

Chap. 13.

Of the Canker in the eye.

A Canker in the eye commeth of a ranke and corrupt blood, descending from the head into the eye, where it congealeth and breedeth a little worme in manner as it were the head of a Pismire, which groweth in the nether end of the horses eye, next to his noseward: It proceedeth many times into the gristle of the nose, which if it chance to eate through, it will then passe into the head, and so kill the horse. The signes thereof are, you shall see red pimples, some great and some small, both within and without the eye, vpon the eye-lids, and all the eye it selfe will looke red and be full of very corrupt matter. The cure, according to the ancient Farriers, is to take as much burnt allume as an hazell nut, and as much of greene Copporas, and bake them both together vpon a Tile-stone; and then grinde them into powder, and put thereto a quarter of a spoonefull of Hony, and mixe them all together; and then with a clout dipt therein, rubbe the sore till it bleede: and doe thus seuen daies together, and it will cure the Canker. There be other Farriers, vvhich for this Canker in a horses eye, will first let the horse blood in the necke-veine of the same side that the sore eye is, and take away to the quantity of a pottle of blood: then take of Roch Allume, and of greene Copporas, of each halfe a pound, of vvhite Copporas one ounce; and boyle them in three pints of running vvater, vntill the halfe be

be consumed: then take it from the fire, and once a day wash his eye with this water, being made lukewarme, with a fine linnen cloth, and cleanse the eye therewith, so as it may looke raw; and doe this till the eye be whole.

Chap. 14.

For a stripe or blow vpon a Horses eye.

IF a horse shall catch any stripe or blow vpon his eye, either vvith vvhip, rod, cudgell, or any such like mischance, or by one horses biting of another, vvhen they either play or fight: then for the cure thereof (if you take it vvhen it is new done) you shall onely blow into his eye, either the powder of *Sandeuoire*, or the fine powder of vvhite Salt, after the eye hath beene washt vvith a litle Beere; but if the eye be more sore, and haue continued longer, then you shall take a small loafe of bread, and pull out all the crummes; then fill the loafe full of burning coales, vntill it be vvell burned vvithin; then take of that cruſt and put it in vvhite VVine, and after it is vvell soaked lay it to the sore: then take Sope water, and cold water mixt together, and vvash all the eyebrowes therewith, and if for all that it goe not away, then you shall let him blood on the Temple-veines; and if he doe rub or chafe his eye, you shall let him blood of the veines vnder his eyes, and vvash his eyes vvith cold Sope vvater; but if his eyes doe chance to looke red vvith the blow, then you shall lay vnto them a plaister of redde lead and Sallet Oyle beaten vvell together. Others vse to take

take the iuyce of Plantane, ſtampt and mixt with white Wine, and ſo laid to the ſore eye. Others vſe both for this diſeaſe, or any other ſore eye, to ſtampe ſtrong nettles with a little Beere, and then ſtraining it to ſquirt thereof into the horſes eye, twice or thrice together: then to put of the fine powder of *Sandeuoire* a little into his eye, and then bee carefull to keepe the horſes eye from winde or cold; but if you muſt needes ride him, then put a wollen cloath before the horſes eye; alſo it is not amiſſe to let him blood on his eye-veines, and the twice dreſſing will be ſufficient.

Other Farriers vſe firſt to annoint the ſore eye three dayes together with Hennes or Capons greaſe to mollifie it: then take a little life hony, and warming it, wipe it into the horſes eye with a feather. Others take the iuyce of Plantane mixt with hony, or elſe the iuyce of time mixt with hony, and put it into the eye. Others vſe to take the aſhes of an old ſhooe ſole burnt in an ouen, and put it into the horſes eye: or elſe the powder of a gray whetſtone blowne into the ſore eye; both are ſpeedy remedies. Others vſe to take the iuyce of ſmallage and of fennell, and mixing them with the white of an egge, put it into the horſes eye once a day till the eye be whole.

Chap. 15.

For a Wart in the eye.

A Wart in a horſes eye, is a fleſhly excretion, or a fleſhly knot growing either vpon the eye, or vpon

vpon the edge or inside of the eye-liddes. It proceedeth from a thicke fleame, which descendeth to the eye by meanes that the horse is too much kept in a darke stable without light; and this infirmitie will make a horses eye consume and grow little. The cure is to take roch Allome, and burne it on a Tile-stone, and then put as much white Copporas thereunto not burnt, and grinde them to powder; then lay some of that powder iust vpon the head of the wart; and doe thus once a day till the wart be consumed away.

Chap. 10.

For any Inflammation in a horses eyes.

HOrses may diuersly haue inflammations in the eyes, as by long standing in the Stable, with foule feeding and no exercise, or by moates falling into his eyes, or by rankenesse of blood and such like; any of which will breed an inflammation or soreneſſe in the eye. The signes are itching and rubbing of the eyes, and a little swelling, with some loathneſſe to open the eye-lids. The cure is, first to let him blood vpon the Temple-veines, and vpon the eye-veines; and then to wash his eyes with milke and hony mixt together. Others after blood letting, will wash the horses eyes with hony and *Aloes epatica* mixt together: and others will wash his eyes with *Aloes* dissolued in white Wine; any of which is approued to be most excellent for any soare eye.

Chap.

Chap. 17.

Of the Impostume in the eare of a Horse.

IMpostumes which breed in the eare of a Horse, proceede from diuers causes, as from some great blow about the head, or from wringings with a hard halter, or from some euill humours congealed in the eares by some extreame cold. The signes whereof appeare plainely by the burning and painefull swelling of the rootes of the eares, and the other parts thereabout. The cure thereof, is first to ripe the Impostume with this plaister: take of Linseed beaten into powder, and Wheate flowre, of each halfe a pint, of Hony a pint, of Hogges grease, otherwise called Barrowes grease, one pound; warme all these things together in an earthen pot, and stirre them continually with a flat sticke or slice, vntill they be throughly mingled and incorporated together; and then spread some of this plaister being warme, vpon a peece of linnen cloth or soft white leather, so brod as the swelling and no more, and lay it warme vnto it; and so let it remaine one whole day, and then renew it againe, continuing so to doe vntill it either doe breake, or else grow so ripe that you may launce it downe-ward, so that the matter may haue passage out; then taint it with a taint of flaxe dipped in this salue euen to the bottome, that is to say, take of *Metrosatum*, of sallet oyle and Turpentine, of each two ounces, and mingle them together, and make the horse a biggen of Canuase to close in the sore, so as the taint with the oyntment may abide within the sore,

ſoare, renewing the taint once a day vntill it bee whole; but if the horſe haue paine in his eares, without any great paine or inflammation, then thruſt into his eare a little blacke wooll, dipt in the oyle of Camomile, and that will eaſe him; but if the Impoſtume be broken before you perceiue it, and that you ſee matter runne from the horſes eares, then you ſhall take of Oyle of Roſes, of *Venice* Turpentine, and of hony, of each like quantity, and mixing them well together, warme it luke-warme vpon a few coales, and then dipping blacke wooll therein, thruſt it downe into the horſes eare that runneth, renewing it once a day vntill the eare leaue running.

Chap. 18.
Of the Polle euill.

THE Polle euill is a great ſwelling inflammation, or Apoſtume in the nape of a horſes necke, iuſt betweene his Eare towards his Maine, and proceedeth ſometimes from the horſes ſtruggling or ſtriuing in his halter, eſpecially if the halter bee of hard new twound hempe; ſometimes it proceedeth from euill humours, gathered together in that place, or elſe from ſome ſtripe or blow giuen to the horſe by ſome rude Keeper, Carter, or Man of little diſcretion: for that part being the weakeſt and tendereſt part about the head; is the ſooneſt offended and grieued with ſorrance. The ſignes of this diſeaſe is an apparant ſwelling betweene the horſes Eares, and on each ſide his necke; which in continuance of time, will breake of it owne accord, yet doth

euer

euer rot more inwardly then outwardly, from whence it comes that this diſeaſe is more commonly called of our common and ignorant Farriers, the Fiſtula in the necke, then the polle-euill; and in truth it is an vlcer, ſo hollow and ſo crooked, and ſo full of ſharpe matter, like vnto lye, that it very little differeth from a Fiſtula, and is of all Impoſtumes, except the Fiſtula it ſelfe, the moſt hardeſt to cure: therefore I would wiſh euery carefull Farrier to take this cure in hand ſo ſoone as is poſſible, that is to ſay, before it breake, if it may be.

Now for the generall cure (according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers) it is thus: Firſt, if it be not broken, ripe it with a plaiſter of hogges greaſe, laid vnto it ſo hot as may be, and make a biggen for the powle of his head to keepe it from cold; which biggen would haue two holes open, ſo as his eares may ſtand out; and renew the plaiſter euery day once vntill that it breake, keeping the ſore place as warme as may be; & if that you ſee it will not breake ſo ſoone as you would haue it, then looke where it is ſofteſt, & moſt meeteſt to be opened; take a round hot Iron, or a Copper Iron (for that is the better) as bigge as a mans litle finger, and ſharpe at the point, made in this figure, & then about two inches beneath the ſoft place, thruſt it in a good deepneſſe vpward, ſo as the point of your cauterizing Iron may come out at the ripeſt place, to the intent that the matter may deſcend downeward, and come out at the nether hole, which would alwayes be kept open; and therefore taint it with a taint of flaxe dipt in hogges greaſe warme, and lay alſo a plaiſter of hogges greaſe

greaſe vpon the ſame, renewing it euery day once for the ſpace of foure daies, which is done chiefly to kill the heate of the fire; then at the foure dayes end, take of Turpentine halfe a pound, cleane waſhed in nine ſundry waters, and after that throughly dryed, by thruſting out the water with a ſlice on the diſhes ſide; then put thereunto two yolkes of Egges, and a little Saffron, and mingle them well together: that done, ſearch the depth of the hole, either with a quill or a probe; and make a taint of a peece of dry ſpunge neuer wet, ſo long as it may reach neare the bottome, and ſo bigge as may fill the wound; and annoint the taint with the aforeſaide ointment, and thruſt it into the wound either with that quill, or elſe by winding it vp with your finger and thumbe by little and little, vntill you haue thruſt it home, and then lay on the plaiſter of hogges-greaſe made luke-warme, renewing it euery day once or twice vntill it be whole; but if the ſwelling ceaſe, then you needs not to vſe the plaiſter, but onely to taint it; and as the matter decreaſeth, ſo make your taint euery day leſſer and leſſer vntill the wound bee perfectly whole. Now if this diſeaſe of the Polle-euill haue broken of it ſelfe, and by negligent looking vnto, haue continued ſo long that it is turned to a Fiſtula, which you ſhall know both by the great and crooked hollowneſſe inwardly, and by a ſharpe thin water which will iſſue out thereof outwardly, then you ſhall take (according to the opinion of the Farriers) of vnſleckt lime, and of *Arſnicke*, of each like quantity; beat them together into very fine powder, put thereto of the iuyce of garlicke, of onions and of wal-woort,

Wal-woort, of each like quantitie, and of Holly as much as all the reſt; boile them vpon a ſoft fire, and ſtirre them all well together vntill they be as thicke as an oyntment; then waſh the ſoare with very ſtrong vinegar, and fill the hoale full of the afore-ſaide ointment, by dipping a taint therein twice a day; then lay a plaiſter of hogs greaſe vpon the Tent to make it keepe in, and vſe this vntill the horſe bee whole. Other Farriers vſe to take orpiment, vnleackt lime, and verdigreaſe of each like quantitie, temper them with the iuyce of pellitorie, blacke inke, hony, and ſtrong vinegar of each like quantity, boile them and ſtir them well together, vntill they be very thick, then make thereof ſmall rolles, and put them into the hollow place of the ſame ſorance: now you are to note that both this and the laſt recited ſalue before this are onely to kill the ranckerous & ſharpe humor which brings the ſore vnto a Fiſtula, which ſo ſoone as you haue killed, which you ſhall know by the matter which will be white and thick, then you ſhal heale vp the ſore either with the powder of Sauin, or the powder of hony and lime baked together, or elſe by annointing it with tarre and ſallet oyle, or freſh hogs greaſe mixt together. There be other Farriers which for this ſorance doe firſt open the ſore with a hot Iron, and then take red lead or blacke ſope, and mixing them very well with water till it bee good and thicke, taint the horſe therewith till he be whole. Others vſe to take a quart of water, halfe a pound of roch Allum, foure peny worth of Mercury, a quarter of a pound of verdigreaſe, and mixing them well together, waſh the horſes ſore with this water till it be-

gin

gin to dry vp, and then heale it with the powders before named. See further in the new Additions for the Fistula.

Chap. 19.

Of a Horse that is laue-ear'd, and how to helpe him.

For a horse to be laue-eard, is as foule a disgrace, and as much deformity to his beauty, as to want the true proportion and vse of any outward member whatsoeuer. It proceedeth from a naturall infirmity, and is ingendred euen from the first conception; and although few of our Farriers either haue endeuoured themselues, or know how to helpe it; yet there is nothing more certaine then that in this sort it may be cured. First, take your horses eares, and place them in such maner as you would haue them stand, and then with two little boords, or peeces of trenchers three fingers broad, hauing long strings knit vnto them, bind the eares so fast in the places where they stand, that by no meanes or motion they may stirre; then betwixt the head and the roote of the eare, you shall see a great deale of empty wrinkled skinne, which with your finger and your thumbe you shall pull vp, and then with a very sharpe paire of sizers you shall clippe away all the empty skinne close by the head: then with a needle and red silke, you shall stitch the two sides of the skinne close together, and then with a salue made of Turpentine, Deeres suet, and hony, of each like quantity melted together and made into an oyntment, heale vp the sore; which done, take away the splents which held

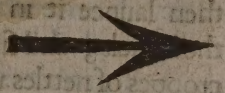
vp his eares, and you shall see his eares will keepe the same place still as you set them, without any alteration: and this you shall euer finde as certaine as the healing of a cut finger.

Chap. 20.

Of the Viues, or hard Kirnels betweene the Chappes and the Necke.

THe Viues are certaine great kernels which grow from the roote of the horses eare, downe to the lower part of his nether iaw, betweene the chappe and the necke, they are in proportion, long, narrow and round, and are naturall things proper and due to euery horse; but when either through rankenesse of blood, or aboundance of corrupt humours, resorting to that place, they begin to bee inflamed, then they become very foule Sorrances and Impostumations most dangerous; they are inwardly very full of little white salt kirnels, and they breed great paine in the horses throat. This disease as farre forth as I can finde by any demonstration, is the disease which in men we call the Squinanfie, or quinzie, and not as some of the old Farriers suppose, the strangle, for that hath no coherence with the infirmitie. For the signes of the disease, there needes small repetition, insomuch as the griefe is apparant to the eye; and the cure, according to the opinion of the oldest Farriers, is thus; If you see the kirnels to rankle and swell, you shall take the horses eare, and laying it downe alongst the necke of the horse, at the very end or tippe of the yeare, cut a hole through the

the skinne of the necke, the length of an Almonde, or better; and then with a crooked wire, picke out all those kirnels which you finde inflammed; which done, fill the hole full of salt: then about the end of three dayes, you shall finde the sore beginne to matter: then wash it either with barke water, or with the iuyce of Sage: then take of hony, of sweete butter, and of tarre, of each halfe a spoonefull, and melt them together; and as soone as you haue washt the sore cleane, put into it of this ointment the quantity of a beane, and so dresse the horse once a day vntill he be whole.

There bee others of our most ancient English Farriers, which for this Sorrance vse first to draw the sore right downe in the midst with a hot Iron from the roote of the eare, so farre as the tippe of the eare will reach; being pulled downe, and vnder the roote againe draw two strikes on each side like an Arrow head in this forme:  then in the midst of the first line, launce them with a lancet, and taking hold of the kirnels with a paire of fine thinne pinsons, pull them so farre forward as you may cut the kirnels out without hurting the veine: that done, fill the hole with salt, and heale it vp as aforesaid. Now the most of the Italian Farriers vse this cure: First, take a spunge steeped well in strong vinegar, and bind it vnto the sore place, renewing it twice a day vntill the kirnels be rotten: that done, launce it in the neathermost part, where the matter lyeth, and let it out, and then fill vp the hole with salt finely brayed, and the next day

wash all the filth away with warme water and a spunge; and then annoynt the place with hony and fitch flower mixt together; but in any case beware, during this cure, you touch not the kirnels with your bare finger, for feare of venoming the place, which is very apt for a Fistula to breed in. Now there bee other English Farriers, which vse either to ripen the sore by laying to a plaister of hot hogges grease, or a plaister of barley meale, mixt with three ounces of Raisins sod well together in strong Wine, or else they cut out the kirnels. Now whether you cut them out, burne them out, or rot them out (of all which I hold rotting the best) you shall euer fill the hole with nettles and salt being chopt and mixt together: or else taint it with tents dipt in water and mixt with fallet oyle and salt. Others vse to burne them downwards with a hot Iron in the middest, from the eare to the iaw-bone, drawing two crosse strokes; and then launce it in the middest, and plucke out the kirnels, and fill the hole with bay salt, and the croppes of nettles well chopt and mixt together: or else put onely salt into the hole, and take the crops of nettles well chopt and mixt with bay salt, and two spoonfull of strong vinegar, and straine it, and put in either eare a spoonfull thereof, and put some black Wooll after it, and so bind vp his eares. Others vse to ripen them, either by laying to the sore, wet hay, or hot horse-litter; and as soone as they are ripe (which you shall know by the softnesse) to launce the skinne, and take out the kirnels, and then fill the hole with the powder of hony and vnsleckt lime mixt together and burne. Others vse after the kirnels

are

are ripened and taken out, to take of *Egrimonie*, hony and violet leaues, of each like quantity, and stamping them well together, to plaister the sore therewith, till it be whole. Others vse after the kirnels are taken out, to wash the sore with copporas water, and then to tent the hole with flaxe dipt in the white of an egge; and after to heale it with Waxe, Turpentine, and hogges grease molten well together.

A most rare and certaine approued medicine, which will cure the Vines without either burning, melting, rotting, or any such like violent extremity.

TAke a peny-worth of pepper beaten to fine powder, of swines grease one spoonfull, the iuyce of a handfull of rue, & of vinegar two spoonfuls; mix them all well together, and put it equally into both the horses eares, and tie them vp with two strings, or else stitch them together: then shake the eares that the medicine may sinke downwards; which done, you shall let the horse blood in the necke veine, and in the temple veines. And this cure is infallible.

Chap. 21.
Of the Strangle.

THe Strangle (howsoeuer our old Farriers make a long discourse thereof) is not (as they suppose) a kinde of quinzie, but a meane inflammation of the throate, proceeding from some cholericke or bloody fluxion, which comes out of the branches of the throate veines into those parts, and there

breedeth some hot inflammation, being stirred vp either by some great cold winter, or cold taken after labour: it is a great and a hard swelling betweene the horses neather chaps vpon the rootes of the horses tongue, and about his throat; which swelling, if it be not preuented, will stop the horses windpipe, and so strangle or choke him; from which effect, and none other, the name of the disease tooke his deriuation. The signes of this disease, besides the apparant signe thereof, and the palpable feeling of the same, is, the horses temples of his head will be hollow, and his tong will hang out of his mouth, his head and eyes also will be swolne, and the passage of his throat so stopt, that hee can neither eate nor drinke; and his breath will be exceeding short. The cure thereof, according to the most ancient Farriers, is with a round small hot Iron to thrust a hoale through the skin on both sides the weffand; and then after it beginneth to matter, to mixe Butter, Tanners water and Salt together, and euery day annoynt the sore therewith till it be whole. Other of the ancient Farriers vse first to bathe the horses mouth and tongue with hot water; and then annoynt the sore place with the gall of a Bull: that done, giue him this drinke: Take of old Oyle two pounds, of old Wine a quart, nine Figges, and nine Leekes heads well stamped and brayed together; and after you haue boyled these a while, before you straine them, put thereunto a little *Nitrum Alexandrinum*, and giue him a quart of this euery morning and euening: also you may if you will, let him blood in the palate of the mouth, and powre wine and oyle

into

into his noſtrilles, and alſo giue him to drinke the decoction of figges and *Nitrum* ſodden together, or elſe to annoynt his throate within with *Nitre*, Oyle and Hony, or elſe with hony and hogges dung mixt together. Others Farriers vſe to rowell the horſe vnder the throate, and to draw the rowell twice or thrice a day, annoynting it with freſh butter, and keeping his head warme. Other of our latter and better experienced Farriers, vſe firſt, (if his yeares will permit) to let the horſe blood in the the necke veine, then to lay to the ſore this ripening plaiſter: Take of Mallowes, linſeed, Rue, Smallage, and ground Iuy, of each like quantity; boyle all theſe together in the grounds of Beere: then put to a pretty quantity of oyle de bay, with a little *Dia Althea*: then take it from the fire, and therewith make your plaiſter, and lay it to the ſore, ſuffering the horſe by no meanes to drinke any cold water: after the ſore is broken, lay Branne ſteept in Wine vnto it, till it bee whole. Others vſe to cut the kirnels out betweene the iawes, and then to waſh the ſore with butter and beere, giuing the horſe to drinke new milke and garlicke, and the iuyce of the leaues of birch, or in winter the barke of birch, or elſe to annoynt it with tarre and oyle till it be whole. Now, for mine owne part, the beſt cure that euer I found for the Strangle, was this: As ſoone as I found the ſwelling to ariſe betweene his chaps, to take a waxe candle and holding it vnder the horſes chappes, cloſe to the ſwelling, burne it ſo long till you ſee the skinne bee burnt through, ſo that you may, as it were, raiſe it from the fleſh: that done, you ſhall lay vnto it, either wet hay,

or wet horſe-litter, and that will ripen it, and make it breake: then lay a plaiſter vnto it onely of Shoomakets Waxe, and that will both draw and heale it. Now if it breake inward, and will not breake outward, and ſo auoideth onely at his noſe, then you ſhall twice or thrice euery day, perfume his head by burning vnder his noſtrilles either Franke-inſence or Maſticke, or elſe by putting a hot coale into wet hay, and ſo making the ſmoake thereof to aſcend vp into the horſes head.

Chap. 22.

Of the cankerous Vlcer in the Noſe.

THat which wee call the cankerous Vlcer in the Noſe, is onely a fretting humour, eating and conſuming the fleſh, and making it all raw within, and not being holpen in time, will eate through the griſtle of the noſe. It commeth of corrupt blood, or elſe of a ſharpe hunger ingendred by meanes of ſome extreame cold.

The ſignes are, the horſe will oft bleed at the noſe, and all the fleſh within his noſe will bee rawe, and filthy ſtinking ſauours and matter wil come out at the noſe.

The cure thereof, according to the ancient Farriers, is: Take of greene Copporas and of Allome of each a pound, of white Copporas one quartetne; and boyle theſe in a pottle of running water vntill a pint be conſumed: then take it off, and put thereunto halfe a pint of hony: then cauſe his head to bee holden vp with a drenching ſtaffe, and ſquirt into his

his noſtrilles with a ſquirt of braſſe, or pewter, ſome of this water being luke-warme, three or foure times one after annother; but betwixt euery ſquirting giue him liberty to hold downe his head, and to ſhurt out the filthy matter; for otherwiſe perhaps you might choake him: and after this it ſhall be good alſo without holding vp his head any more, to waſh and rub his noſtrils with a fine clowt bound to a ſtickes end, and dipt in the aforeſaid water; and doe thus once a day vntill the horſe be whole. Other Farriers vſe, if they ſee this Canker to be of great heate, and burning in the ſore with exceeding great paine, then you ſhall take the iuyce of Purſlaine, Lettice, and Night-ſhade, of each like quantity, and mix them together, and waſh the ſore with a fine cloath dipt therein, or elſe ſquirt it vp into his noſtrilles, and it will allay the heate. Others take of Hyſſop, Sage and Rue, of each a good handful, and ſeeth them in Vrine and Water to the third part of them: then ſtraine them out, and put in a little white Copporas and Hony, and Aqua-vitæ; & ſo either waſh or ſquirt the place with it: then when the Canker is kild, make this water to heale it: Take of Ribbe-woort, Betony and dayſies, of each a handfull: then ſeeth them well in Wine and Water, and waſh the ſore three or foure times a day therewith vntill it bee whole. Others vſe to take Chryſtall, and beating it into fine powder, to ſtrowe it vpon the Canker, and it will kill it.

CHAP.

Chap. 23.
Of bleeding at the Nose.

MAny horses, (especially young horses) are oft subiect to this bleeding at the nose, which I imagine proceedeth either from the great aboundance of blood, or that the veine which endeth in that place, is either broken, fretted, or opened. It is opened many times by meanes that blood aboundeth too much, or that it is too fine, or too subtile and so pierceth through the veine. Againe, it may be broken by some violent straine, cut or blow. And lastly, it may be fretted and gnawne through by the sharpenesse of the blood, or else by some other euill humour contained therein. The cure is, according to the auncient Farriers, to take the iuyce of the rootes of nettles, and squirt it vp into the horses nostrilles, and lay vpon the nape of the horses necke, a wadde of hay dipt in cold water; and when it waxeth warme, take it off, and lay on a cold one. Other Farriers vse to take a pint of redde Wine, and to put therin a quarterne of Bole-armonicke beaten into fine powder; and being made luke-warme, to powre the one halfe thereof the first day into his nostrill that bleedeth, causing his head to be holden vp, so as the Wine may not fall out, and the next day to giue him the other halfe.

Others vse to let the horse blood on the breast veine on the same side that hee bleedeth at seuerall times: then take of Frankinsence one ounce, of Aloes halfe an ounce, and beate them into fine pow-

der,

der, and mingle them throughly with the whites of Egges vntill it be as thicke as Hony; and with ſoft Hares haire thruſt it vp into his noſtrill, filling the hole ſo full that it cannot fall out, or elſe fill his noſtrilles full of aſhes, dung or hogges dung, or horſes dung mixt with Chalke and Vinegar. Now for mine owne part, when none of theſe will helpe (as all haue failed mee at ſome times) then I take two ſmall cords, and with them garter him exceeding hard, ſome tenne inches aboue his knees of his fore legges, and iuſt beneath his elbowes; and then keepe the nape of his necke as cold as may be, with cloathes, or wet hay, and it will ſtaunch him preſently.

Chap. 42.

Of the boody rifts, or choppes in the palate of the horſes mouth.

THeſe choppes, clefts or rifts, in the palate of a horſes mouth, doe proceede (as ſome Farriers ſuppoſe) from the eating of rough hay, full of whimmes, thiſtles, or other pricking ſtuffe, or elſe prouender full of ſharpe ſeede, which by continuall pricking and fretting the furrowes of the mouth, doe cauſe them to rankle, ſwell, and breed corrupt and ſtinking matter; and without ſpeedy preuention, that vlcer will turne to the foulеſt canker. The cure thereof is (according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers) to waſh the ſore places very cleane without ſalt and vinegar mixt together, then to annoynt it with hony. Other Farriers vſe (eſpecially if the

the palate bee much swelled, to pricke the roofe of the mouth with an hot Iron, that the humour may issue out aboundantly, and then to annoynt the the place with Hony and Onions boyled together till they be whole.

Chap. 25.

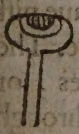
Of the Gigges or Bladders in a Horses mouth.

THese Gigges, Bladders, or Flappes in a horses mouth, are little soft swellings, or rather postules with blacke heads, growing in the inside of the horses lips, next vnto his great iaw-teeth; they will sometimes be as great as a Wall-nut, and are so painfull vnto him, that they make him let his meate fall out of his mouth, or at least keepe it in his mouth vnchawed, whereby the horse can in no wise prosper: they doe proceede either of eating too much grasse, or naughty rough pricking hay or prouender, they are most apparantly to be felt; and the cure is (according to the opinion of the oldest Farriers) first to draw out the horses tongue of the one side of his mouth, and then take a lancet and slit the swellings the length of a date; and then with a probe pricke out all the kirnels like Wheate cornes very cleane: then take the yolke of an egge, and as much salt as will temper it thicke like leauen; then make it into little balles, and thrust into euery hole one; and doe so once a day vntill it bee whole. Other Farriers vse after they haue slit them with an incision knife, and thrust out the corruption, onely to wash the sore places either with Vinegar and Salt, or else with

with Allome water. Others vse with a small hot Iron to burne the swellings, and then wash them with Beere and salt, or Ale and Salt, and it will heale them. Now that you may preuent this disease before it come, it shall be good to pull out the horses tong often, and to wash it with Wine, Beere and Ale, and so shall no blisters breed thereon, nor any other disease.

Chap. 26.
Of the Lampasse.

THe Lampasse is a swelling or growing vp of the flesh, which ouergroweth the vpper teeth, which are the shearers in the vpper chap, and so hindreth the horse from eating. They doe proceede from aboundance of blood resorting to the first furrow or barre of the mouth, I meane that which is next to the vpper fore-teeth; it is most apparant to be seene, and therefore needeth no other signes. The cure is (according to the custome of the oldest Farriers, first with a lancet to let them blood in diuers places of the swelled flesh: then take an Iron made at one end broad and thin, and turned vp according to this figure, and heating it red hot, burne out all that superfluous swelld flesh which ouergrowes the fore-teeth; and then annoynt the sore place with fresh butter till it bee whole. Others vse after it is burnt out, onely to rub the sore place with salt onely, or wash it with salt and vinegar till it be whole. Others vse to take a hooked knife made very sharpe and very hot,



and

and therewith cut the swolne places in two parts crosse against the teeth; but if they be a little sweld, then cut but the third ranke from the teeth, and so let him bleed well: then rubbe it with a little salt, and the horse will bee well: but if you finde afterwards that either through too much burning or cutting, or through the eating of rough meate, that the wound doth not heale, but rather rankleth: then you shall take a saucer-full of hony, and twelue peppercornes, and bray them together in a mortar, and temper them vp with vinegar, and boyle them a while, and then once a day annoynt the sore therewith till it be whole.

Chap. 27.

Of the Camery, or Frounce.

THE Camery, or Frounce in horses, are small Pimples or warts in the middest of the palate of the mouth aboue, and they are soft and sore; they will also sometimes breed both in his tongue and in his lippes: it proceedeth sometimes from the eating of frozen grasse, or by drawing frozen dust with the grasse into their mouthes; sometimes by eating of most hay, that Rats or other vermine haue pist vpon; and sometimes by licking vp of venome. The signes are the apparant seeing of the pimples, or whelkes, and a forsaking of his food, both through the soreneſse of them, and through the vnsauourines of the food that he hath eaten before.

The cure (according to the opinion of the oldest Farriers) is first to let him blood in the two greatest veines

veines vnder his tongue ; and then wash all the sore places with Vinegar and Salt : then get the horse new bread, which is not hot, and giue it him to eate, and the horse will doe well enough, Others vse with a hot Iron to burne the pimples on the head, and then wash them with Wine and Salt, or Ale and salt vntill they bleede, and they will soone heale. Other Farriers vse to take out his tongue, and to pricke the veines thereof in seuen or eight places, and likewise vnder his vpper lippe also, and let him bleede well : then rubbe euery sore place with salt very well: then the next day wash all the sore places with white Wine warme, or else with strong Vinegar, and rubbe it againe with salt : then for two or three dayes let the horse drinke no cold drinke, and hee will doe well.

Chap. 28.

Of the Canker in the Mouth.

A Canker is said of the ancient Farriers to bee nothing but the rawnes of the mouth and tongue, which is full of very sore blisters, from whence will runne a very hot and sharpe lye, which will fret and corrode, or rot the flesh, whereseuer it goeth. The signes are, the apparant sight of the sore, besides the forsaking of his meate, because he cannot swallow it downe, but lets it lye halfe chawed betweene his iawes : and sometimes when he hath chawed his meate, he will thrust it out of his mouth againe, and his breath will sauour very strongly, chiefely when he is fasting.

This

This diſeaſe proceedeth oftest from ſome vnnatu-rall heate comming from the ſtomacke, and ſome-times from the venome of filthy foode. The cure is (as the oldeſt Farriers inſtruct vs) to take of Allome halfe a pound, of hony a quarter of a pint, of collom-bine leaues, of Sage, of each a handfull; boyle all theſe together in three pints of running water vntill one pint be conſumed, and waſh all the ſore places therewith ſo as they may bleed; and do thus once e-uery day vntill it be whole. Other Farriers vſe firſt to caſt the horſe, and with a rolling pin to open his mouth; then with a crooked Iron wrapt about with tow or flaxe, to rake out all the ſtinking graſſe, or other meate that lyeth in his iawes, and vnder the roote of his tongue: then when you haue cleanſed it thus, you ſhall heate ſtrong wine Vinegar ſome-what warme, and then with the ſame Iron wrapt in tow, and dipt in the wine vinegar, you ſhall waſh all the ſore places till they bleed: then waſh all his tongue and his lippes with the ſame vinegar, and ſo let him riſe; and then feed him at leaſt ſeuen dayes with warme maſhes and hot graines; but in no wiſe with any hay, and he will ſoone be whole. Other Far-riers vſe to take of the iuyce of Daffadill roots ſeuen drammes, of the iuyce of hounds-tongue as much, of vinegar as much, and of Allome one ounce; mixe theſe well together, and waſh the canker therewith once a day vntill it be whole. Others vſe to take of ſauen, of bay ſalt and of rue, of each like quantity, and ſtampe them together with as much barrowes greaſe, and annoynt the ſore places therewith vntill the canker bee kild, which you may know by the white-

whiteneſſe, and then heale it vp onely with Allome water. Others vſe firſt to waſh the canker till it bleed with warme Vinegar, to take a good quantity of Allome beaten into very fine powder, and to mixe it with ſtrong Vinegar till it be as thicke as a ſalue; then to annoint all the ſore places therewith, and do thus twice or thrice a day vntill the canker bee whole. Now for mine owne part, the beſt cure that euer I found for this ſorrance, is to take of Ginger and of Allome, of each like quantity, made into very fine powder: then with ſtrong Vinegar to mix them together till they bee very thicke like a ſalue, then when you haue waſht the canker cleane, either with Allome water or with Vinegar, annoint it with this ſalue, and in twice or thrice dreſſing the canker will be whole.

Chap. 29.

Of heate in the mouth and lippes of a horſe.

THE vnnaturall and violent heat which aſcendeth vp from the ſtomacke into the mouth, doeth not alwayes breed a Canker, but ſometimes onely heateth and inflameth the mouth and lippes, making them onely ſwell and burne, ſo as the horſe can take no ioy in his foode, but through the griefe refuſeth his meate. The cure thereof is, firſt turne vp his vpper lippe, or that which is moſt ſweld, and with a lancet iagge it lightly, ſo that it may bleed; and then waſh both that, and all his mouth and tongue with vinegar and ſalt.

Chap. 30.

Of the Tongue being hurt with the Bitte, or otherwise.

IF the Tongue of a horse bee either hurt, cut, or galled, by any accident or mischance whatsoeuer, the best cure is (as the old Farriers suppose) to take of English hony, and of salt lard, of each like quantity, a little vnsleckt lime, and a little of the powder of pepper; boyle them on a soft fire, and stirre them well together vntill they be thicke like vnto an oyntment: then wash the wound with white wine warmed: after that annoynt the wound with the saide oyntment twice a day, and by no meanes let the horse weare any bitte vntill he be whole.

Other Farriers vse first to wash the sore with Allome water; and then to take the leaues of blacke bramble, and to choppe them together small with a little lard: that done, to bind it with a little clout, making it round like a ball: then hauing dipt the round end in hony, to rubbe the tongue therewith once a day vntill it be whole.

Chap. 31.

Of the Barbes or Pappes vnderneath a Horses Tongue.

THe Barbes are two little pappes which naturally doe grow vnder euery horses tongue whatsoeuer, in the neather Iawes; yet if at any time they shoote out, and grow into an extraordinary length,

or by the ouer-flow of humours become to be inflamed, then they are a Sorrance, and with the extremity of their paine, they hinder the horſe from feeding. The cure of them is, both according to the opinion of the ancient and late Farriers, abſolutely to clip them away with a paire of ſheares cloſe to the iaw; and then to waſh the ſore either with water and ſalt- or with ſalt Tartar and ſtrong vinegar mixt together, or elſe with vinegar and ſalt. Any of all which will heale them.

Chap. 32.

Of paine in a Horſes teeth, of Woolfes teeth, and Iaw teeth.

A Horſe may haue paine in his teeth through diuers occaſions, as partly by the deſcent of humours from the head downe vnto the teeth and gummes, which is very propper to cols and young horſes, and plainly to be ſeene by the rankeneſſe and ſwelling of the gummes, and alſo he may haue paine in his teeth, by hauing two extraordinary teeth, called the Woolfes teeth, which bee two little teeth growing in the vpper iawes, next vnto the great grinding teeth; which are ſo painefull to the horſe, that he cannot endure to chaw his meate; but is forced either to let it fall out of his mouth, or elſe to keepe it ſtill halfe chawed. Againe, a horſe will haue great paine in his teeth when his vpper iawe teeth bee ſo farre growne as they ouer-hang the neather iaw teeth; and therewith alſo bee ſo ſharpe; as in moouing his iawes they cut and raze the in-

sides of his cheekes, euen as they were razed with a knife. Lastly, a horse may haue great paine in his teeth, when either by corruption of blood, or some other naturall weakenesse, the horses teeth grow loose and sore in such manner that through the tendernesse thereof, hee is not able to chaw or grinde his foode. Now for the seuerall cures of these infirmities you shall vnderstand that first as touching the generall paine in a horses teeth, which doeth come by meanes of the distillation of humours, it is thought fit by the ancientest Farriers, first to rubbe all the outside of the horses gummes with fine chalke and strong vinegar well mixt together. Other Farriers vse after the haue so washed the gummes, to straw vpon them the powder of Pomegranate pilles, and to couer the temples of the head with a plaister of Pitch, Rosen, and Mastick molten together, as hath beene before declared. Now for the cure of the Woolfes teeth, or the iaw teeth (according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers) it is thus. First, cause the horses head to be tyed vp high to some post or rafter, and his mouth to be opened with a cord so wide that you may easily see euery part thereof: then take an instrument of Iron, made in all points like vnto a Carpenters Gouge, and with your left hand set the edge of the toole at the foote of the Woolfes teeth, on the outside of the iaw, turning the hollow side of the toole downeward, holding your hand stedily, so as the toole may not slip nor swarue from the aforesaide teeth: then, hauing a mallet in your right hand, strike vpon the head of the toole a good stroake, where-

wherewith you may looſen the tooth, and make it bend inward: then ſtraining the midſt of your toole vpon the horſes nether iaw, wrinch the tooth outward with the inſide or hollow ſide of the toole, and thruſt it cleane out of his head: which done, ſerue the other Woolfes tooth on the other ſide in like manner, and then fill vp the empty holes with ſalt finely brayed. Other Farriers vſe (and I haue in mine experience found it the better practiſe) onely when the horſe is either tyed vp or caſt, and his mouth opened, to take a very ſharp file, & to file the woolfes teeth ſo ſmooth as is poſſible, and then waſh his mouth with a little allome water. Now if the vpper iaw teeth ouer-hang the nether iaw teeth, and ſo cut the inſide of the mouth as is aforeſaid, then you ſhall take your former toole or gouge, and with your mallet ſtrike and pare all thoſe teeth ſhorter by little and little degrees, running alongſt them euen from the firſt vnto the laſt, turning the hollow ſide of your toole towards the teeth, by which meanes you ſhall not cut the inſides of the horſes cheekes; then with your file, file them all ſmooth without any raggednesſe, and then waſh the horſes mouth with vinegar and ſalt. Laſtly, if the paine doe proceed from the looſeneſſe of his teeth, then the cure is, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, firſt to caſt the horſe, and pricke all his gummes ouer with a lancet, making them bleed well, then rubbe them all ouer with ſage and ſalt, and it will faſten them againe. Others vſe to let the horſe blood in the veine vnder his taile next the rumpe, and then to rubbe all his gums with Sage, and to giue him in his prouender,

the tender croppes of blacke bryers; or else wash all his mouth with hony, sage, and salt beaten together; and by no meanes let the horse eate any moist meat: for cold, moist, and marrish feeding in the winter, onely breedeth this disease of looseneſſe in the teeth; and it is of all other, most proper to the Sorrell horses.

Chap. 33.

Of diseases in the Necke and Withers, and first of the Cricke in the Necke.

THe Cricke in the Necke of a horse, is when hee cannot turne his necke any way, but holds it still right forth, in so much that he cannot bow downe his head to take vp his meate from the ground, but with exceeding great paine; and surely it is a kind of convultion of sinewes which proceedeth from cold causes, of which wee haue spoken very sufficiently before: it also proceedeth sometimes from ouerheauy burthens that be laid vpon a horses shoulders; or by ouer-much drying vp of the sinewes of the necke. The cure thereof, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, first to thrust a sharpe hot Iron through the flesh of the necke in fiue seuerall places, euery one distant from the other three inches, (but in any case beware of touching any sinew) then rowell all the aforesaid places either with horse haire, flax or hempe, for the space of fifteene dayes, and annoynt the rowels with hogs grease, and the necke will soone be restored. Others vse if the cricke causeth the horse to hold his head straight forward, which

which sheweth that both sides are equally perplexed, to take a hot drawing Iron, and draw the horse from the roote of the eare, on both sides the necke, through the midst of the same, euen downe the brest, a straw deepe, so as both ends may meet on the brest: then make a hole through the skin of the fore head, hard vnder the foretoppe, and thrust in a corner vpward betwixt the skinne and the flesh, a handfull deepe: then either put in a goose feather doubled in the midst, and annointed with hogs grease: or else a rowell of either horne or leather with a hole in the midsts: any of which will keepe the hole open, to the intent the matter may issue forth: and this you shall keepe open the space of ten dayes; but euery day during that time, the hole must be cleansed once, and the feather or rowell also cleansed, and fresh annoynted, and put in againe; and once a day let him stand vpon the bit an houre or two, or else bee ridden abroad two or three miles, by such an one as will beare the horses head, and make him bring it in; but if the cricke bee such that it maketh the horse to hold his head awry vpon the one side, which sheweth that but one side of the necke is troubled, then you shall not draw the horse with an hot Iron, on both the sides of the necke, but onely on the contrary side, as thus: If hee bend his head towards the right side, then to draw him, as is aforesaide, onely on the left side, and to vse the rest of the cure as is abouesaide, and if necessity doe require, you may splent the horses necke also straight strong with splents of wood. I haue cured this cricke in the necke onely by bathing the hor-

ſes necke in the Oyle of *Peeter* very hot, and then rolling it all vp in wet hay, or rotten litter, and keeping the horſe exceeding warme, without vſing any burning, wounding, or other violence.

Chap. 34.

Of wennes in the necke.

A Wenne is a certaine bunch or kirnell vpon the skinne, like a tumor or ſwelling; the inſide whereof is ſometimes hard like a griſtle, and ſpongious like a skinne full of ſoft warts; and ſometimes yellow like vnto ruſted Bakon, with ſome white graines among. Now of Wennes ſome are great and ſome be ſmall, alſo ſome are very painefull, and ſome not painefull at all. They proceede, as ſome imagine, of naughty, groſſe, and flegmatick humors, binding together in ſome ſicke part of the body. And others ſay they proceed from taking of cold, or from drinking of waters that bee moſt extreame cold; but I ſay, that al-be-it they may proceed from theſe cauſes, yet moſt generally they proceed from ſome pinching, bruiſing, bi ing, ripping, or galling, either of girthes, ha'ter, coller, or any other thing whatſoeuer. The cure thereof is this; take of Mallowes, Sage, and red Nettles, of each one handfull; boyle them in running water, and put thereunto a little butter and hony; and when the hearbes be ſoft, take them out, and all to bruiſe them, and put thereunto of oyle de bay two ounces, and of hogs greaſe two ounces, and warme them toget er ouer the fire, mixing them well together; that done, plaiſter it vpon

vpon a peece of leather, so big as the wenne; and lay it to so hot as the horse can endure it, renewing it euery day in such sort the space of eight dayes; and if you perceiue it will come to no head, then launce it from the midst of the wenne downeward, so deepe that the matter in the bottome may bee discouered and let out: which done, heale it vp with this salue: Take of Turpentine a quarterne, and wash it nine times in faire water, then put thereunto the yolke of an Egge, and a little English Saffron beaten into powder, and make a taint or rolle of flaxe, and dip it in that oyntment, and lay it to the sore, renewing the same euery day once vntill the Wenne be cured. Others vse in this case, with a hotte Iron to burne and feare away all the superfluous flesh, and then to heale vp the sore either with the oyntment last rehearsed, or else with the powder of Hony and Lime mixt together; and this manner of cure is by much the speedier.

Chap. 35.

Of swelling in the necke after blood-letting.

THe swelling of a horses necke after blood letting may come through diuers occasions, as namely by striking through the Veine, so as some of the blood being gotten betwixt the flesh and the veine, it there corrodeth and turneth to an Impostume; or else by striking the veine with a rusty fleame, whereby the veine rankleth; or by some cold wind striking suddenly into the hole: or lastly, by suffering the horse too soone to thrust downe his head, and graze

or feede, whereby humours reſorting to that place, breeds a great impoſtumation. The cure is, according to the opinion of ſome Farriers, to take Hemlocke and ſtampe it, and then to mingle it with ſheepes dung, and Vinegar, and ſo making a plaiſter thereof, to lay it to the ſwelling, renewing it once a day vntill it bee whole. Other Farriers vſe, firſt to annoynt the place with the Oyle of Camomill warmed, and then to lay vpon it a little hay wet in cold water, and bind it about with a cloath, renewing it euery day the ſpace of a weeke, to ſee whether it will grow to a head, or elſe vaniſh away: if it grow to a head, you may then launce it, and thruſt out the matter: then heale it vp by tainting it with flaxe dipt in Turpentine and hogges greaſe molten together, dreſſing it ſo once a day vntill it be whole.

Chap. 36.

How to ſtanch Blood.

IF your horſe, either by wound or other accident, or by the ignorance of any vnskilfull Farrier that letteth him blood when the ſigne is in that place, bleed ſo exceedingly that hee will not bee ſtanched, you ſhall then according to the opinion of the old Farriers, lay vnto the wound a little new horſe dung, tempered with Chalke and ſtrong Vinegar, and not to remoue it from thence the ſpace of three dayes; or elſe to lay vnto it burnt ſilke, burnt felt, or burnt cloath, any of which will ſtanch blood. Others vſe to powre into the wound the iuyce of Coriander,

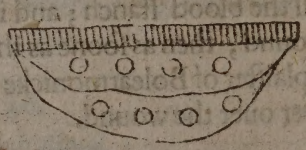
Coriander, or elſe to let the horſe chew in his mouth the leaues of periwinkle. Others vſe to take of bruiſed Nettles, and lay them to the wound: or elſe wilde Tanſey bruiſed, or hot hogs dung. Others vſe to take bruiſed ſage, and lay it to the wound: or elſe the coame about the Smiths Forge: or elſe a ſodde of earth, or bruiſed Hyſſope; or the ſoft crops of hawthrone bruiſed: or elſe to take the quantity of two ounces of the horſes blood, and boyle it till it come to a powder, and then put that powder into the wound; but when all theſe faile, as in ſome extremities I haue found them doe, then for your onely refuge, you ſhall take the ſoft downe either of a Hares skin, or of a Conies skin, and ſtop the wound well therewith, holding it hard to with your hand till the blood ſtanch; and if it be any grieuous ſore wound, then as ſoone as the blood is ſtayed, ſpread a plaiſter of Bolearmonicke and vinegar mixt together ouer the wound.

Chap. 37.

Of the falling of the Creſt.

THE falling of the horſes Creſt, is when the vpper part of a horſes necke which is called the Creſt, leaneth either to the one or the other ſide, and will not ſtand vpright as it ought to doe. It proceedeth moſt commonly from pouerty and hard keeping, and eſpecially when a fat horſe falleth away ſuddenly vpon any inward ſickeneſſe. The cure (according to the oldeſt Farriers) is firſt to draw his Creſt well a full ſtrawe bredth deepe on the contrary

contrary ſide with a hot Iron, the edge of which Iron would be halfe an inch broad, and make both your beginning and ending ſomewhat beyond the fall, ſo as the firſt draught may goe all the way hard vpon the edge of the maine, cloſe by the rootes of the ſame, bearing your hand right downeward into the necke-ward: then anſwere that with another draught beneath, and ſo farre diſtant from the firſt as the fall is broad, compaſſing, as it were, all the fall; but ſtill on the contrary ſide, and betwixt thoſe two draughts, right in the midſt, draw a third draught: then with an Iron button of almoſt an inch about, burne at each end a hole; & alſo in the ſpaces betwixt the draughts, make diuers holes diſtant three fingers one from another, as this figure doth plainely ſhew you. That done, to kill the fire, annoynt it euery day once with freſh butter for a week or more: then take of mallowes, and of ſage,



of each one handfull; boyle them well in running water, and waſh the burning away till it be raw fleſh, and then dry it vp with the powder of hony & lime. Other Fatriers vſe for this infirmity, firſt to caſt the horſe vpon ſome ſoft dunghill, or other eaſie place, & with a long knife to cut away the fleſh on the hanging or vnder ſide of the creſt, euen frō the fore-end thereof to the hinder-end, ſixe inches broad, and two inches thicke, or ſomewhat more in the middle thereof where it is thickeſt: then groping the creſt with your hands, to pare the thickeſt part thereof, till it come all to one thinneſſe, then holding the horſe ſtill faſt

fast bound, to couer all the place with great handfuls of Swines dung prepared for the purpose, and held to the sore place an houre together, till the blood bee stanched: then let the horse arise, and leade him into the Stable, tying him in such sort, that he may neither rubbe his necke nor lye downe: then the next morning take good store of burnt Allome beaten to powder, and strew it all ouer the sore place, and so let him stand for two dayes after without any stirring, least the wound should bleed againe; then at the end of these two dayes you shall bathe the sore gently with a fine linnen cloath, dipt in warme Vrine; and then drying the sore, againe throw more burnt allome vpon it, and after annoint all about the out side of the edges of the sore with *Vnguentum Album Camphyratum*, more then an inch broad: thus you shall dresse him euery day once on that side of the crest which did fall: then for the contrary side you shall draw his maine thereon, and plat it in many plats: which done, you shall to those plats with thongs of leather, fasten a cudgell of a foote and a halfe long; then to the midst of that cudgell you shall hang a peece of lead with a hole in it, of such waight as will poize the crest vp euen, and hold it in his right place: then shall you draw his crest on that side the waight hangs with a hot drawing Iron, euen from the toppe of the crest, downe to the point of the shoulder, making diuers stroakes one an inch and an halfe from another: then shall you lay vpon the burnt places, a plaister of pitch, Tarre, and Rosen, molten together, and so let the weight hang till all the sore places bee healed, and

there-

there is no queſtion but the creſt will ſtand both vpright and ſtrongly.

Chap. 38.

Of Mangineſſe in the Maine.

THE Mangineſſe which is in the Maine of a horſe, and maketh him ſhed his haire, proceedeth either from the rankeneſſe of blood, pouerty or lowſineſſe; or elſe of rubbing where a mangie horſe hath rubbed, or elſe of fretting duſt lying in the Maine for want of good dreſſing. The ſignes are, the apparant rubbing and itching of the horſe about the maine and necke, and the ſcabbes fretting both the fleſh and skinne, beſides the ſhedding and falling away of the haire. The cure (according to the opinion of ſome of our old Farriers) is, firſt let him blood on the necke-veine, and cut away all the haire from the ſcabbes; then with a hot Iron as bigge as a mans finger, ſeare all the ſore place euen from the one end to the other: then annoynt all the place you ſo burnt with blacke ſope, and now and then waſh it with ſtrong lee and blacke ſope mixt together. Other Farriers for this mangineſſe onely take of freſh greaſe one pound, of quickſiluer halfe an ounce, of Brimſtone one ounce, of Rape Oyle halfe a pint, mingle them together, and ſtirre them continually in a pot with a ſlice, vntill the Quickſiluer bee ſo wrought with the reſt, as you ſhall perceiue no Quickſiluer therein: that done, take a blunt knife, or an old horſe-combe, and ſcratch all the mangy places therewith vntill it bee raw and bloody, and then annoint

annoint it with this oyntment in the Sun-shine, if it may be, to the intent the ointment may sinke in, or else hold before it either a hot fire pan, or a hot barre of Iron, to make the oyntment melt into the flesh, and if you see that within three dayes after thus once annointing him he leaue not rubbing, then marke in what place he rubbeth, and dresse that place againe, and questionlesse it will serue.

Chap. 39.

Of the shedding of the haire in the Maine.

HAire, for the most part, sheddeth or falleth from the maine of a horse by reason of certaine little wormes which eate and fret the rootes of the haire a-sunder. The cure whereof is, first to annoint the maine and crest with blacke sope, and then to make a strong lye either of running water and Ashe ashes, or else of Vrine and Ashe ashes, and with that to wash the maine all ouer, and it will helpe him.

Chap. 40.

Of paine & griefe in a horses withers.

BOth to a horses withers, and also to his backe, do happen many infirmities and sorrances, some proceeding from inward causes, as of the corruption of humours, and sometime of outward causes, as through the galling, pinching, and wringing of some naughty saddle, or some heauy burthen layd on the horses backe, or such like; and of these griefes some bee small, and some bee great: the small are onely

onely ſuperficiall bliſters, ſwellings, light galles, or bruiſings, and are eaſily cured; but the great are thoſe which pierce to the very bone, and bee moſt dangerous, eſpecially if they be nigh to the backe bone. Then to ſpeake firſt of the ſmaller gallings, whenſoeuer you ſhall ſee any ſwellings to ariſe, either about your horſes Withers, or any other part of his backe, the cure is (according to the opinion of ſome of the old Farriers) firſt if the place bee much ſwolne and feſtered, then to pierce it with a ſharpe hot Iron in many parts on both ſides of the necke, and then put into the ſame, tents of linnen cloath, dipt in warme ſallet Oyle; and then after to dry and heale it vp with the powder of hony and lime mixt together.

Others vſe to take Butter and Salt, and to boyle them together vntill they be blacke, then to powre it hot on the ſwelling; and then to take a flake of warme horſe-dung, and lay it on the ſore backe vntill it be whole, dreſſing it once a day.

Others (eſpecially the beſt of the auncient Farriers) vſe as ſoone as they ſee any ſwelling to ariſe, to binde vnto it a little hot horſe-dung, to ſee if that will aſſwage it; which if it will not, then to pricke it round about the ſwelling with a fleame, knife, or lancet, yet not too deepe, but ſo as it may pierce the skin, and make the blood iſſue forth: that done, take of Mallowes, or Smallage, two or three handfuls, and boyle them in running water vntill they be ſo ſoft as pappe: then ſtraine the water ſoftly from it, and bruiſe the hearbes in a traine diſh, putting thereunto a little hogs greaſe, or elſe Sallet Oyle, or

Sheepes

Sheepes ſuet, or any other freſh greaſe; boyle them and ſtirre them together, not frying them hard, but ſo as they be ſoft and ſupple; and then with a clout lay it warme vpon the ſore, renewing it euery day once vntill the ſwelling be gone; for it will either driue it away or bring it vnto a head, which lightly chanceth not in theſe ſmall ſwellings, except ſome griſtle or bone be periſhed. Others of the ancient Farriers vſe when they ſee any ſwelling to ariſe about a horſes backe, firſt to ſhaue the place with a Razor, and then to lay thereunto this plaiſter; Take a little Wheate flowre, and the white of an Egge beaten together, and ſpread it on a linnen clout, which being laid vnto the ſwelling two or three dayes and not remoued, will bring it to a head; and when you come to take it off, pull it away ſo ſoftly as you can poſſibly; and where as you ſee the corruption gathered together, then in the loweſt place thereof, pierce it vpward with a ſharpe Iron ſomewhat hot, that the corruption may come out, and annoint the ſore place euery day once with freſh butter or hogges greaſe vntill it be whole. Others of our latter Farriers vſe when they ſee any ſwelling, onely to lay wet hay vnto it: for that will either driue it away, or bring it vnto a head; and then when it is broken, you ſhall lay vpon it a plaiſter of Wine lees, renewing it as often as it growes dry; and if your lees bee too thin, you may thicken them with wheat flower: or if you like not this medicine, then you may make a plaiſter of thicke barme, as great as the ſore, and renew it once a day vntill the ſwelling be aſſwaged; but if you ſee that any corruption be knit together,

then you shall launce it in the nethermost part, and let out the matter: then wash the sore either with vrine, Ale, or Beere, made scalding hot; then dry vp all the moysture from the sore, either with a linnen cloath, or with a spunge: then couer all the sore ouer with burnt Allome beaten to powder: and thus dresse the horse once a day vntill the flesh be growne vp so high as you would haue it; then shall you dresse the sore but once in two or three dayes. But if you see it skinneth but slowly, then may you annoynt the edge of the sore all about after it hath beene washed as aforesaide, with *Vnguentum Album*, for that will make the skin to come fast; but if you doe perceiue that by dressing it too seldome, there doth begin any proud flesh to grow, then shall you take a dram of Mercury, and mingle it with an ounce of *Vnguentum Album*, and annoynt all the sore place therewith once in two dayes; this will correct the proud flesh, and cause it to skin and heale suddenly. Others vse for the abating of these swellings to boyle mallowes in the grounds of Ale, and to clap it hot to the swelling: and if the swelling doe breake, wash it with pisse, and powre hot molten butter vpon it. Others vse to shaue away the haire, and then to lay very hot vnto it, a handfull of Leekes stampt and mixt with Boares grease, or else to take a turfe of earth burnt red, and layd to as hot as the horse can suffer it. Other Farriers vse to take nettles beaten to peeces, and mixt with hot vrine, and so lay it on hot, and then set on the saddle: and then if after two or three dayes dressing the swelling breake, then looke if there be any dead flesh within the sore, and either eate or cut it

it out: then take a pound of fresh grease, and a pound of sallet oyle, three ounces of white Waxe, one ounce of turpentine, and three drams of verdigrease; melt all these together, and taint the sore therewith till it be whole: for this will both eate away the ill flesh, and incarnate good. Others take greene coleworts, and stampe them with swines grease, and then lay it plaister-wise on the sore, and it will asswage it, especially if you ride the horse a little to make the medicine enter in. Now if there be no great swelling, but only the skin chafed off, then you shall wash the place with Water and Salt, or else with warme Wine, and sprinkle vpon it the powder of hony and Lime; or else the powder of Myrre, or the powder of burnt silke, or felt, or c'oath, or of any old poast. Other Farriers vse when onely the skinne is gald off, to take a spoonfull of thicke creame, and to put as much chimney soote vnto it as will make it thicke like an oyntment, and then to lay it vpon the sore, and questionlesse it will heale it presently.

Chap. 41.

Of any gald backe, or Withers, how great soeuer the swelling or inflammation be.

IF the swelling, pince, wringing or gall, either vpon the withers, or any part of the backe of a horse be extraordinary great and much inflamed, so that there is no apparant hope that it can bee got away without much Apostumation, then the cure, according to the opinion of the ancientest Farriers, is, to take Barme, and mixe it with so much soote

of a chimney, and make it so thicke therewith, that it shall seeme like Tarre: and with that make a plaister, and lay it to the sore place, renewing it twice a day, and it will both draw and heale it. Others vse to take a handfull of bay salt, a handfull of great and small Oate-meale, and put a quantity of old Stale thereto, and stirre them all together, and temper it like pappe or paste, and then make round bals thereof, then throw them into a fire, and make them red hot, then take them forth and beat them to fine powder, and then strow of that powder all ouer the sore, so oft as you shall see any part thereof bare, and it will heale it. Other Farriers vse if they see the swelling to be any thing great, first to draw round about the swelling with a hot Iron, and then crosse him with the same Iron, in manner of this figure: then take a round hot Iron, hauing a sharpe point, and thrust it into the swelling place

on each side vpward towards the point of the withers, or toppe of the backe, to the intent that the matter may issue downewards at both the holes; that done, taint both the holes first with a taint dipt in hogges grease to kill the fire, and also annoynt all the burnt places therewith, continuing so to doe vntill the swelling be asswaged, renewing the taint euery day once vntill the fiery matter bee fallen away: then tent him againe with washed Turpentine, mingled with yolkes of Egges and Saffron, renuing the tent euery day once vntill it be whole. But if for all this the swelling do not goe away, then it is a signe of some inward Impostumation, and then it shall

ſhall be good that you launce it, and let out the corruption: then take of Hony halfe a pint, of verdigreaſe two ounces, beaten to powder, and mix it together with the hony; then boyle them in a pot vntill they looke red, then being luke-warme, make either a tent or a plaiſter, according as the wound ſhall require, renewing the ſame euery day once vntill it be whole. But the ſore may bee ſo vehement, that for want of looking to in time, if it be on the withers, it will pierce downwards betwixt both the ſhoulders, euen into the body, which is moſt dangerous and mortall; therefore whenſoeuer you ſhall feare any ſuch hollowneſſe, you ſhall tent the hole with the ſalue laſt mentioned, and thruſt after it a good peece of dry ſpunge, as well to keepe the hole open, as alſo to ſucke out the corruption, and this you ſhall renew once a day vntill the ſore be whole. Others of our latter Farriers vſe to take butter, vinegar, and bay ſalt, and melting them together lay it to the ſore warme vntill it breake, then ſtrow vpon it either ſoot or the powder of a clay wall; but if it be much feſtered, then take a pottle of veriuice, two peniworth of greene copporas, and boyle it to a pint and an halfe; then waſh, and ſearch the hollowneſſe therewith, then fill the hole with red lead, and ſo let it remaine three dayes vntouched; then waſh it with the ſame water againe, and fill the hole againe with redde lead, and ſo euery other day waſh it with that water, and lay redde lead thereon, and it will heale the ſoreſt backe whatſoeuer. Now all theſe medicines already rehearſed are ſufficient enough for the healing of any gald backe whatſoeuer, yet foraſmuch

as diuers Farriers hold diuers opinions, and thinke what they know to be onely best approued, and in as much as you shall not be ignorant of any mans skill, which beareth any ground of reason in it, I will repeat you a catalogue of other medicines which assuredly are all good in their kindes, and you may vse them as occasion shall bee administred. First then know, that the powder of Brier leaues will dry and heale vp any gald backe: also Rie flower, the white of an egge, hony, barley straw burnt, and soote will dry vp and heale a sore backe: the powder of hony and vnsleckt lime will skin any gall; the powder of wilde Cowcumbers dried in an ouen, will heale any gall, prouided the sore be first washt with Vinegar. Onions boyld in water, and laid hot to a swolne horses backe, will asswage the swelling, and the yelke of an egge, salt, and vinegar beaten together, will heale it when it is broken; prouided that you wash the soare first with Ale, wherein Rosmary hath beene sod. The soote or grime of a brasse potte, the powder of the bone of a crabfish, or the powder of Oyster-shels, any of these will dry and skin a gald backe. Lastly (and besides it, a man needeth no more medicines) for this purpose, take hay and boyle it in strong Vrine, and lay it to the swelled place, and it will either asswage it, or bring it to a head; then launce it, and let out the matter, then stop the hole with Rozen, Wax, and fresh grease molten together; but if you find any dead flesh to grow within the soare, then eate it out either with verdigrease beaten to powder, and strowed thereon, or else with *Mercury calcinate*, called of some *Precipitate*, being likewise strowed on the

proud

proud flesh; and when the proud flesh is gone, you may dry vp the sore, onely with the power of rozen, and nothing else. See further for this disease in the new additions for the Fistula.

Chap. 42.

Of the Canker in the Withers of a horse.

IF a horse after he hath beene violently wrong vpon the withers, be suffered to goe vnlooked to, and that the sore breaketh vpwards through its owne violence, yet the great substance of the matter or corruption descending and rotting still downeward, it cannot chuse but breed to a rankerous and vile vlcer, as dangerous as is any Fistula, which you shall know by these signes; first the matter that issueth from the sore, will be a sharpe, hot, and watrish lye, fretting the haire away where it runneth downe; and about the hole of the sore will be a kinde of spongious, proud, dead flesh, which stoppeth the passage of the grosser matter. Now the cure of this cankerous sore is, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, to take a razor, and cut open the hole of the vlcer, so that you may see into the hollownesse; then cut out all the dead flesh till you come to the quick, then take a quart of old stale Vrine, and put thereto a handfull of salt: then boyle it well on the fire; then hauing cleansed the sore either with a cloath, or a wispe of hay, wash it well with the liquor: then take the yolkes of foure egges, and a peny-worth of verdigrease, and spoonefull of flower, and make a plaister thereof, and lay it to the sore, dressing him

in this sort once a day vntill he be whole. Others of our latter Farriers vse to take of the strongest Beere a pint, put into it a quarter of a pound of Allome, and halfe a handfull of Sage, seeth it to the one halfe, then take out the sage leaues, and with the rest dresse the horse once a day, and it will heale any rankerous sore in that part whatsoeuer.

Chap. 43.

Of the Stickfast, Hornes, or hard bones growing vnder the Saddle.

THese stickfasts or hornes that grow vpon a horses skinne vnder the saddle, is a certaine dead skin like a hard peece of leather, growing fast into the flesh; it commeth of some old bruise, which not impostumating, the skin falleth dead, and hard fast to the flesh.

The cure is, to take either a sharpe crooked instrument made for the purpose, or else a long naile with the point turned inwards, and catching hold on the edge of the dead skin, or horne, which will chappe or rise from the sound skin, and with a sharpe knife cut away all the dead hard skinne from the sound flesh: and if when it is cut out, the hollownesse bee somewhat deepe, then you shall heale it vp by powring hot molten butter into it euening and morning; then when the flesh is made euen, drye and skinne it either with the powder of Hony and Lime, or with Soote and Creame mixt together. Others vse first to annoynt the stickfast or hard skinne with fresh butter or hogges grease, vntill it be mollified and

and made soft, as you may either cut them, or pull them away, and then wash the wound either with mans vrine, or with white Wine, and then dry it vp with the powder of Oyster shelles, or of Bolearmonicke.

Chap. 44.

Of wennes or knobs growing about the saddle skirts.

THe Wennes or knobs which grow about the saddle skirts, doe most commonly grow betwixt two ribs, and doe euer proceede of old bruises. And the cure is, first to mollifie them by annoynting them twice or thrice a day with hogges grease, for more then a weeke together, and sometimes to bathe them with hot Wine Lees; but if in that space it will come to no head, then launce it from the middle downeward, and taint it with washed Turpentine, yolkes of egges, and saffron mingled as well together as is before shewed, renuing the taint euery day once, vntill the sore be sufficiently healed.

Chap. 45.

Of the Nauell-gale.

THe Nauel-gall is when a horse at any time is bruised on the top of the chine of the backe, behiud the saddle, right against the Nauell, whence it taketh the name; it commeth either by splitting of the saddle behind, or for lacke of stuffing, or by meanes of the crupper buckle sitting downe in that place, or through some hard weight or knobs lying directly behind

behind the saddle: of all bruisings on the backe, it is the most vile and dangerous, and you shall perceiue it by the puffed vp and spungie flesh looking like old rotten lights about the mouth of the soare. The cure thereof is, according to some of the ancient Farriers, first to cut away all the dead or prowd flesh euen to the bone, then burne a hole foure inches lower then the nauill gall, and put a rowell of hose haire through it: then take the powder of Oyster-shels, or of an old shooe sole burnt, and strow it on the sore, and euer as it waketh moist, put on more powder. Others for the nauell gall take the white of an egge, wheate flowre, hony, mustard, and sope, of each like quantity, and mixing them together, make a plaister thereof; and after the dead flesh is taken out, and the sore washt with Ale, Butter, and Vrine, then lay on the plaister: and if the prowd flesh begin to grow againe, then the powder of an old burnt shooe, or nerue oyle, or verdigrease, will kill it, and the powder of Oyster-shels will skin it. Other of the ancient Farriers vse, after they haue cut out all the rotten and dead flesh, to take the white of an egge, and salt beaten together, and lay that plaister-wise to the sore vpon a little Tow, renewing it once a day the space of two dayes, then take of hony a quarterne of a pint, and of verdigrease on ounce beaten into powder, and boyle them together in a pot, stirring it still vntill it looke red, and being luke warme, make a playster with tow, and clap it to the wound washing and cleansing well the wound first with a little warme vinegar or white wine, continuing so to do once a day vntill it begin to heale and to skinne;

then

then drye it vp by ſprinkling thereon this powder following: Take of hony a quarterne, and as much of ſleckt lime as will thicken the hony, and make it like a paſte, and in a fire-panne ouer the fire, ſtirre it ſtill vntill it be hard baked, ſo as it may be beaten into powder; but euer before you throw on the powder, waſh the wound firſt with warme Vinegar, continuing ſo to do vntill it be perfectly skinned. Others vſe to heale this gall by laying on the ſore, a plaiſter of chimney ſoote and barme mixt together, or elſe mixe nettle ſeedes and ſallet oyle together, and annoynt the ſore therewith. Others vſe onely to waſh the ſore with warme water, and then annoynt the place with freſh greaſe and ſalt mixt together; or elſe to take of betony, powder of brimſton, *Ellibor*, pitch, and old greaſe, of each like quantity, & ſtampe them together, and when you haue waſhed the ſoare with chamberlie, then annoynt it with this oyntment vntill it be whole. See alſo for this diſeaſe in the new Additions for the Fiſtula.

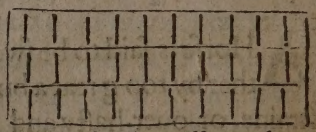
Chap. 46.

Of the ſwaying of the backe.

A Horſe is ſaid to be ſwayed in the backe, when either by too great a burthen, or by ſome ſlippe, ſtraine, or ouer-haſty and ſtraight turning, hee hath taken an extreame wrinch in the lower part of his backe below his ſhort ribbes, and directly betweene his fillets: the ſignes whereof are a continuall reeling and rowling of the horſes hinder parts in his going,

and

and alſo he will folter many times, and ſway ſometimes backewards, and ſometimes ſidelong, and bee ready to fall euen to the ground; beſides, the horſe being laid, will with great difficulty riſe vp againe. The cure, according to the opinion of the old *Italian* Farriers, is, to take of the fat of the fruite of the pine tree, two ounces, of *Olibanum* three ounces, or Rozen foure ounces, of Pitch foure ounces, of Bole-armonicke one ounce, and of *Sanguis Draconis* halfe an ounce; incorporate all theſe well together, and lay it plaiſter-wiſe all ouer the reignes of the horſes backe, not taking it by any meanes away till it fall off. Others of our owne Farriers vſe firſt to couer the horſes backe with a ſheeps skin, comming hot from the ſheepes backe, laying the fleſhly ſide next to his backe, and then lay a warme houſſing cloth vpon the ſame, to keepe his backe as hot as may be, and ſo let it continue vntill it begin to ſmell; then take the old skin away, and apply a new vnto it, continuing ſo to doe the ſpace of three weekes, and if hee amend not with this, then draw his backe with a hot Iron, right out on both ſides of the ridge of his backe, from the pitch of the buttocke, vnto a handfull within the ſaddle: and then againe ouer-thwart, according to this figure, and let euery line be an inch one from another; neither let the ſtroke be deepe, & burned no more then that euery one may looke yellow; then lay vpon the burning this charge or plaiſter: Take of Pitch one pound, of Rozen halfe a pound, of Bole-armonicke halfe a pound made into powder, & halfe



a pint of Tarre, and boyle all these together in a pot, and stirre it vntill euery thing be molten & throughly mingled together: then being luke-warme, daube all the burning therewith very thicke, and thereupon clap as many flockes of the horses colour as you can make to abide on, and remoue it not before it fall away of it selfe; and if it be in Summer you may turne the horse to grasse.

Chap. 47.
Of speciall weakenesse in the backe.

According to the opinion of our oldest Farriers (though my selfe haue taken little notice of the infirmitie) there is another kind of weaknesse belonging to a horses backe, which they call the fretting or biting of the reines, which doth proceed from aboundance of humours resorting to that place, whereby all the hinder parts of the horse doe loose their feeling and strength, and the horse falleth downe to the ground; yea, and such humours many times resorting to the heart, doe suffocate the same, and in two or three houres doe cause the horse to dye. The cure, according to their opinion, is first to let the horse blood aboundantly in the necke veine, and to draw his backe with a hot Iron, in such sort as is declared in the last Chapter, and then to make him swim a pretty while in some riuer; then rowell him vpon the haunches neere vnto the huckle-bones, and then to annoynt the sore place with hoarges grease, and three leaued grasse stamped together vntill he be whole.

Chap.

Chap. 48.
Of the ſwelling of the Coddes, or Stones.

THIS kinde of ſwelling or inflammation of the cods commeth either by ſome wound receiued, or by the ſtinging, or elſe biting of ſome venemous beaſt, or elſe by ſome great ſtraine, either in running or leaping, or by the biting of one horſe with an other. The cure is, according to the opinion of the moſt ancient *Italian* Farriers, firſt to bathe the cod with water, wherein hath beene ſodden the rootes of wilde Cowcumbers and Salt, and then to annoynt it with an oyntment made of oyle, Goats greaſe, and the white of an Egge; or elſe to bathe the codde in warme water, *Nitrum*, and Vinegar mingled together, and alſo to bee annoynted with an oyntment made of Chalke, or of Potters earth, Oxe dung, Comin, water and vinegar mingled together; or elſe to be annoynted with the iuyce of the hearbe called Nightſhade, or with the iuyce of Hemlocke, which growes on dunghils; and if neede require, to let him blood on the flanke veines. But our latter Farriers, vvho hold that this diſeaſe commeth ofteſt after ſome ſickneſſe, or ſurfeit with cold, being a ſigne of amendment from that ſickeneſſe, doe cure it in this ſort; take of beane flowre, wheate meale, Comen, and Hogges greaſe, of each like quantity, and making a plaiſter thereof, ſpreade it all ouer the horſes cods and ſtones. Others boyle Groundſell in Wine and vinegar, and ſo bathe the horſes cods therewith; or elſe take a quart of good Ale-wort, and ſet it on the fire with the crummes of brown bread ſtrongly leauened,

leauened, and better then a handfull of Comen made in powder; then with beane flower make a plaister of them all, and apply it to the griefe as hot as it can be suffered; or if this helpe not, take cowes dung, and seeth it in milke, and lay it vpon the swelling as hot as may be, and it will asswage it. But if this inflammation proceed from rankneſſe of ſeede, which you ſhall perceiue by the moſt ſlimineſſe of his yard, then you ſhall firſt make him couer a Mare, then keepe him without prouender, and let him blood aboue the great veine, which is betweene his lippes, and lay thereto hard Egges, beaten in his owne dung, and make a plaiſter of the ſame and lay it to his coddes, and once a day waſh his coddes with cold water. Others vſe to let the horſe blood in his flanke veines, and then take of Oyle of Roſes, and of Vinegar, of each halfe a pint, of Bolearmonicke halfe a quarterne beaten to powder; mixe them together in a cruſe, and being luke-warme annoynt the coddes therewith, with two or three feathers bound together; and the next day ride him into the water, ſo as his coddes may bee within the water, giuing him a turne or two therein, and ſo returne faire and ſoftly home vnto the ſtable; and when the horſe is drye, annoynt him againe as before, and doe thus euery day vntill the horſe bee whole. Now there bee other Farriers, which hold that this diſeaſe may come by meanes of euill humours and corrupt blood, which reſort vnto the cods, and then the cure is to couer all the coddes ouer with a charge made of *Bolearmonicke* and vinegar wrought together, renewing it euery day once vntill the

ſwelling

ſwelling go away,or that it breake of it ſelfe,and if it breake,then to taint it with *Mel Roſatum*, and make him a breech of canuas to keepe it in, renuing the tent euery day once vntill it be whole.

Chap. 49.

Of Incording,or Burſting,or the rupture in horſes.

THis rupture,or as our old Farriers call it,this incording or burſtineſſe in horſes, is when the rim or thin filme which holdeth the guts vp in a horſes body is broken,ſo that the guts falleth downe either into the cods of the horſe, or into the horſes flanke, as I haue ſeene diuers: now this burſtneſſe commeth either by ſome ſtripe or blow of another horſe, or elſe by ſome ſtraine in leaping ouer a hedge or a ditch, or by teaching a horſe to bound when he is too yong, or when a horſe giueth himſelfe vpon ſome pole or ſtake, or by forcing a horſe when hee is full to runne beyond his ſtrength, or by ſtopping a horſe too ſuddenly vpon naughty ground, whereby the ſtradling and ſlipping of his hinder feete, may ſtretch or teare the rimme. The ſignes to know this ſorrance before it bee apparant to the eye, are: the horſe will forſake his meate, and ſtand ſhoaring or leaning alwayes on that ſide that he is hurt, and on that ſide, if you ſearch with your hand, betwixt the ſtone and the thigh, vpward to the body, and ſomewhat aboue the ſtone, you ſhall finde the guts it ſelfe bigge and hard in the feeling; whereas on the other ſide you ſhall finde no ſuch thing.

Now for the cure, although for mine owne part,

I both doe and ſhall euer hold it incurable, as long as a horſe is a beaſt without reaſon, yet for our ſatisfaction I will not ſticke to repeate what the beſt Farriers, and my ſelfe, haue practiſed, in as much as it worketh much good though no abſolute cure. The cure then is, to bring the horſe into ſome houſe or place which hath ouer head a ſtrong baulke or beame going ouerthwart, and ſtrow that place thicke with ſtraw, then put on foure ſtrong paſternes with foure rings on his feete, and faſten one end of a long rope to one of thoſe rings, then threeed all the other rings with the looſe end of the rope, and ſo draw all his foure feete together and caſt him on the ſtraw, that done, caſt the rope ouer the baulke, and hoiſt the horſe ſo as he may lye flat on his backe, with his legs vpward without ſtruggling; then bathe his ſtones well with warme water and butter molten together, and the ſtones being ſomewhat warme and well mollified, raiſe them vp from the body with both your hands, being cloſed by the fingers cloſe together, and holding the ſtones in your hands in ſuch manner, worke downe the gut into the body of the horſe, by ſtriking it downewards continually with yout two thumbes, one labouring immediately after another, vntill you perceiue that ſide of the ſtone to be ſo ſmall as the other; and ſo hauing returned the gut into his right place, take a liſt of two fingers broad, throughly annointed with freſh butter, and tie his ſtones both together with the ſame ſo nigh the body as may be, yet not ouer-hard, but ſo as you may put your fingar betwixt; that done; take the horſe quietly downe, and leade him gently

into the ſtable, where he muſt ſtand warme, and not be ſturred for the ſpace of three weekes: but forget not the next day after you haue placed his gut in his true place, to vnlooſen the liſt, and to take it away, and as well at that time, as euery day once or twice after, to caſt a diſh or two of cold water vp into his cods, and that will make him to ſhrinke vp his ſtones, and thereby reſtraine the gut from falling downe; and at the three weekes end, to make your cure ſo much the ſurer, it were not amiſſe to geld the ſtone on that ſide away, ſo ſhall he hardly be burſten againe on that ſide; and during the cure let him not eate much, nor drinke much, and let his drinke be alwayes warme.

Chap. 50.

Of the Botch in the groines of a horſe.

It is the opinion of all the beſt Horſe-leaches, that if a groſſe horſe which is full of humours be ſuddenly and violently laboured, that then the humours will reſort into the weakeſt part, and there gather together and breed a botch, and ſpecially in the hinder parts betwixt the thighes, not farre from the coddes. The ſignes are, the hinder legges will be all ſwolne, ſpecially from the cambrels or houghes vpward, and if you feele with your hand you ſhall find a great knob or ſwelling, and if it be round and hard it will gather to a head; the cure according to the generall practiſe is, firſt to ripen it with this plaiſter, take of wheate flowre, of Turpentine, and of Hony, of each like quantity, ſtirring it together to make a

ſtiffe

stiffe plaister: and with a cloth lay it to the sore, renewing it euery day once vntill it breake or wax soft; and then launce it, so as the matter may run downeward, then taint it with Turpentine and hogs grease molten together, renewing it euery day once vntill it be whole.

Chap. 51.

Of the Itch, Scab, or Mangineſſe in the taile, or generall falling of the haire.

HOrses, through the corruption of blood, or the fulneſſe of rancke feeding, or through ouerheating and labouring, or by the infection of other horses, doe many times get the generall scab, itch, or mangineſſe in the taile, and sometimes in the spring time horses are troubled with the truncheon wormes in their fundament, which will make them rubbe their tailes, and fret the haire, yet are free both from mange and scurfe; wherefore if then you onely take the horse with your hand annointed with sope, and pull out the wormes, you shall cause the horse to leaue his rubbing; but if you perceiue the haire to shed and fall from the taile, through some small wormes that growes at the rootes of the haire, or through some little fretting scurfe, then you shall annoint all the taile with sope euen to the ground, and then wash it with very strong lye after, and that will both kill the wormes, and scoure out the scurfe; but if much of the taile bee fallen away, then you shall keepe the taile continually wet, with a sponge dipt in faire water, and that will make the haire

to grow very fast. Now if in the horses taile shall grow any canker, which will consume both the flesh and bone, and make the ioynts to fall away one by one, then you shall wash all the taile with *Aqua fortis*, or strong water made in this sort. Take of greene Copporas and of Allome, of each one pound, of white Copporas a quarterne, boyle all these together in three quarts of running water, in a very strong earthen pot vntill the one halfe be consumed; and then with a little of this water being made luke-warme, wash his taile with a little clout or flaxe bound to the end of a sticke, continuing so to doe euery day once, vntill it be whole. But if as I said before, through the corruption of blood, food, or labour, this scabbe, itch, or mangineſſe, spread vniuersally into many parts of the taile, you shall then likewise wash it with the same strong water, vntill it be whole.

Chap. 52.

Of the generall Scab, Mangineſſe, or Leproſie ouer the whole body.

THe generall Mangineſſe or Leproſie, which runneth all ouer the horses body, is a cankred filthy scurffe which couereth the same, proceeding from aboundance of melancholy corrupt blood, ingendred by infection or vnwholesome food, or else by indiscreete labour. The signes whereof are, the horse will be all Mangy, and couered ouer with a white filthy scurfe, full of scabs, and raw plots about the necke and flankes, and euill fauoured to looke on,

and

and rubbing, scratching and biting; of all diseases there is none more infectious, nor will more certainely kill a horse if it be not preuented. Now the cure, according to the opinion of the ancientest Farriers, is first to let the horse blood in the one side of the necke veine, and within two dayes after on the other side of the necke, and within two dayes after that, in the flancke veines, and last of all in the veine vnder the taile; then wash all the sore places with salt brine, and rubbing them hard with a wispe of straw hard twisted, so as they may bleed well and be all raw; that done, annoint the places with this ointment, take of quicke siluer one ounce, of hogges grease one pound, of brimstone beaten into powder a quarterne, of rape oyle a pint, mingle these things well together, vntill the quicke-siluer be throughly incorporated with the rest, and hauing annoynted all the raw places with this oyntment, make it to sincke into the flesh, by holding and weauing vp and downe ouer it, a hot broad barre of Iron, and then touch him no more againe the space of two or three dayes; during which time, if you see that he rubbeth still in any place, then rub that place againe with an old horse-comb, to make it raw, and annoint it with fresh ointment. But if all this will not helpe, then with a hot Iron round and blunt at the point, so big as a mans little finger, burne all the mangy places, making round holes, passing onely through the skinne and no further; for which intent it shall bee needefull to pull the skinne first from the flesh with your left hand, holding it still vntill you haue thrust the hot Iron through it, and let euery hole be a span

one from another, and if need be you may annoynt those holes with a little sope, and let the horse be very thin dieted, during this curing time. Now for mine owne part, I doe vtterly dislike this burning, for it is a foule manner of cure, and breedeth much eyesore in the horse, and therefore other of our latter Farriers vse for this disease after they haue let the horse blood in the necke veine, to take a good quantity of fresh grease, and mix it well with the powder of chalke, then put thereto a good quantity of the powders of Brimstone, and Ellecampany rootes, and stirre them all well together; then take a pretty quantity of quicke-siluer, and kill it with your fasting spittle, or sallet oyle, and mixe it with all the rest very well together, & so annoynt all the sore places about the horse with this oyntment. Others vse to take of Lampe oyle, the fine powder of Brimstone, of blacke sope, of tarre, of hogs grease, and the soote of a chimney, of each a like quantity, and then mixe them all well together, by boyling them on the fire, and then annoynt all the sore places therewith, as hot as the horse can suffer it, alwayes prouided that the horse be let blood before you see the ointment. Others vse after the horse is let blood, to take of Oyle de bay a pound, and of quicke siluer one ounce, and mixing them together, neuer leaue stirring thereof, till the quicke-siluer be kild and incorporated with the oyle, then annoynt all the sore places therewith, after you haue made them raw by rubbing them. Other Farriers vse first to let the horse blood, then to wash all the sore places within two dayes after, with water wherein yong broome, or the hearbe of Arsmarcke.

narcke hath beene well sod in, and finally chopt, and mixt with a little soote; and rubbe him well vntill the sore places bleed; then take a pound of blacke Sope, a pottle of kneene Mustard, foure penyworth of Brimstone made into powder, three penyworth of quicke-siluer well killed with fresh grease, two penyworth of Verdigrease, a quarter of a pint of grease; stir all these together in a vessell, till the grease and other things be molten with labour, and without fire, and therewithall annoynt all the sore places, and with once annoynting, and twice washing, this will cure him. Others vse, if the horse be young, to let him blood on both sides the necke, and then to cut the skinne downe the midst of his fore-head two fingers in length, then with a cornet open the skin an inch wide on both sides the slit, and put therein thin slices of the greene roote of *Ellecampane*, or *Angelica*, which is better; so let them remaine vnder the skinne till the matter rot, then crush it foorth after two or three dayes, and in twelue dayes the rootes will fall out as it healeth, & this will cure the Mange, prouided, that you annoynt all the sore places with the powder of brimstone, verdigrease, and oyle oliue, mixt vpon a fire very well together. Others vse after blood-letting, to rowell the horse vnder the necke that the euill humours may issue forth, then to rubbe all his body ouer with an hard haire-cloth, or an old curry-combe, vntill the horse bleedeth; after that take of Sulphure, Salt, and Tartar, of each a like quantity, beate them and temper them with very strong vinegar, and as much common oile, and therewith annoynt all the sore places, or else take

very ſtrong vinegar, the vrine of a boy vnder twelue yeares of age, and the iuice of Hemlocke, mix them together and waſh the horſe therewithall. Other Farriers vſe after blood-letting, to annoint the horſe with one of theſe oyntments, the ſore hauing beene before rubbed till it bleed, either with brimſton, oile, vinegar, ſalt, ſoote, ſwines dung, and vnſleckt lime, of each like quantity, well mixt and boild together, or elſe with brine water ſod with nettles, or elſe with vinegar, Allome, and ſal-niter boild together, or elſe waſh the ſore with Beefe-broth; then boile Pepper beaten to powder, verdigreaſe, and cheruell in freſh greaſe, and annoynt the horſe all ouer therewith, holding a chafing-diſh and coales, or a hot barre of Iron to his body, to make the oyntment ſinke in. Laſtly, and as good as any of the reſt, after the horſe hath beene let blood, take an old curry-combe, or a wooll card, and rub euery ſore place about the horſe till it bleed, then take of the oldeſt piſſe you can get, a pottle, and of greene Copporas three quarters of a pound; mixe and ſtirre them well together, then ſet them on the fire, and boyle them a while; then as hot as the horſe can ſuffer it, waſh him with the ſame; after his waſhing is a little dryed, take of oyle an ounce and an halfe, of quicke-ſiluer two ounces, of white *Elleborus* one ounce, with a good quantity of ſwines greaſe, mingle all theſe well together, till no part of the quicke-ſiluer can be ſeene, and then annoint the horſe all therewith; and if the firſt time doe not cure him, the ſecond will moſt aſſuredly, prouided that during the time of cure you keepe the horſe with a very thin diet.

Two most exellent and approued medicines, (especially the latter) for the fowlest Mangy or Leprosie, that can possibly happen to any Horse.

TAke Hogs grease, Bay-salt, Woorme-wood, and Rew, of each a pretty quantity, stampe them together well in a mortar, & when it is brought to one entire salue, stoppe it hard into the horses eares, then either bind them vp, or stitch them together, that the medicine may not fall out; and doe thus three or foure dayes together, and it will not onely cure the Mangy, but any foule Farcy also.

The second medicine, and most assured for the mangy is, to take fresh grease, and yellow *Arsnicke*, and mixe them very well together till it come to a pale yellow salue, then your horse hauing beene let blood, and all the skurfe taken away, either with an old curry-combe, or such like hard thing, so as the sore places may lye raw, then annoint them all ouer with this ointment, and let the horse stand so tyed, that he may by no meanes touch any part of his body with his mouth, when hee hath stood thus two or three houres, then take old Vrine warmed, and wash away all the oyntment, and then giue the horse his meate: thus dresse the horse twice or thrice at the most, and it is sufficient for any Mangy whatsoeuer.

CHAP.

Chap. 53.

How to know when a horse halteth before, in what part his griefe is.

THere is nothing more necessary for any mans vnderstanding that shall haue occasion at any time to vse a horse, especially for the skilfull Farrier, then to knowe the reason why a horse halteth, and where tht griefe remaineth, as well because those griefes lie most concealed, as also because our Kingdome is so full of subtile vnconscionable horsecoursers, that they are carefull most to conceale that which may soonest cozen their neighbours; you shall know then that no horse halteth before but his griefe must be either in his shoulders, in his legs, or in his feete: if it be in his shoulders, it must either be on the top of the shoulder blades, which we call the withers, or at the bottome of the shoulder blade ioyning to the marrow-bone, which is the fore-pitch of the breast, or in the elbow of the horse, which ioynes the nether end of the marrow-bone and the leg together.

Now for the generall knowledge whether the griefe be in the shoulder or no, looke if the horse doe not lift vp his legge, but traileth it vpon the ground, then it is in the shoulder, and is a new hurt: if he cast his legge more out in his going then the other, and that almost with an vnbended knee, then it is also in the shoulder, and it is an old hurt; if you take him by the headstall of the bridle, and turne him as short as you can possible of both hands, if then you see him

him when he is turned on the lame ſide, to fauour his legge very much (as hee cannot chuſe but doe) then alſo his griefe is in his ſhoulder; or if when a horſe ſtandeth in the ſtable, he ſtretcheth out his ſore legge, and ſetteth it more forward then the other, it is partly a ſigne the griefe is in the ſhoulder, but not abſolutely. Now when you know generally that the griefe is in the ſhoulder, then you ſhall learne to know in what part of the ſhoulder, as thus: if the horſe halteth more when the rider is vpon his backe, then when he is off, then the griefe is in the top of the withers: if when with your hand you gripe and handle him vpon the toppe of the ſhoulder blades, you find that he ſhrinketh much, and offereth to bite at you (not hauing had any gald backe before, for that may deceiue you) then aſſuredly the griefe is on the withers. If the horſe goeth bowing vnto the ground and tread his ſteps very thicke, then it is a ſigne the griefe is in his breſt, betweene the nether part of the ſpade-bone, and the vpper part of the marrow-bone, and therefore if with your thumbe you preſſe him hard in that part, you ſhall ſee him ſhrinke, and be ready to fall downe. Now if when you take his elbow in your hand betwixt your fingers, and your thumbe, and gripe it, the horſe preſently taketh his foote from the ground, and lifts vp his leg, offering therewithall to bite at you, then the griefe is onely in the elbow. Now if the griefe whereof a horſe halteth be in his leg, it is either in his knee, in his ſhanke, or elſe in the paſterne ioynt: If it be either in his knee or paſterne ioynt, hee will not bow them in his going like the other, but will goe very ſtifly vpon them;

them; if the griefe be in the ſhanke, then it is by meanes of ſome ſplent, ſcrew, windgall, or ſuch apparant griefe moſt apparant to be ſeene. Now, if the griefe of his halting be in the foote, then it is either in the cronet, in the heele, in the toe, in the quarters, or in the ſole of the foote; if it be in the cronet, either the griefe will be apparant, the skin being broken or ſwolne ſome manner of way, or elſe laying your hand vpon the cronet it will burne and glow exceedingly, and then he hath got ſome ſtraine of the ioynt within the hoofe: if it be in the heele, as by ouer-reach, or otherwiſe, then it is to bee ſeene, and hee will tread altogether vpon the toe: if vpon any of the quarters, which is to be vnderſtood from the midde hoofe to the heele, then going on the edge of a banke or hilly ground, hee will halt more then on the plaine ground, and by the horſes comming towards you, and going from you vpon ſuch edge or banke, you ſhall perceiue whether his griefe bee in the inner quarter or the outward quarter; alſo he may halt vpon his quarters by the pricking of an naile, and then you ſhall with a paire of pinſons nip the head of euery naile and his hooue together, and where he complaineth there draw the naile, and if the naile ſinke, then there is his paine. If hee halt in the toe, which is ſeldome or neuer ſeene, then hee will tread altogether vpon his heele; if his griefe be in the ſole of his foote, as by the treading vpon ſome naile or ſtubbe, or by ſurbaiting or ſuch like, then he will halt all after one ſort, vpon any ground, vnleſſe it be vpon the ſtones, and then hee will halt the moſt. Now to bee ſure in what part of the

foote the griefe is; it shall bee good, first to make him goe vpon the plaine ground, and then vpon a hard and stony ground, and after vpon a bancky ground, and by taking carefull notes, and carefully handling him, you shall easily see of what member he halteth.

Chap. 54.

Of halting behind, and where the griefe is.

If a horse halt behind, his griefe of necessity must either bee in his hippe (of some called the huckle bone) or in the stifle, in the hough, in the hamme in the legge, in the nether ioynt, in the pastorne, or in the foote. If he halt in the hippe of any new hurt, the horse will goe side-long, and not follow so well with that legge as with the other, neither will he be able to turne vpon that side without much fauouring of his legge; but if it be any old hurt, then the sore hippe will shrinke and be lower then the other, and it is best seene when he goeth vp a hill, or vpon the edge of some bancke, so as the worst legge may goe on the higher side, for then hee will halt so much the more, becausse it is painefull vnto him to goe so vneuenly wrinching his legge; if the griefe bee in the stifle, then the horse in his going will cast the stifle ioynt outward, and the bone on the inside will be farre bigger then the other, neither can hee any more then touch the ground with his toe; if his griefe be in the hough, then it is by meanes of some spauen, which is apparant both to bee seene and felt, or else of some straine or blow: and then the

the swelling will appeare; and the like is to be said of the hamme, wherein may bee seene the sellander or such like apparant sorance causing the horse to halte; if the griefe be either in the leg, pastorne, or foote, you shall find it by such signes as haue beene taught you in the former Chapter.

Chap. 55.

How to know if a horse haue any hidden griefe in him, that maketh him to halte, when he commeth to trauell, and whence it proceeds.

NOw for as much as there be some horses which through long rest and running at grasse, will weare out the worst of their grieues, so that when they come to bee but gently ridden they will couer their halting, and through a naturall awe they beare vnto the man, will, whilst he is on their backs, goe as if they were as sound as might be, yet be truely, of themselues very vnperfect: in this case, both to keepe your selfe from cozening, and to discouer the most hidden infirmity, you shall first take the horse out of the stable in a long string, and causing one to runne him in his hand, at the length of the halter, marke how he sets downe his legs, for if any be imperfect, then that he will fauour, but if at first he goe vpright, and fauour no legge, then take his backe and ride him a while roundly vp and downe a rode, then light from his backe and let him stand still an houre, then as before, let him be runne in a mans hand, at the halters length, without any man on his backe, and beleeue it as a most certaine rule, if he haue the least

leaſt griefe that may be, he will then ſhew it, and fauour that limbe which is pained; for by this rule onely are many bad horſe-courſers diſcouered. Now to know whereof theſe griefes proceed, you ſhall vnderſtand that if the griefe proceede of a hot cauſe, then the horſe halteth moſt when he trauelleth, or is chaft. But if it proceed from cold cauſes, then he halteth moſt when he is cold, and leaſt when he is hot and much trauelled.

Chap. 56.

Of the griefe and pinching in the ſhoulder.

THE griefe of pinching in the ſhoulder, commeth either by much labouring and ſtraining the horſe too yong, or by the carriage of too great burthens. It is to be knowne by the narrowneſſe of the breſt, and by the conſumption of the fleſh of the ſhoulders, in ſo much that the fore part of the ſhoulder-bone, will ſticke out and bee much higher then the fleſh, and if it be of any long continuance, he will bee very hollow vpon the bysket towards the fore-boothes, and he will goe wider beneath at the feete then at the knees. The cure thereof, according to the opinion of ſome Farriers, is to make a ſlit of an inch long, with a ſharpe knife, vpon both ſides, an inch vnder the ſhoulder-bone, and blowing the skinne well from the fleſh, with a Swannes quill, both of the one and the other ſhoulder, euen vp to the top of the withers, and ſtroaking the winde vp equally with your hand into both the ſhoulders, and then when they are full, ſticke the windy places

places with a hasell sticke ouer all the shoulder; then loosening the skinne from the flesh againe, rowell both the slits, either with tampins of horse haire, or with round peeces of vpper leather of an old shooe, with a hole in the midst, for the matter to issue forth at, and let the tampins be at least two handfuls long in the skinne, and the round rowell at least three inches broad, and being so put as they may lye plaine and flat within the cut, then once a day you shall turne the rowels in the skinne, and thrust out the matter; but if the hole growe so straight that the matter cannot easily come out, with a sharpe knife you shall enlarge it, then put a paire of pasternes on his forelegges, and so let him stand fifteene dayes, at the end whereof walke him abroad, and try how he goeth, and if he doe not goe to your liking, then continue him in the same manner other fifteene dayes, and he will goe sound. But our best Farriers vse, after they haue rowelled the horse, as is aforesaid, then to lay his charge or plaister all ouer his withers, shoulders, and brest. Take of pitch and rozen, of each a pound, of tarre halfe a pint, boile all these together in a pot, and when it is somewhat cooled, take a sticke with a woollen cloth bound to the end of it, and dip it into the charge and couer, or daube all the shoulders therewith; that done, clap sloxe of the collor of the horse, or as neere as you can get it vpon the charge, and euery other day make your rowels cleane, and put them in againe, continuing thus to doe the space of fifteene dayes; then take out the rowels, and heale vp the wounds, with two tents of flaxe dipt in Turpentine, and hogs grease

greaſe molten together, renewing the ſame euery day once, vntill the wounds bee whole, but let the charge lie ſtill vntill it fall away of it ſelfe; and if you let the horſe runne at graſſe till hee haue had a froſt or two, there is no queſtion but he will be a great deale the ſounder. There bee other Farriers which vſe to rowell the horſe, as is aforeſaid, yet croſſe-wiſe, that is, one ouerthwart the other, then draw all the ſhoulder ouer, with a hot drawing Iron in the comlieſt wiſe you can, making many ſcrotches downe his ſhoulders: then annoynt both them and the rowels once a day with ſweete butter, and walke the horſe vp and downe euening and morning, that the humours may flow to the ſore places and iſſue forth, and with your hands once a day, at the leaſt, thruſt out the matter; this cure is likewiſe to be continued the ſpace of fifteene dayes, and then the horſe will be whole, yet for mine owne part, in ſo much as the cure is foule, I doe not much affect it.

Chap. 57.

Of the wrinch in the ſhoulder.

THE wrinch or ſtraine in the ſhoulder, commeth of ſome dangerous ſlipping or ſliding, either in the ſtable or abroad, or of too ſudden ſtopping, when a horſe gallops, or by fals, either on the planks, or on ſlippery ground, or by two ſudden turning on vnſure ground, or by going too raſhly out of ſome doore, or by the ſtroake of another horſe: you ſhall perceiue it by his trailing his legge vpon the ground cloſe after him. The cure is, to let him blood vpon

the plat veine, and take away the quantity of three pints of blood, which blood you muſt ſaue in a pot, and put therevnto, firſt of ſtrong Vinegar a quart and halfe a dozen broken egges, ſhels and all, and ſo much wheate flowre as will thicken all the liquour; that done, put thereunto of Bolearmonicke beaten into fine powder, a pound, of *Sanguis Draconis* two ounces, and mingle them together ſo as the flowre may not be perceiued, and if it be too ſoft, you may adde a little more Vinegar; then with your hand daube all the ſhoulder from the maine downe-ward, and betwixt the fore-bowels all againſt the haire, and let not the horſe depart out of that place, vntill the charge be ſurely faſtened vnto the skinne, that done, carry him into the ſtable, and tye him vp to the racke, and ſuffer him not to lye down all the day, and giue him a little meate, dyetting him very moderately the ſpace of fifteene dayes, during which time he may not ſtirre out of his place, but onely to lye downe; and euery day once refreſh the ſhoulder point with this charge, laying ſtill new vpon the old; and at the fifteene dayes end lead him abroad to ſee how he goeth, and if he be ſomewhat amended, then let him reſt without trauelling the ſpace of one moneth, and that will bring his ſhoulder to perfection: but if he mend nothing at all, for all this that is done, then you ſhall rowell him as is before ſhewed in the former chapter, iuſt vpon the ſhoulder point, & ſo keepe him rowelled the ſpace of fifteen dayes, not forgetting to ſtirre the rowell and cleanſe the wound each other day; and then walke him vp and downe faire and ſoftly, and turne him alwayes on the

contrary

contrary ſide of the ſoare; and when he goeth vpright pull out the rowell, and heale vp the wound with turpentine and hogs greaſe molten together, as is before ſaid. But if all this will not ſerue, then it ſhall bee needfull to draw him chequor-wiſe with a hotte Iron ouer all the ſhoulder point, and alſo to make him to drawe in a Plough euery day two houres at the leaſt, to ſettle his ioynts, for the ſpace of three weekes or a moneth; and if any thing will helpe, theſe two laſt remedies will ſet him ſound. Now there bee other Farriers which for this griefe firſt let the horſe blood in the breſt-veine, and then rowell him from the nether part of the ſpade-bone downe to the point of the ſhoulder, which done, you ſhall ſet a patten ſhooe vpon the ſound foote, and ſo turne the horſe to graſſe for the ſpace of a month, not forgetting euery other day to ſtirre and remoue the rowels, and ſo thruſt out the matter: then as ſoone as you ſee him goe ſound, you ſhall take off his patten ſhooe, and pull out the rowels, and then let him runne ſtill at graſſe, till he haue taken a froſt or two, and no doubt but he will continue ſound.

Chap. 58.

Of the Wrinch in the nether ioynt.

THIS wrinch commeth by treading his foote in ſome hole, or in ſome rough or ſtony way. The ſignes whereof are theſe, the horſe will halte, and the top of his backe vpon the points of his ſhoulder blades will be ſwolne and ſomewhat hard to handle.

The cure is, take of black or gray ſope halfe a pound, and hauing made it hot in a pan, take a handfull or two of towe, and dip it into the ſope, then lay it very hot ouer all the horſes withers; then clap a plaiſter of Waxe, Turpentine, and hogs greaſe molten together, ouer it, then couer it with two or three warme cloathes, and keepe the ioynts as warme as may bee: thus let him ſtand twenty foure houres ere you dreſſe him againe, and continue this manner of dreſſing for fifteene dayes, and rhe horſe will goe ſoundly. Now there be other Farriers, that in ſtead of this ſope will take Wine lees, and wheate flowre mingled together, and making a plaiſter thereof lay it very hotte to the grieued place, and ſo renew it once a day vntill the horſe goe ſound.

Chap. 59.

Of ſplaying the ſhoulder, or of ſhoulder-torne.

THE ſplaying of the ſhoulder, is when by ſome dangerous ſlippe or ſlide, either vpon the ſide of ſome bancke, or vpon the plaunchers, the horſe hath his ſhoulder parted from his breſt, and ſo leaues an open clift, not in the skinne, but in the fleſh and filme next the skinne, whereby the horſe halteth and is not able to goe; it is to be ſeene by the trayling of his legge after him in going. The cure whereof is thus, firſt put a paire of ſtraite paſtornes on his fore-feete, keeping him ſtill in the ſtable without diſquietting of him; then take of *Dialthea* one pound, of ſallet oyle one pint, of oyle de bay halfe a pound, of freſh butter halfe a pound; melt all theſe things together

together in an earthen pot, and annoynt the grieued place therewith, and also round about the inside of the shoulder; and within two or three dayes after, both that place and all the shoulder will swell, then either pricke him with a lancet or fleame in all the swelling places, or or else with a sharpe hot Iron, and then annoint it still with the oyntment before saide; but if you see that it will not goe away, but swell still and gather to a head, then launce it where the swelling doth gather most and is softest vnder the finger, and then taint it with Flaxe dipt in Turpentine, and Hogges grease molten together, as is before shewed, renewing the taint twice a day till the sorrance be whole.

Chap. 60.

Of the shoulder pighte.

THE shoulder pighte is, when a horse by reason of some great fall, rush, or straine, hath the point of his shoulder thrust out of ioynt, which is easie to bee seene in that the point of the sore shoulder will sticke out much farther then the other, and the horse will halt downe-right. The cure whereof as the old Farriers hold it, is first to make him swimme in a deepe water, vp and downe a dozen turnes, for that will make the ioynt returne into his true place, then make two tough pins of of Ashen wood as much as your little finger, being sharpe at the points; each one fiue inches long; that done, slit the skin an inch aboue the point, and an inch beneath the point of the shoulder, and thrust in one of the pinnes from

aboue downeward, ſo as both ends may equally ſticke with the skinne; and if the pinne of wood will not eaſily paſſe through, you may make it way firſt with an yron pinne; that done, make other two holes croſſe to the firſt holes, ſo as the other pinne may croſſe the firſt pinne right in the midſt, with a right croſſe, and the firſt pinne would be ſomewhat flat in the midſt, to the intent that the other being round, may paſſe the better without ſtop, & cloſe the iuſter together; then take a peece of a little line ſomewhat bigger then a whippe cord, and at one end make a loppe, which being put ouer one of the pins ends, winde the reſt of the line good and ſtraight about the pins ends, ſo as it may lye betwixt the pins ends and the skinne, and faſten the laſt end with a packe-needle and a packe-threed vnto the reſt of the cord, ſo as it may not ſlippe; and to doe well, both the pinnes and the cord would be firſt annointed with a little hogges greaſe, then bring him into the ſtable, and let him reſt the ſpace of nine dayes; and let him lye downe as little as may be, and put a paſtorne on the ſoare legge, ſo it may bee bound with a cord vnto the foote of the manger, to keepe that legge alwayes whilſt he ſtandeth in the ſtable, more forward then the other, and at the nine dayes end take out the pinnes and annoint the ſoare place with a little *Dialthea*, or with hogges greaſe, and then turne him to graſſe. Other of our latter Farriers, vſe firſt to lay good ſtore of ſtraw vnder the horſe, and then put a paire of ſtrong paſtornes on his fore legges, and annother on his hinder, then hauing throwne him vpon his backe, to hang him vp by the legs from the

the ground, with two ropes drawne ouer some beame or baulke, which will put the bone into his true place againe, then hauing let him downe againe faire and softly, loose the fore pastorne of the sound legge, and with a cord, before you let him rise, tye the lame legge to the foote of the Manger, so short as in his rising hee shall bee forced to hold his legge before him for feare of putting his shoulder out of ioynt, and let him stand so tyed for the space of three dayes; & presently when he is vp, burne all the point of his shoulder with a hot drawing Iron chequourwise, a full foote square at the least, & let euery stroke be no more then an inch distant one from another: and hauing burned him wel, charge all these burned places, and all the rest of his shoulder with pitch, rozen, and tarre molten together, and laid on something hot with a cloath tyed to a stickes end; then clap floxe of the colour of the horse vpon it, then charge him againe ouer the floxe, and at the three dayes end loose his foote, and put a paire of pastornes vpon his feete, and let him neither lye down, nor stir out of the stable for the space of sixteene or twenty dayes: then may you lead him abroad, and see whether he goe well or no, and if hee be not perfect, you may then giue him as much more rest, and that will recouer him him.

Chap. 61.

Of the swelling of the fore-legs after great labour.

Horses not much vsed to trauell, will after great labour swell vpon their fore-legs, because heate

and violent exercise will cause humours to resort downe into the legges, especially if such horses shall be inwardly fat; for the indiscreete labour will melt that inward grease, and make it descend downe into the legges. The cure, according to the practise of some Farriers, is, to take a pound of Nerue oyle, a pound of blacke sope, and halfe a pound of Boares grease molten, and boile them all well together, and then straine it and let it coole; then annoynt your horses legges therewith being made luke-warme againe, and then keepe his legges cleane from dust. Other Farriers vse to bathe his legges in butter and beere, or in vinegar and butter; some with sheepes-foote oyle, and some neates-foote oyle, some with traine oile, and some with pisse and salt-peeter boild together, of all which pisse and salt-peeter is the best; and after any such bathing, you must rowle vp the horses legges with hay ropes wet in cold water, euen from the pastorne of the knee, but in any wise not too straite for feare of doing hurt, so let him stand continually when he resteth. Now other Farriers, somewhat more curious, vse for the swelling of the legges this bathe; take of mallowes three handfuls, a rose-cake, of sage one handfull, boile them together in a sufficient quantity of water, and when the Mallowes be soft, put in halfe a pound of butter, and halfe a pint of sallet oyle, and then being somewhat warme, wash the swelling therewith euery day once the space of three or foure dayes; and if the swelling will not goe away with this, then take Wine lees and cummin, and boile them together, and put there vnto a little wheate flower, and charge all the swelling therewith,

therewith, and walke him often; and if all will not serue, then take vp the great veine aboue the knee on the inside, suffring him not to bleed from aboue, but all from beneath: and it will take away the swelling.

Chap. 62.

Of a horse that is foundreed in his feete.

A Horse is said to be foundred of his feete, when he hath such a numbnesse, and pricking or tingling within his houes, that he hath neither sence nor feeling of his feete, but is in all respects like a man that by hard or crooked sitting hath both his feete asleepe (as we call it) during which passion we know we can neither well goe nor stand; and euen so it fareth with a horse in this case, for the course of the blood being stopped, those obstructions causeth this torment. It commeth most commonly when a horse is very fat, and hath his grease molten within him, and then suddenly cooled by taking his saddle off too soone; or by standing still in the cold vnstirred, or else by letting him stand in some shallow water litle higher then his fetlockes. A horse also may be foundred by wearing straight and vneasie shooes, especially in the summer season, when a horse trauelleth vpon the hard ground. The signes to know it, is, the horse goeth crowching, and drawing all his foure feete within the compasse almost of a pecke, and will stand so fearefully as though he stood vpon needles. Now you shall vnderstand, that a horse will sometimes bee onely foundred of his forefeete, and not of his hinder, which you shall

ſhall know in that the horſe will tread onely vpon his hinder feete ; and not on his fore-feete, and goe as though his buttockes would to[uch] the ground ; and ſometimes he will be foundred vpon his hinder feete, and not vpon his fore-feete, and that you ſhall perceiue by his fearefulneſſe to ſet his feete to the ground, beïng alſo ſo weake behind that hee will ſtand quiuering and quaking,and couet alwayes to lye downe, and ſometimes he will be foundred of all his fore-feete, the ſignes whereof were firſt declared.

Now for as much as the cures be all of one and the ſelfe ſame nature, and what cureth the firſt, cureth alſo the reſt, I will ioyne them altogether, with this aduice, that if you finde the horſe to be foundred of the fore-feete onely, then to apply your medicine to the fore parts onely,if on the hinder feet, then to the hinder parts;but if of all foure feete,then to lay your medicine to all the former parts of the body,as ſhall be preſently declared.

To come then to the cures (according to the opinion of a worthy Knight well experienced in this diſeaſe) if your horſe bee foundred of all his foure feete, you ſhall cauſe him to be let blood on his two breſt-veines of his two fore-legges ſomewhat aboue his knees, alſo you ſhall let him blood on his two ſpur-veines, and on the veines of his two hinder feete a little aboue the hooſe, betweene the hooſe and the paſtorne : you ſhall let theſe veines bleede well to the quantity of a quart or three pints, which blood you muſt ſaue in ſome veſſell, and ſtirre it with a ſticke to keepe it from clearing : and when he

hath

hath bled as aboue ſaid, put it all into one veſſell, then ſtoppe the wounds with ſome horſe dung, or ſome earth, and make a charge with the blood in this ſort: take as much wheate meale, branne and all, as will make the blood ſomewhat thicke, and put it into the blood; take eight or ten egges, and breake them all into this blood, ſhels and all; take a pint of ſtrong Vinegar, and a quantity of Bole-armonicke braid, and put them into the blood alſo, which done you ſhall ſtirre them altogether; then ſhall you with your hand lay the ſaide charge all along vpon the reines of the horſes backe, vpon his buttockes, and downe his ſhoulders: when you haue laid on this charge thus, you ſhall take two long linnen ragges dipped in the ſame charge, with which ſo dipped you ſhall garter the horſe aboue the knees of his fore legges ſomewhat hard, and likewiſe with two other like ragges ſo dipped, you ſhall garter him hard aboue both his hinder hooſes alſo: that done, cauſe him to bee walked vpon the hardeſt ground you can finde, for the ſpace of two or three houres: if he be loath to goe, as commonly hee will be, let one follow him, and beate him with a ſticke or wand to force him to goe; then after this walking let him be ſet vp and tied to the racke, that hee lye not downe, and there let him reſt two or three houres; which done, let him be walked againe two or three houres more as aforeſaid, then ſet him vp, and let him feed; and when you giue him drinke, which you may doe within two or three houres after his feeding, let it be a warme maſh of malt and water, then let him feede a little after it, then ride him a little;

and

and if you let him ſtand an houre or two in a poole of ſtanding water vp to the belly, and one vpon his backe, it is good alſo, and after that ride him againe a little: then let him be ſet vp well dreſſed and couered, and ſo by little and little ride him a day or two, and then may you boldly iourney him; for it is riding that bringeth the horſe to the perfectneſſe of his feete, and you ſhall finde your horſe as ſound as euer he was.

Now during this cure, you are to take theſe obſeruations in your memory.

Firſt, you ſhall not need to remoue or ſtir the horſes ſhooes; then you muſt after twenty foure houres rub off the charge from the horſe backe.

Item, You ſhall take away his garters after twelue houres, and rub his knees & houghs with your hand, and with wiſpes to take away the numbneſſe.

Item, If you cannot get wheate meale, you may take oaten meale.

Item, If he will not bleed in the veines before named, then you may take your blood from the neckeveine.

Laſtly, if you take the horſe in hand to cure within twenty foure houres after he is foundred, he will be ſound againe within twenty foure houres after; if he goe longer, the cure will be longer in doing.

Now the ancient Farriers of this kingdome, and amongſt the *Italians*, differ not much in their practiſe from this already rehearſed, onely into the charge they adde of *Draconis Sanguis* halfe a quarterne, & as much beane flower, as wheate flower, and of turpentine halfe a pound; then if they did ſee that within foure

foure daies the horſe did not recouer, then they did know that the hurtfull humours did onely lye in the horſes feete, and there you ſhall ſearch his feete with your butteryſſe, paring all the ſoles of his feete ſo thinne, that you may feele the water iſſue through the ſole: that done, let him blood at the toes, and let him bleed well; then ſtop the veine with Turpentine, and hogges greaſe molten together, and laide vpon a little flaxe, and then tack on his ſhooes, and cram the place where you did let him blood hard with tow, to the intent it may be ſurely ſtopt; then fill all the ſoles of his feete with hogges greaſe and bran boild or fried together ſo hot as is poſſibly, and vpon that ſtopping clap a peece of leather, and two croſſe ſplents, to keepe in the ſtopping; and immediately after this take two egges, and beate them in a diſh, and put thereunto as much Bolearmoniacke and beane flowre as will thicken the ſame, and mixe them well together, and make thereof two plaiſters, ſuch as may cloſe each foote round about ſomewhat aboue the cronet, and bind it faſt with a liſt or a rowler, that it may not fal away nor be remoued for the ſpace of two dayes; but let the ſoles of his feete be cleanſed, and new ſtopped euery day once, and the cronets to be remoued euery two dayes vntill the horſe be ſound; during which time let him reſt vnwalked for feare of looſening his houes: but if you ſee that he beginne to amend, you may walke him faire and ſoftly once a day vpon ſome ſoft ground to exerciſe his legges and feete, and let him not eate much, nor drinke cold water; but if his ſouudring breake out aboue the hoofe, which

you

you ſhall perceiue by the looſeneſſe of the Coffin aboue by the cronet, then when you pare the ſole you muſt take all the fore-part of the ſole cleane away, leauing the heeles hole, to the intent the humours may haue the freer paſſage downeward, and then ſtoppe him, and dreſſe him about the cronet, as is before ſaid. Now if the horſe during this cure chance to fall ſicke, or grow ſo dry in his body that he cannet dung, then you ſhall firſt take him, and after giue him a glifter of Mallowes, three handfuls boild in water from a pottle to a quart: then after it is ſtrained, and put to it halfe a pound of butter, and a quarter of a pint of ſallet oyle, and ſo adminiſter it, then when the horſe hath emptied his belly giue him this comfortable drinke. Take of Malmſey a quart, and put thereunto a little Cinamon, Mace and Pepper beaten into fine powder, and of oyle a quarter of a pint, and giue the horſe to drinke of that lukewarme; that done, let him be walked vp and downe a good while together, if he be able to go; if not, then tie him vp to the racke, and let him be hanged with canuas & ropes, ſo as he may ſtand vpon the ground with his feete, for the leſſe he lyeth downe, the better; but theſe extremities doe ſeldome happen. Now there be other Farriers which for the foundring of a horſe, onely take verdigreaſe, turpentine, ſallet oyle, and hogs greaſe, of each like quantitie, of Bees waxe one ounce: boile all together, and ſo dippe flaxe or tow in it: then hauing pared his feete thinne, and let him blood on the toes, ſtoppe all his feete with that oyntment very hotte: or elſe they take the rootes of Nettles, and Hemlocke, with Elder pilles of each a handfull;

handfull; boile them tender in boares greaſe, or Hogges greaſe, ſo let him blood in the midſt of the foote on the toe-veine; then bathe and chafe his ioynt and leg therewithall about from his knee vnto the fetlocke, and then clap it to, and binde a cloath faſt to as hot as you can. So vſe this once a day till he be well.

Now for mine owne part, although there is not any of theſe former recited practiſes but are found perfectly good in their kinds, yet I haue not found any ſo abſolute either for old or new founder, as this which I will rehearſe. Firſt you ſhall with a very ſharpe drawing knife, draw euery part of the ſoles of the horſes feete ſo thinne as is poſſible, euen till you ſee the very water and blood iſſuing forth, and being ſure to draw or pare euery part alike, which can hardly be done with a butteryſſe: then at the very ſharpe end of the fruſh of the horſes foote you ſhall ſee the veine lye, then with your knifes end lift vp the hoofe and let the veine bleede (which as long as you hold open the hoofe will ſpin a great way forth) when it hath bled better then a pint, you ſhall cloſe the hoofe and ſo ſtoppe the veine: then tacke on his foote a hollow ſhooe made for that purpoſe: that done, clap a little tow dipt in Hogges greaſe and Turpentine vpon the veine very hard; then take two or three hard egges roaſted, and comming burning hotte out of the fire, and burſt them in the ſole of the horſes foote: then power vpon them Hogges greaſe, Turpentine, and Tarre boyling hot, and as much Flaxe dipt therein as will fill vp the hollow ſhooe, then lay on a peece

of leather to keepe all the reſt in, and ſplint it ſure: and in this manner dreſſe his fore feete, if all bee founded, otherwiſe no more then are foundred; and thus you ſhall dreſſe the horſe three times in one fortnight, and without any further trouble you ſhall be ſure to haue the horſe as ſound as euer hee was. Now if the horſe bee foundred through the ſtraiting of a ſhooe, which in truth is not a founder, but a frettizing, which is degree leſſe then foundring, then you ſhall for that ſorrance, firſt take off his ſhooe, and let him blood on the toes, then ſtopping the place with bruiſed ſage, take on his ſhooe againe, and ſtop it with hogs greaſe and bran boiled together, as hot as is poſſible; and doe thus twice in one fortnight, and it will helpe him.

Chap. 63.

Of the Splent as well on the inſide of the knee as of any other part of the legge.

A Splent is to the outward feeling, a very griſtle, or rather a hard bone, ſometimes as big as a hazle nut, ſome times as big as a wal-nut, according to the age thereof, growing vpon the inſide of the forelegge, betweene the knee and the vpper paſterne ioynt, and ſometimes iuſt vnderneath, and cloſe vnto the knee, which is of all other the moſt dangerous ſplent, and doth the ſooneſt make a horſe lame: it commeth by trauelling a horſe too young, or by ouerpreſſing him with heauy burthens, whereby the tender ſinewes of his legs are offended. Now for the knowledge thereof it is eaſy, becauſe it is apparant

vnto

vnto the eye, and moſt palpable to be felt. The cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is to take an onion, and pricking out the chore, put it into halfe a ſpoonefull of hony, and a quarter of a ſpoonefull of vnſleckt Lime, and foure penny-weight of verdigreaſe; then cloſing vp the onion, roaſt it in hot embers vntil it be ſoft: then bruiſe it in a mortar, and as hot as the horſe can ſuffer it, lay it to the ſplent, and it will take it away; but in any caſe cut no skinne. Other of the ancient Farriers vſe firſt to waſh the ſplent with warme water, & then to ſhaue off the haire, and lightly to ſcarifie or pricke the skinne with the poynt of a razor, ſo as the bloud may iſſue forth: then take of *Cantharides* halfe a ſpoonefull, and of *Euforbium* as much, beaten into fine powder, and mingle them together with a ſpoonefull of oyle de Bay, and then melt them in a litle pan, ſtirring them well together ſo as they may not boile ouer; and being ſo boyling hot, take two or three feathers, and annoynt all the ſore places therewith: that done, let not the horſe ſtirre from the place where you ſo dreſſe him for an houre after, to the intent hee ſhake not off the oyntment: then carry him faire and ſoftly into the ſtable, and tye him ſo as hee may not reach with his head beneath the manger: for otherwiſe hee will couet to bite away the ſmarting and pricking medicine, which if it ſhould touch his lippes, would quickly fetch off the skinne; and alſo let him ſtand without litter all that day and night; the next day annoynt the ſore place with freſh butter, continuing ſo to doe euery day once for the ſpace of nine dayes: for this will allay the heate of

the medicine, and cause both that and the crust of the splent to fall away of it selfe. There bee other Farriers which vse with a fine hot drawing Iron to burne the forrance downe in the midst the ful length of the splent, and then ouerthwart, like this figure, ⊢⊢⊢ then foure houres after such burning take Cowes dung new made, and sallet oyle mixed, and well beaten together, and therewith annoynt all the sore places; and this must bee done when the splent is very yong.

Others vse to slit the sorrance with a knife the whole length of the splent, and then with a cornet to open the slit, and lay the splent bare; then to make about the wound a coffin of clay, all open at the top; then take Boares grease made scalding hot, and powre it into the wound vntil the clay coffin be full; then let it rest vntill the grease be cold: after that let the horse rise, and this with once dressing wil take the splent cleane away without any blemish or eye-sore. Others vse to beate the splent with a sticke, and to bruise it well, then pricke it with an awle, and thrust out the bloud; then lay on white-leather, and with a hot Iron make the grease scald it, or else melt into it pitch and verdigrease, and then lay a plaister of pitch ouer it, not remouing it vntil it fall off by it selfe; or else after you haue beaten and prickt the splent, take out the chore of an onion, and fill it with bay salt; then roast it soft, and lay it hot to the splent, and in stead of the onion you may, if you will binde to a hard roasted egge, being fire hot. Other Farriers vse to slit the skinne the length of the splent, then to dippe a little peece of linnen

in

in warme VVine, and ſprinkle verdigreaſe thereon, and ſo lay it to the ſlit, renewing it once a day vntill the ſplent be gone. Others vſe to ſhaue off the haire, and to rubbe the ſplent twice a day with tarre very hard, vntill the ſplent be gone; but this ſplent muſt be very young and tender: for faſting ſpettle is as good as tarre. Other Farriers vſe to take a blacke Snaile and ſlit her, and put in bay ſalt, and lay it to the ſplent being opened, renewing it once a day vntill the ſplent be gone: then let the veine aboue the knee be taken vp, and let it bleede from below, leſt it feede the ſplent againe. Others vſe if the ſplent be vpon the knee, to burne it, as is before ſayd; then take Wormewood, Smallage, Pellitorie of the wall, and Branke Vrſine ſtamped with Swines greaſe, and lay it to the burnings, prouided that firſt the haire be ſhaued off, and if the ſplent bee below the knee, this cure is good alſo, and much the ſafer. Now after all theſe former recited practiſes, you ſhall vnderſtand that the moſt cleanlieſt way to take away a ſplent, is firſt, after you haue caſt your horſe, with a haſell ſticke of a pretty poyſe and bigneſſe, gently to beate the ſplent at the firſt, and then by degrees a little harder and harder, vntill the ſplent grow ſoft in euery part; then with the point of your launce let out all the bloud and water; then take a bricke-bat, and hauing layd it in the fire, when it is exceeding hot, fold it in a redde cloth, and therewith rubbe the ſplent, and ſmooth it vppon the toppe till yon haue dryed away the bloud, and that no more moyſture commeth out; then take of pitch, of rozen, and maſticke, of each a like quantitie

melt them well together, and being very hot, lay it ouer and all about the splent: then clap floxe of the colour of the horses legge vpon it, and so let it rest vpon the splent vntill it fall away of it selfe: and if when it is fallen away, you perceiue that any part of the splent remaine behinde, which hardly will be if it be orderly beaten; then you shall dresse that remainder as you did the other before, and the splent will be perfectly cured. Now for the surest and most certainest way to take off a splent, it is thus: with the point of a sharpe knife, make a slitte of more then a barley corne length iust vpon the top in the midst of the splent, and let it bee so deepe that you may bee sure that the bone of the splent is bare; then put into that slit with the poynt of your knife, as much Arsnicke as the quarter of an hazell nutte; and within three or foure dayes, it will so haue eaten the splent, that it will fall out of it selfe; then you shall heale vp the sore, either with fresh butter molten, or with a plaister of hogges grease and Turpentine mingled and melted together; onely in this cure you must beware that you tie the horse so, as for foure and twenty houres he may not touch the sore place with his mouth. Now in conclusion, I am to giue you this small precept, to beare euer in your minde, that is, both for the healing of this, and of all other rumours whatsoeuer. You must first stay the falling downe of new humours to the place troubled, as by binding plaisters, as pitch, rozen, masticke, red lead, oyle, Bole-armoniacke, and such like; then to draw out the matter which is there gathered, with drawing simples, as Waxe, Turpentine, and such like:

like: and lastly, to drye vp the relickes with drying powders, as hony and lime, oyster-shels, soote, and such like; and also you must know, that all splents, spauens, or knobs, must either bee taken away at the beginning, or after the full of the moone.

Chap. 64.

Of the Screw, or thorrow Splent.

Although diuers of our Farriers doe distinguish & make a difference betwixt a serew & a splent, saying, that the screw is euer of the out-side of the legge, as the splent is of the inside; yet it is most certaine, that the disease and infirmity is all one, and may as well bee cald a splent on the outside of the legge, as a splent of the inside of the legge, and this splent on the outside is euer least dangerous. Now a horse many times will haue both these splents at one time, and vpon on legge; nay I haue seene them so iust opposite one to the other, that one would haue thought they had gone through the horses legge; whence it hath come to passe, that many foolish Farriers being of that mind, haue entitled them a thorow splent; and I haue seene my selfe some well reputed Farriers, that hauing the cure brought vnto them, haue refused the same, saying it was a thorow splent, and therefore most incurable; but the opinion is most absurd and ridiculous: for the shin bone being hollow, and full of pith and marrow, there can nothing grow through it, but it must confound the marrow, and then the bone cannot hold, but must presently breake in sunder, especially when such a

weake ſpongy ſubſtance as a ſplent is, ſhall poſſeſſe the whole ſtrength of the legge. Now for the cure, as the ſplent and it are all one, ſo they haue all one cure, and what helpeth the firſt, with more eaſe helpeth the latter, in as much as it is not full ſo dangerous, nor ſo neere the maine ſinewes.

Chap. 65.

Of the Mallander.

A Mallander is a kinde of dry hard ſcab, growing in the forme of lines or ſtrakes ouerthwart the very bought or inward bent of the knee, and hath hard haires with ſtubborne rootes, like ſwines briſtles, which corrupteth and cankereth the fleſh like the roots of a childes ſcabbed head; and if the ſore bee great and deepe, it will make the horſe go ſtiffe at his firſt ſetting forth, and halt much. It doth proceed either from the corruption of bloud, or from negligent keeping, when the horſe wanteth cleane dreſſing: for you ſhall know that ſome horſes naturally are giuen to haue long haire from the toppe of the bought of the knee downe to the fetlocke, and that haire in the bought of the knee is often apt to curle; whereby thoſe horſes if they be not very carefully and cleane kept, are much ſubiect to this diſeaſe. Now for the cure, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, it is thus; Take a barreld herring out of the pickle, with a ſoft roe, and two ſpoonefulles of blacke Sope, and ſo much Allome; beate all theſe in a mortar well together, and then lay it to the ſore, renewing it once a day for three dayes, and it will

kill

kill the Mallander; prouided alwaies that before you lay any thing vnto a Mallander, you euer pull off the dry ſcabbes firſt, and leaue no haire growing within the ſore. Other Farriers vſe to take a paring of cheeſe, and roaſting it very hot, annoynt it with hony, and ſo hot lay it to the Mallander, and renew it once a day, till the Mallander be whole: or elſe beate Hens mucke and gilliflowers well together, and lay it to the ſore till it be whole. Other Farriers vſe, after they haue waſhed the ſore cleane with warme water, and ſhaued off the haire and the ſcabbes, to take a ſpoonefull of ſope, and as much lime; mingle them together, that it may be like paſte, then ſpread as much on a clout as will couer the ſore, and bind it faſt on with a liſt, renewing it euery day once the ſpace of two or three dayes; and at the three daies end take away the plaiſter, and annoynt the ſore with oyle of Roſes made luke-warme, and that will fetch avvay the ſcurffe or cruſtie asker, bred by meanes of the burning plaiſter: which ſcurffe being taken away, waſh the ſore place euery day once with his owne ſtale, or elſe with mans vrine, and then immediatly ſtrow vpon it the powder of burnt oyſter ſhelles, continuing ſo to doe euery day once vntill it be whole.

Others of our later Farriers vſe to take a quart of water, halfe a pint of oyle, and as much flower as will thicken it with ſeething; then lay that hot to the ſore twice a day for foure dayes together; then take maſticke, frankinſence beaten to fine powder, quickſiluer, kild either in the iuyce of Lemans, or in ſtrong vinegar, of each an ounce; then of Litergy halfe an

ounce, of *Ceruſe* ten ounces, and as much of ſwines greaſe clarified; incorporate and mingle all theſe together with vinegar and oyle, and lay it to the ſore vntill the Mallander be kild; then heale it vp as is before ſhewed. Others vſe after they haue waſhed it and ſhaued it, to rub it with piſſe and ſope vntil it be raw: then to lay to it, nerue oyle, hony, and ſtrong muſtard, vntill it be whole. Others vſe to take Sulphure, Vitrioll, Sal-nitre, Sal-gemme mixt with oyle de bay, and to rub the Mallanders well therewith. Now to conclude, you ſhall vnderſtand, that ſome horſes will haue two Mallanders vpon one legge, one aboue another, and ſometimes one a little aboue the inward bending of the knee, and another a little below the inward bending of the knee; but the cure is all alike, and as you dreſſe one, ſo you may dreſſe two or three.

Now for mine owne part, I haue not found any thing better for a Mallander, then after the ſore is cleanſed, to take the ordure or dung of a man, and annoynt the ſore therewith, and it will kill it and heale it.

Chap. 66.

Of an vpper attaint, or ouer-reach vpon the backe ſinew of the fore-legge, ſomewhat aboue the paſterne ioynt.

THis which we call an vpper attaint, is nothing elſe but a painefull ſwelling of maiſter ſinew, or back ſinew of the ſhanke bone, by reaſon that the horſe doth ſometimes ouer-reach and ſtrike that ſinew

new with the toe of his hinder foot, and thereby causeth the horse to halt much. Now the signes are both the swelling and the halting: and the cure, according to some of the old Farriers, is to dresse the sore place with a plaister made of wine lees and wheate flowre layd hot to, or else to take of blacke sope and boares grease, of each like quantity scalding hot; make a plaister of seare-cloath thereof, and clap it all about the sore place: or else if the swelling by no salue will dissolue, take a fine thin hot drawing Iron, and draw his legge all downward with the haire in many small strikes from the one of the swelling to the other, and make the strikes very thicke together, and somewhat deepe: then annoynt his burning for two or three dayes with blacke sope, and so turne the horse to grasse; but if he will not run at grasse, then euery day giue him some moderate exercise; but this burning I fancy not much, for it is foule, and albeit take away the swelling, yet the seames of the burning, when they are cured, will keepe the member bigge, as if it were still sweld. Now other of the ancient Farriers, vse first to wash the legge with warme water, then to shaue off the haire as farre as the swelling goeth; then to scarifie the sore place with the poynt of a razor, that the blood may issue forth: then take of *Cantharides* & *Euforbium* of each halfe an ounce; mingle them together with halfe a quartern of sope, and with a slice spread some of this oyntment ouer all the sore, suffering him to rest there where you dresse him for one halfe houre after; and then you may carry him into the stable, and there let him stand without litter, and so tied as he may not touch

the

the ſore with his mouth : and then the next day vſe him in the ſame manner againe : then the third day annoynt the place with freſh butter, continning ſo to doe the ſpace of nine dayes, and at the nine daies end make him this bath : Take of mallowes three handfuls, a Roſe cake, of ſage an handfull, boyle them together in a ſufficient quantitie of water, and when the mallowes be ſoft, put in halfe a pound of butter, and halfe a pint of ſallet oyle; and then being ſomewhat wanne, waſh the ſore place therewith euery day once till it be whole. Others vſe to cleaue a Chickin or a Pigion, and to clap it hot to the ſwelling, and it wil abate it : or elſe take *Dialthea*, *Agripa*, and oyle, and mixing it together, lay it to the ſwelling. Others vſe to take of frankinſence, of roſen, of tarre, of *Euforbium*, of turpentine and fenugreeke, of each a quarter of an ounce, of ſuet an ounce, of oyle an ounce, of waxe three ounces, and three quarters of an ounce of Myrre; mixe and melt them all together, and plaiſterwiſe lay it to the ſore place till it be whole : or elſe take for this ſorrance, three quarters of an onnce of *Sanguis Draconis*, an ounce of bole-armony, as much oyle, three ounces of maſticke, and as much ſuet, and as much ſwines greaſe; melt and mixe them together, and lay it to the ſwelling, and it will take it away : then make the ſhooes of his hinder feete ſhorter then the hornes of his toes by a quarter of an inch, and let the horne hang ouer vncut away, and make the fore-ſhooe no longer then his heele, but rather ſhorter.

An excellent approued medicine for any sinew-strain whatsoeuer.

TAke of vinegar a pint, the whites of three or foure egges, and as much Bolearmoniacke and beane flowre as will bring it to a thicke salue ouer the fire: then when it is very hot, lay it plaisterwise vpon the straine, and round about the legge: and do this, not only till the griefe be gone, but also till all the swelling be taken away.

CHAP. 67.
Of a neather Attaint, or ouer-reach on the pasterne ioynt.

THe neather Attaint, or ouer-reach on the midst, and in the hollow of the pasterne ioynt, is a little bladder full of ielly, like vnto a winde-gall; and though it be not apparant to the eye, yet it is easie to be felt, and may come as well by some wrinch or straine, as by an ouer-reach, and it will cause a horse halt much. The signes are, the neather ioynt towards the feetlocke, will be very hot, and somewhat sweld, and the little soft blebbe will easily be felt.

The cure, after the opinion of the old Farriers, is, take a small cord, and rowle him somewhat strait from the knee to the neather ioynt, and then in the pasterne, betweene the hoofe and the ioynt with a fleame strike him in the midst of the swelling, and let out the matter: then take the white of an egge, and beate it with a little salt, and then dipping flaxe therein,

therein, lay it vnto all the ſwelling, and then vnrowle his legge, and renew the ſalue twice a day vntill the griefe be gone. But in any caſe let him not be laboured or ridden whilſt he is in curing.

Chap. 68.

Of an Attaint, or ouer-reach on the heele.

An attaint or ouer reach vpon the heele, is when a horſe ſtriketh the toe of his hinder ſhooe into the heele, iuſt vpon the ſetting on of the hoofe; and this ouer-reach if it be not looked vnto, will fret and rankle ſo much inward, that it will endanger the horſes hoofe, and you ſhall commonly ſee by the cut the skin hang ouer the horſes heele, and it will make a horſe halt. Now the cure is, firſt to cut away the skin, and alſo the hoofe and the fleſh, till you haue made the ſore euen and plaine without any hollowneſſe; then waſh it very well with beere and ſalt, then bind vnto it a little flax dipt in the white of an egge, mingled with a little Bole-armony, renewing it euery day once the ſpace of three or foure dayes, and that will heale it.

Chap. 69.

Of the Mellet on the Heele.

A Mellet is a drye ſcabbe that groweth vpon the heele, ſometimes through the corruption of blood, and ſometimes for want of cleane rubbing and dreſſing when he is wet ſet vp: it appeareth like a dry chap without any moyſture, and it will be ſom-

times

times as well on both heeles as on one. The cure is, according to the practiſe of the old Farriers, to take halfe a pint of hony, and a quarter of a pound of blacke ſope, and mix them together: then put thereto foure or fiue ſpoonfuls of vinegar, and as much of Allome as an Hennes egge vnburnt, and two ſpoonfuls of rie flowre; mixe them all well together, and then lay it plaiſterwiſe to the ſore, as farre as the Mellet goeth, and let it lie thereto fiue dayes, and then take it away, and waſh all his legge and foote with ſalt-beefe broth; and then rope his legge all a day with wet hay-ropes, and hee will be ſound: prouided alwayes, that before you dreſſe him, you euer take off the drie ſcab or ſcurffe, and make the ſore as cleane and as plaine as is poſſible.

Chap. 70.
Of falſe quarters.

A Falſe quarter is a rift or open backe ſeame, ſometimes in the out-ſide, but moſt ofteſt in the in-ſide of the hoofe; becauſe the in-ſide is euer the weaker part; which ſides are euer called Quarters: whence this ſorrance taketh his name, and is called a falſe quarter, as much as to ſay, a ſicke and vnſound quarter: for it is as if it were a peece ſet vnto to the hoofe, and the hoofe not all of one entire peece as it ought to be. It commeth many times by euill ſhooing, and euill paring, and ſometimes by pricke-ing the horſe, and ſuch like hurts. The ſignes to know it, are, the horſe will halt much, and the rift will bleede, and when the ſhooe is off, the whole

ſorrance

ſorrance is apparant to be ſeene. The cure, according to the ancient Farriers, is, to take off the ſhooe and cutte away ſo much of the ſhooe on that ſide where the ſorrance is, as the ſhooe being immediatly put on againe, all the whole rift may be vncouered: then open the rift with a drawer, and fill all the rift with a rowle of tow dipt in Turpentine, waxe and ſheepes ſuet molten together, renewing it euerie day once till it be whole: and the rift being cloſed in the toppe, draw him betwixt the haire and the hoofe with a hot yron ouer-thwart that place, to the intent that the hoofe may ſhoote all whole downeward; and when the horſe goeth vpright, ride him either with no other ſhooe then this, or elſe with ſuch a ſhooe as may beare in euery part, but onely vpon the falſe quarter, vntill the hoofe bee hardened. Others vſe to annoynt it once a day with ſheepes ſuet and oyle mixed together, and that will cloſe the rift. Others vſe to cut away the old corrupt hoofe, and then take ſeauen whites of egges, the powder of Incenſe, of vnfleckt lime, of maſticke, of verdigreaſe, and of ſalt, of each three ounces; mixe them well together, then dippe in as much hurds as will couer the ſore hoofe; lay it on, and then aboue it lay ſwines greaſe an inch thicke, and likewiſe below it alſo: binde this on in ſuch ſort that it may remaine vnſtirred a fortnight, then renew it ſo againe, and it will make perfect his hoofe. But if there bee any corrupt matter gathered within the falſe quarter, and thereby cauſeth the horſe to halt, then you ſhall lay your finger vpon it, and if the horſe ſhrinke thereat, then it is ripe; then open it

with

with a drawing knife, and let out the matter; then lay on horſe dung, oyle, ſalt, and vinegar mixed together plaiſterwiſe, and that will heale it, and make the hooſe good; yet howeuer, you muſt haue care in ſhooing him til his hooues be hardened, as is before ſhewed you.

Chap. 71.

Of a horſe that is hipped or hurt in the hippes.

A Horſe is ſayd to bee hipped, when either by ſtraine, blow, or other accident, the hippe bone is remooued out of his right place. It is a ſorrance as hard to bee cured as any whatſoeuer: for if it bee not taken euen at the firſt inſtant, there will growe within the pot of the huckle-bone, ſuch a thicke hard ſubſtance, that it will leaue no place for the bone, and then it is vtterly vncureable. The ſignes to know the ſorrance, are, the horſe wil halt much, and goe ſide-long; and will traile his legge a little after him; the ſore hippe alſo wil bee lower then the other, and the fleſh wil waſte away on that ſide of his buttocke. The cure is, according to the beſt Farriers, if you take him in good time, firſt to caſt him on his backe, and then hauing a ſtrong paſtorne on his grieued legge, with a rope draw that legge vpright, and with your hands on each ſide his thigh bone, guide it directly into the pot: that done, let it down gently, and ſo ſuffer him to riſe with all meekeneſſe; then goe with him into the ſtable, and there charge all his hippe and backe with pitch and rozen molten together, and layd on warme, and then ſome floxe-

floxe of his owne colour to be clapped vpon the same, and so turne the horse to grasse vntill hee goe vpright. But if the horse be not hipped, but onely hurt in the hippe, and that newly, then first take of oyle de Bay, of *Dialthea*, of nerue oyle, and of swines grease, of each halfe a pound; melt them all together, stirring them continually vntill they bee throughly mingled together; then annoynt the sore place therewith against the haire, euery day once the space of a fortnight, and make the oyntment sinke well into the flesh, by holding a hot barre of yron ouer the place annoynted, weauing your hand to and fro, vntill the oyntment be entred into the skinne: and if at the fortnights end you see the horse not any thing amended, then slit a hole downeward in his skin an inch beneath the hip bone, making the hole so wide, as you may easily thrust in a rowell with your finger; and then with a cornet and a quill, blow the skinne from the flesh aboue the bone, and round about the same, so broad as the rowell may lie flat aud plaine betwixt the skinne and the flesh: and this rowell would be made of soft calues leather, with a hole in the midst, and a threed tied vnto it, to pull it out when you would cleanse it, or the hole: and if the rowell be rowled about with flaxe fast tyed on, and annoynted with the oyntment vnderwritten, it will draw so much the more. Now you must thrust in your rowell first double, and then spread it abroad with your finger: that done, taint it with a good large taint of flaxe, dipt in a little Turpentine and hogges grease molten together and made warme, and cleanse the hole and the rowell

euery

euery day once; and also renew the taint for the space of a fortnight, and before you dresse him, cause him euery day to be led vp and downe a foote pace a quarter of an houre, to make the humours come downe; and at the fortnights end pull out the rowell, and heale vp the wound with the same salue, making the tent euery day lesser and lesser vntill it bee whole: and so soone as it is whole, with a hotte drawing Iron draw crosse lines of eight or nine inches long right ouer the hip bone, so as the rowelled place may bee in the very midst thereof, and burne him no deeper but so as the skin may looke yellow; and then charge all that place, and ouer all his buttocke with this charge. Take of pitch one pound, of rozon halfe a pound, and of Tarre halfe a pint, boyle them together, and then being good and warme, spread it on with a clout tyed in a riuen sticke, and then clap on a tew floxe of the horses colour; and if it be in Summer let the horse run to grasse a while, for the more he trauelleth at his owne will, the better it is for him.

Chap. 72.

Of Stifling, and hurts in the Stifle.

That horse is said to be stifled, when the stifling bone, which is a little bone of two inches in length, lying betweene the nether end of the thigh bone, and the vpper end of the great hough bone of the hinder leg, is by any straine, stroake, slippe, or such like, thrust out of his right place; but if the stifling bone bee not remoued nor loosned, and

yet the horſe halteth by meanes of ſome griefe in that place, then we ſay the horſe is hurt in the ſtifle, and not ſtifled. The ſignes are theſe. If the horſe be ſtifled, the ſtifle bone will ſticke out more of the one ſide then of the other, and is apparant to the eye, and in his halting hee will no more but touch the ground with his toe. The cure, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, is to thruſt two round pins croſſe the ſtifling bone, through the skinne, in ſuch ſort as you were taught for the ſhoulder pight; but the pinnes would not be any thing neere ſo big, nor ſo long, becauſe the ſtifling bone is not ſo broad as the ſhoulder: and ſtanding in the ſtable let him haue a paſtorne and a ring vpon his ſore legge, and thereunto faſten a cord, which cord muſt go about his necke, and let it be ſo much ſtrained, as it may bring his ſore legge more forward then the other, to keepe the bone from ſtarting out; but this cure is foule and troubleſome, wherefore other Farriers of better experience, vſe onely to ſet on a patten ſhooe vpon his ſound foote, and ſo turne him abroad, that he may be compeld to tread vpon his lame foot; and that ſtraining of it will in a day or two make him as ſound as euer hee was, and put the ſtifling bone into his true place againe. But if you cannot readily get a patten ſhooe, then you ſhall take either a plaine ſurſingle, or any other broad binding web, that will goe three or foure times about the horſes leg, and with it you ſhall garter vp the horſes ſound legge three fingers aboue his hamme, euen vpon his maine great ſinew, ſo ſtrait as your ſelfe and another man can draw it; and then turne the horſe abroad

where

where hee may goe vp and downe, and in eight and forty houres the horſe will bee as ſound as euer hee was; then take off the garter, and rub the place that was gartered vp with freſh butter, for it will be much ſwelled.

Now of this miſchance of ſtifling happen vnto your horſe in your trauell, and that your occaſions will not ſuffer you to ſtay for any of theſe cures, then you ſhall take your horſe either to ſome deepe pond or deep riuer that hath eaſiy going in and out, and there ſwimme him vppe and downe a dozen turnes: which done, you may after trauell him at your pleaſure: for the more he is laboured, the ſounder he will goe. Now if your horſe be not ſtifled, but onely hurt in the ſtifle, either with ſome ſtripe or ſome ſtraine, then the bone will not ſtand out, yet perhaps the place will bee much ſweld. The cure, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, is to make a little ſlit in his skinne a handfull belowe the ſoare place, and then with a quill blowe all the skinne from the fleſh vpward, and then with your hand preſſe out the winde againe, & then thruſt in a rowel of horſe haire from the firſt ſlit to the vpper part of the ſtifle bone: this done, take a pottle of old piſſe, and boyle it to a quart, and cleanſe it well; then take a handfull of mallowes, and halfe a pint of ſallet oyle, and adde them to the piſſe, and then boyle them well together: then bathe all the ſore place therewith euery day once the ſpace of ſeuen or eight dayes, and let him not ſtirre out of the ſtable during the cure, and in twenty one dayes he will be ſound.

Other Farriers vſe onely to take a pound of Bole-

armony, a quart of red wine vinegar, fixe egges beaten, shels and all, two peny-worth of English hony, and as much *Venice* turpentine, one quart of flower, and one good handfull of bay-salt; put all these in a pot, and incorporate them well together, then keepe them close one night, and the next day annoint the sore place with some of it; and thus dressing it once a day the space of nine dayes, it will make the horse sound.

Chap. 73.

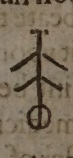
Of the bone-Spauen or dry Spauen.

THE bone Spauen, or dry Spauen, is a great hard knob as bigge as a Wal-nut, growing in the inside of the hough, hard vnder the ioynt, neare vnto the maister veine, it groweth at the first like a tender gristell, and by processe of time, it commeth to be a hard bone, and causeth the horse to halt much. This sorrance will come sometimes by nature or descent, as when either the Sire or Damme of the Horse haue had the same disease, and sometimes (which is most generall) it commeth when a horse is laboured too yong; for a horse in that part of his hinder legge hath small bones knit altogether vpon one cluster, which being pressed before they be naturally hardened, cannot chuse but thrust forth these vnnaturall excretions. Otherwhiles it proceedeth from extreame labour and heate, dissoluing humors, which doe descend through the maister veine, continually feeding that place with euill nutriment, and causeth the place to swell; which swelling in continuance

nuance of time becommeth so hard as a bone, and therefore is called the bone-spauen. The signes are the apparant sight of the sorrance; and truely for mine owne part, I am of the minde of other Farriers, that it is very hard absolutely to cure it; yet that the eye-sore may be taken away, and the halting much eased, is not hard, for I haue done it many times. Then to proceed to the cure thereof, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, is thus: First, slit the skinne iust ouer the head of the Spauen or excretion, and open it with a Cornet, and in any case haue a care that you touch not the maister veine, but put it by: then with your Lancet lay the Spauen all bare, then with a fine chizell about a quarter of an inch broad, or little more, strike off the head of the Spauen, to the quantity of the quarter of an Almond, or according to the bigneſſe of the Spauen: then take two peny waight of Verdigrease beaten to fine powder, and two peny waight of Nerue-oyle, and beate them all well together: then laying some of it vpon fine lint, lay it vpon the Spauen; then lay dry lint betwixt the medicine and the veine, that the medicine may not touch the veine: then lay a plaister of Pitch, Rozen, Turpentine, and hogges greaſe molten together, all ouer the hough, both to comfort the ioynt, and to keepe in the medicine. And thus dresse him the space of three dayes, and it will cleanse away the Spauen euen to the bottome; at the end of three dayes you shall wash away the corrosiue and the matter, either with Tanners water, or with Vinegar, and lay no more of that salue thereto for hurting the bone; then make a plaister

of *Diaculum*, and lay it vpon a linnen cloath, and lay that plaister vnto the Spauen, renewing it euery day once for the space of seuen dayes, and it will heale him vp.

Others of the old Farriers vse first to wash the Spauen with warme water, and shaue off the haire so farre as the Spauen extendeth, and then scarifie the place and make it bleed: then take of *Cantharides* one dozen, and of *Euforbium* halfe a spoonefull; beate them in powder, and boyle them together with a little oyle de bay, lay this boyling hot vpon the sore, and let his taile be tyed vp for wiping away the medicine; and then within halfe a houre after set him vp in the Stable, and tye him so as he may not lye downe all that night for feare of rubbing off the medicine; and the next day annoynt it with fresh butter, continuing thus to doe euery day once the space of fiue or sixe dayes; and when the haire is growing againe, draw the sore place with an hot Iron in this sort, iust vpon the Spauen: then take another hot Iron like a bodkin, somewhat bowing at the point, and thrust it in at the nether end of the middle line, and so vpward betwixt the skinne and the flesh, an inch and an halfe; and then taint it with a little hogges grease and Turpentine molten together, and made warme, renewing it euery day once the space of nine dayes; prouided that first immediately after his burning you take vp the maister veine, suffering him to bleed a little from aboue; then with a redde silke tye the vpper end of the veine, and leaue the nether end open, to the intent that hee may



bleed.

bleed from beneath vntill it ceaſe of it ſelfe; and this will diminiſh the Spauen, but not take it cleane away.

Now there be other Farriers which vſe after they haue burnt it in manner aforeſaid, and taken vp the maiſter veine, to annoint it with freſh butter, till the burning beginne to ſcale, and then take of Sage and Nettles, of each a handfull, and boyle them with foure handfull of Mallowes in faire water; and then put thereto a little butter, and with that bathe him euery day once for three or foure dayes till the burning be whole, and let him not wet his feete during the cure.

Others vſe to pricke the Spauen with a ſharpe pointed knife, then take a peece of candle, and lay a peece of browne paper vpon it, and with an hot Iron melt the tallow, and after annoynt it with butter. Others vſe firſt to pricke the Spauen well, then to lay vpon it for three or foure dayes together, euery day, mans dung: after that lay to it *Galbanum* till the ſore matter and rheume, and the humour come forth: then waſh it with vrine, and laſtly heale it vp with oyle and hony boyled together, for that will bring on the haire.

Now to conclude, that which I haue euer found to bee the ſureſt and cleaneſt way to take the bone Spauen quite away, if it bee vſed with diſcretion and care, is to take of *Vnguntum Apoſtolorum*, and of white Mercury, of each a like quantity, but of Mercury rather the more; mixe them well together: then after you haue caſt your horſe, make a ſlit iuſt the length of the Spauen, ſo that you

touch not the maister veine: then opening it, and laying all the spauen bare, with a sharpe instrument scall the spauen a little; then make a plegant of lint iust so bigge as the excretion or hone spauen is: then spreading some of the salue thereon, lay it vpon the spauen; then with dry lint discend all other parts of the member, especially the maister veine, from the corrosiue: then lay the plaister of Pitch, Rozen, Turpentine and hogges grease before spoken round about his hough, and so let him rest foure and twenty houres: then take away all that medicine: and scalling the bone a little, if you find the corrosiue haue not gone deepe enough, then dresse it in the same manner the second time, and that will be together sufficient: then take of Turpentine, of Deeres Suet, and of Waxe, of each a like quantity, and mixe and melt them well together, then dresse the sore place therewith being warmed, and lint or tow dipt therein; and within a day or two you shall see the whole crust of the spauen come cleane away, then may you with the same salue, heale vp the wound; and this hath neuer failed me in any practise.

Chap. 74.

Of the blood Spauen, wet Spauen, or through Spauen.

THe blood Spauen, wet Spauen, or through Spauen (for all is one disease) is a soft swelling, growing on both sides the hough, and seemes as though it went through the hough, whereby it is called a through Spauen; but, for the most part, the swelling on the inside (because it is sen continually

of

of the maister veine) is greater then the swelling on the outside. It proceedeth from a more fluxible and fleamy humour, and not so viscous and slimy as the other spauen doth, and therefore that neuer waxeth hard, nor groweth to a bone, and therefore it is a much easier cure then the other. The signes thereof are like the other, the apparant signes thereof; and for the cure, it is, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, in this manner: First, wash the spauen with warme water, and then dresse it with *Canthárides* and *Euforbium*; in such sort as was at large shewed in the former Chapter; onely you shall not boyle them, but onely mixe them together, and dresse the sore therewith two dayes together: then annoynt it with butter, and after burne it with a hot Iron both without and within, in manner as is shewed also in the former chapter, but you shall by no meanes taint it: then immediately you shall take vp the master-veine, and let it bleed, as wash shewed before; and then for the space of nine dayes, annoynt him euery day once with butter vntill the burning beginne to scale, and then wash it with this bathe: Take of Mallowes three handfuls, of Sage one handfull, and as much of red nettles; boyle them in water vntill they be soft, then put thereto a little fresh butter, and bathe the place euery day once for the space of three or foure dayes; and vntill the burning be whole, let the horse come in no wet. Other Farriers vse, after they haue shaued off the haire and taken vppe the veine, to take of Mustard-seed, of the great Mallow roote, and of Oxe dung, of each a like quantity, and as much strong vinegar as will mixe them together:

ther like a salue; then beate them all well together, and make thereof a soft plaister, or else an oyntment, and lay it vpon the Spauen; change it euening and morning, and binde it in such sort to the forrance with some peece of cloath, that it may not fall off or bee remoued; and when the Spauen is cleane gone, lay vpon the place a plaister of Pitch very hot, and take it not off, vntill it fall away of it owne accord. Other Farriers vse vnto this former medicine to adde oyle de bay, Turpentine, and Bolearmony. And other Farriers vse but onely to take vp the veine, both aboue and below the Spauen, and suffering it to bleed well; then to knit vp the veine, and annoint it with butter till it bee whole, and it will consume the Spauen.

A most rare and well approued medicine, which will take away any Blood-spauen whatsoeuer

AFter you haue taken vp the veine, knit it fast aboue, and then cut it in sunder, you shall take of lynseede two or three handfuls, and bruise it well in a morter, then mixe it with new Cow-dung, and putting it in a frying pan, heate it well vpon the fire, and very hot apply it to the Spauen, renewing it morning and euening till it bring the Spauen like a byle to impostumation, and so breake it, then after it hath runne a day or two, you shall onely apply to the sore a plaister of Pitch, till it be whole.

CHAP.

Chap. 75.
Of the Sellander.

THE Sellander is a certaine kind of dry ſcabbe, growing in the very bent of the hamme of the hinder legge; and it extendeth out into ill-fauoured chaps or chinkes, which if it bee not preuented by medicine, it will fret in ſunder the ſinewes of the hough: It is in all points like vnto a Mallander, and proceedeth from the ſelfe like cauſes, and requireth the ſelfe-ſame cures; therefore looke into the Chapter of the Mallander, and whatſoeuer you finde there that will cure the Mallander, the ſame will alſo cure the Sellander.

Chap. 76.
Of the Hough Bonny.

THE Hough bonny is a round ſwelling like a *Paris* ball, growing vpon the very tip or elbow of the Hough, and commeth euer of ſome ſtripe or bruiſe; but eſpecially when hee beateth his Hough either againſt the poſt which ſtandeth behind him, at the nether ende of his ſtall, or againſt the barre which doth diuide him from another horſe; which many rauniſh Iades will doe, when they ſeeke to ſtrike at the horſe that ſtandeth next them. Now the cure thereof is thus, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, take a round Iron ſomewhat ſharpe at the end, like a good bigge bodkin, and let it be ſomewhat bending at the point; then holding

the

the ſoare with your left hand, pulling it ſomewhat from the ſinewes, pierce it with the Iron, being firſt made red hotte, thruſting it beneath in the bottome, and ſo vpward into the ielly, to the intent that the ſame ielly may iſſue downeward out at the hole: and hauing thruſt out all the ielly, taint the hole with a taint of Flaxe dipt in Turpentine and Hogges greaſe molten together, and alſo annoint the outſide with Hogges greaſe made warme, renewing it euery day once vntil the hole be ready to cloſe vp, making the taint euery day leſſer and leſſer, till all bee whole. Now for mine owne part, both for this ſorrance, or any other bruiſe in this part, I haue found this cure euer the beſt. Firſt, either with rotten litter or hay boyled in old vrine, or elſe with a plaiſter of Wine lees and wheate flowre boyled together, to ripen the ſwelling, and bring it to putrifaction, or elſe to driue the ſwelling away; but if it come to a head, then to launce it in the loweſt part of the ſoftneſſe, with a thinne hot Iron, and ſo to let out the matter: then to taint it with Turpentine, Deeres Su..t, and Waxe, of each like quantity molten together, laying a plaiſter of the ſame ſalue ouer it, to hold in the taint vntill it be perfectly whole.

Chap. 77.

Of the Curbe.

A Curbe is a long ſwelling a little beneath the elbow of the hough in the great ſinew behind, hard aboue the top of the horne, which cauſeth the horſe

horſe to halt after a little labour: for the more his ſinew is ſtrained, the greater is his paine, and the more he hath reſt, the leſſe is his griefe; it commeth as the Spauen comes, either from deſcent, or from great burthens when the horſe is yong, or elſe from ſome ſtraine or wrinch. The ſignes are apparant view thereof; and the cure according to the old Farriers, is, firſt to ſhaue off the haire, then pricke it with a fleame in three or foure places, and for three or foure dayes together, lay vnto it twice a day mans dung; then lay *Galbanum* to it likewiſe twice a day till it rot, and that the matter doth iſſue forth; then waſh it with Vrine: and laſty, heale it vp with hony and oyle boyled together, renewing the ſame twice a day till the Curbe be gone; and in any caſe let all your ſalues bee applyed warme and new made, and if you make an iſſue with a hotte Iron in the bottome of the Curbe, it will not doe amiſſe.

Others vſe to take a very hot Iron, and hold it as nigh the ſore as may be, but not touching it: then when it is warme, vent it in ſixe or ſeuen places: then take a ſpoonefull of ſalt, halfe a ſpoonefull of nerue-oyle, and a peny waight of verdigreaſe, and the white of an egge; mixe theſe well together; and dipping flaxe in the ſame, lay it to the Curbe, and this in few dreſſings will take it away. Other Farriers vſe to chafe and rubbe the Curbe well with their hands: then take red Wal-wort leaues, and Borage, and braying them well together, lay it to the Curbe; renewing it once a day for a ſeuen night together. Others vſe to ſlit the Curbe all the length, then

then take a peece of linnen cloath, and wet it in wine made warme: then ſtrow verdigreaſe therevpon, and bind it to the ſore, renewing it once a day vntill the Curbe bee gone. Others of the ancient Farriers take of Wine lees a pint, of Comin halfe an ounce, and as much wheate flowre as will thicken it, and ſtirre them well together; and being made warme charge the ſore place therewith, renewing it euery day once the ſpace of three or foure dayes, and when the ſwelling is almoſt gone, then draw it with a hot Iron made very thin in this ſort, and couer the burning with pitch and rozen molten together, and laid on good and warme, and clap thereon ſome floxe of the horſes colour, or ſo nigh as may bee gotten, and remoue them not vntill they fall away of themſelues; and for the ſpace of nine dayes let the horſe reſt, and come in no wet. Now there be other Farriers which to this laſt recited ſalue, will adde Tarre, and it is not amiſſe, onely it will not ſticke ſo well.

Now for mine owne part, I haue euer found this practiſe the beſt.

Firſt, with a broad inckle to binde the hough ſtraite a little aboue the cod: then with a ſmoth hazell ſticke to beate, rubbe and chafe the Curbe: then with a fleame ſtrike it as deepe as you can in two or three places of the Curbe: then thruſt out the corrupt blood; and after vpon the point of your knife, put into euery hole as deepe as you can thruſt it, the quantity of two barley cornes of white arſnicke, and ſo let the horſe reſt foure and twenty houres after; then after onely annoint the ſore place with hot

hot molten butter till it bee whole, once a day at the leaſt.

Chap. 78.
Of the paines.

THE paines is certaine vlcerous ſcabs growing in the paſtornes of a horſe, betwixt the fetlocke and the heele, full of fretting matteriſh water, and commeth onely for want of good rubbing and cleane dreſſing, after the horſe hath beene iourneyed in the winter wayes, by meanes whereof the ſand and durt remaining in the haire, fretteth the skinne and fleſh, and ſo breedeth to a ſcabbe; and therefore your *Friſonds* and *Flanders* Horſes and Mares, which now are ſo much in vſe with vs for the Coach, are the ſooneſt troubled with this diſeaſe, if the Keeper bee not much the more carefull. The ſignes hereof are, his legges will bee ſwolne and hot, the ſcabbe will be palpable to be felt, and the water will iſſue out of the ſcabbe; which water is ſo hot and fretting, that it will ſcald off the haire, and breed ſcabbes where it goeth. The cure, according to the auncient Farriers, is: Take of Turpentine, hogges greaſe, hony, and blacke ſope, of each a like quantity, and hauing molten them vpon a ſoft fire, take it off, and put it in a little Bolearmony finely beaten into powder; then worke all theſe things well together with a ſticke in your right hand, and a diſh of wheate flowre by you, that with your left hand you may put it in by a little at once, till you haue made it thicke like an oyntment or ſoft ſalue:

then

then ſpread it vpon a linnen cloath, as bigge as the ſore, hauing firſt cut away the haire, and made the ſore raw, apply to the ſalue, and dreſſe him thus once a day vntill it be whole.

This medicine is well approued to cure all ſorts of *Pain*, *Scratches*, *Mouldy heeles*, or any other ſcuruy ſcalls whatſoeuer, that may breed in a horſes legges or heeles, whether they come by meanes of euill humours, or for lacke of good dreſſing or cleane keeping, whether they be mattery and filthy running ſores, or elſe dry ſcabbes. Others of the old Farriers vſe for this ſorrance to take a pint of red wine lees, and a handfull of wheate branne, a ſaucerfull of hony, and halfe a pound of the powder of powdred beefe burnt, and as much of barke duſt, and halfe a pound of Allome, and a quarter of a pound of Swines greaſe, and halfe a handfull of veruine; beate all theſe together in a mortar and then fry them ouer the fire, and make a hot plaiſter thereof, and lay it to the ſoare as hot as the horſe may ſuffer it, letting it abide there the ſpace of three dayes, and in once or twice thus dreſſing him, it will make him ſound; yet ſome hold, if you doe with a hot drawing Iron ſeare the great veine ouerthwart, a handfull aboue the fetlocke, and then take a ſpoonefull of tarre, a ſpoonefull of butter, and a ſpoonefull of hony; and warming them well together, annoint the veine therwith euery day till the cure bee perfected, and it is much auaileable.

Other Farriers vſe, firſt to waſh all the horſes paſtornes with butter and beere well warmed together, and then his leg being ſomewhat dryed, clip away all

all the haire that doth annoy the sore: then take of turpentine, of hogges grease, and of hony, of each like quantity; mingle them together in a pot, and put thereunto a little Bolearmony, the yolkes of two egges, and as much wheat flowre as will thicken the things aforesaid; and so by long working it, make it like a plaister; then spread it vpon a linnen cloath, and lay it round about the horses pastorne, and bind it fast on with a rowler, renewing it once a day till the horse be whole; and in no wise let the horse come in any wet during the cure. Others vse, first to chafe the sore place with a hay-rope, or with a haire-cloath, till it either bleed or bee raw; then take a little strong mustard, beane flowre, and fresh grease, with a little Fenugreeke; then mixe all together in a dish, and make thereof a salue, and therewith annoynt the sore vntill it leaue mattering: then take hony, the white of an egge, and fresh butter; mixe them together, and annoynt the sore place therewith vntill it bee whole. Others vse onely to bathe the sore with beefe broth, and then for foure or fiue dayes after, to annoynt it with sope, or else first to plunge his feete in scalding water twice or thrice, and bathe the soare in scalding water: then haue ready a hard roasted egge, cleaue it in the middest, and clap it to as hot as you can, and let it lye bound all night; vse this once or twice, and you may aduenture to ride him. Others vse to take pepper, garlicke stampt, cole-worte, and old Hogges grease, of each like quantity; then beate them in a mortar till they come to a salue, and so lay it to the sore, renewing it once a day till it be whole. Others

firſt vſe to take vppe the ſhackle veines on both ſides, then take the ſoft roe of a red herring, and muſtard, and blacke ſope, and when they are well beaten together, boyle them in Vinegar till they come to a ſalue, and apply it the ſore; this will cure the Paines, albe you do not take vp the ſhackle veines. If you cannot readily get this ſalue, you may take butter and hony molten together, and it will help them; or elſe take a pound of hogges greaſe, a penyworth of verdigreaſe, two ounces of muſtard, halfe a pound of oyle de bay, a quarter of a pound of Nerue-oyle, halfe a pound of hony, halfe a ponud of Engliſh waxe, one ounce of arſnicke, two ounces of red lead, and halfe a pint of vinegar; boyle all theſe together and make an oyntment of it: then hauing clipt and made the ſore all bare, apply the medicine thereunto very hotte, and renew it once a day vntill it be whole. Others vſe to take fiue ounces of orpiment, fiue of Tartar, one of Verdigreaſe, halfe an ounce of Sulphur, as much of Vitrioll made into powder, the iuyce of foure Citrions, the whites of two egges, with three ounces of ſallet oyle; let all theſe bee very well beaten together, and applyed once a day to the ſore, and it will not onely heale this diſeaſe, but any ſalt humour whatſoeuer. Mingle with ſoft greaſe, vinegar, hony, Orpiment and Arſnicke: but let Arſnicke bee the leaſt, and it will cure this diſeaſe, ſo will alſo white waxe, Turpentine and *Camphora* mixt together. Others vſe to take an hundred blacke ſnailes in the moneth of *May*, ſlit them, and put them into a bagge with a pint of bay ſalt; then hang them ouer the fire, with a veſſell

ſet

set vnder to receiue what droppes from them, and keepe it in a close glasse: then annoynt the sore euery day therewith, and it will heale this sorrance. Others take hony and vinegar, of each a like quantity, a little oyle, and suet of a he goat, of each a like also; boyle them with a soft fire, and stirre it well: when it waxeth redde, adde of Verdigrease and Vitriolle, of each like quantity made into powder, still stirring it till it be red and thicke; then being warme, annoint the sore place therewith once a day after it hath beene washed with warme water, and this not onely helpes the Paines, but also any sorrance whatsoeuer of like nature about the legges. Also greene Copporas and roach Alome, of each halfe a pound, and a handfull of bay salt boyld in a gallon of running water, will heale it; or else vnto it adde a pint of hony, and boyle it ouer againe, and it will bee the better: then when you haue annoynted the sore therewith, rubbe it after with the powder of glasse, mustard and vinegar mixt together, and afterward skinne it with creame, and the inner rinde of Elder beaten to a salue, which must be applyed to the sore twice a day at the least.

Chap. 79.

Of the Mules, or Kybe Heeles.

These Mules, or kybed heeles, are certaine dry scabbes or chappes breeding behinde vpon the heeles of a horse, and so a little inward euen to the fetlocke, in long chaps and chinewes: it proceedeth either from corruption of blood, or from being

bred in wet marrish grounds, or else from vncleane and negligent keeping, in such manner as the paines are bred: this sorrance will make the horse legge to swell much, especially in the Winter, and about the Spring time, and hee will goe stifely, and halt much.

Now for the cure, you shall vnderstand, that whatsoeuer healeth the Paines, the same will in like sort heale these kybed heeles; yet for more particularity, you shall know, that the old Farriers did vse for this sorrance, if the tooke it at the beginning, but onely to annoynt it for two or three dayes with Sope, and then after to wash it with strong Vrine, or Beefe broth till it were whole: but if it were of any long continuance, then first to cut away the haire, and lay the sore open and plaine; then take two ounces of vnsleckt lime, one ounce of Sope, and the white of an egge, or else an ounce of vnsleckt lime, and as much Salt, and three ounces of soote, and mingling them with strong Vinegar, annoynt the sore therewith, and it will heale and kill them. Other Farriers vse to calcinate *Tartar*, and dissolue it in water: then congeale it like salt, and mingle it with sope like an ointment, and then dresse the sore therewith, and this will in eight and forty houres heale any Mules, Paines, or scratches whatsoeuer. if yon take the iuyce of the leaues and rootes of elder, is very good to dry vp any of these euill humours.

CHAP.

Chap. 80.

Of Winde-galles.

THe Winde-gall is a little blebbe or bladder full of corrupt ielly, or like the white of an egge, growing on each side of the maister sinew of the leg, hard aboue the pastorne. Now of them some will be big, and some wil be little, and there will be sometimes more then one or two of a cluster, and they are so painefull, especially in the Summer season, when the weather is hot, and the wayes hard, that the horse is not able to trauell, but halteth downe-right: they proceede commonly from extreame labour in the Summer time vpon hard wayes, whereby the humors being dissolued, doe flowe and resort into the hollow places about the neather ioynts, which are most beaten and feebled with trauell, and there are congealed and couered with a thin skin like a bladder: they are most apparant to be seene and felt, and the cure thereof, according to the old Farriers, is to take a knife, and open it the length of a beane, piercing no further into it then through the skin of the bladder, and then thrust out the ielly, which as I said before, will be like the white of an egge; then take the yolke of an egge, and as much oyle de Bay as a good nut, and mixing them together, make a plaster thereof, and lay it to the sore, and in two or three dayes it will heale it. Others of the old Farriers dresse it with *Euforbium* and *Cantharides*, in such sort as is shewed for the taking away of the splent; but if that will not serue, then with a hot drawing

Iron to draw the winde-gall in this sort: then to open the middle line with a Lancet the length of a Beane, and thrust out the ielly: then lay pitch and rozen molten together vpon it, and then a few floxe, and that wil remoue it cleane away. Other Farriers vse to take vp the maister veines on the in-side of his legges, and suffer him onely to bleede from below: then hauing put vp the veine, couer all his legge ouer with a plaister of wine Lees and wheat flower mingled together, and rowle it with a long rowler: dresse him in this sort once a day vntil he be whole.

Others vse to open the skin and put out the ielly; then take a spooneful of oyle de Bay, a spooneful of Turpentine, a penny-worth of Verdigrease, the white of an egge, and a quarter of an ounce of red Lead; boyle them together vntil it come to a salue; then lay it to the winde-gall and it wil cure it; or else, after you haue let out the ielly, take Rozen, sheepes suet, and brimstone, of each a like; and melt them together, and lay that vpon the winde-gall, so it be not too hot, and it will cure it. Others vse the rootes of Comen and beate them well with a little salt, and lay that to the winde-gall; or else annoynt them with the iuyce of Onions or Leeke blades, and that wil alay them: or ground Iuy and VVormewood with the rootes sodde in wine and layd to the winde-gall, wil take them away. Others of our later experienced Farriers, take an ounce of white waxe, an ounce of rozen, two ounces of raw hony, three ounces of Swines grease, two ounces of oyle of the yolkes of egges, fiue ounces of oyle de Bay; mixe

all

all these wel together and straine them; then rubbe them into the winde-gall, by holding a hot barre of Iron against the oyntment, and it wil take the wind-gall away. Now for the making of the oyle of yolks of egges, it is thus: First seeth the egges hard, then stampe them, and seeth them in an earthen pot with a soft fire, and so straine them. Now this medicine will not onely heale the winde-gall, but the Ring-bone also, it is very good for the abating of the winde-gall, and for causing the medicine to worke the better, to let the horse stand in a cold running streame an houre morning and euening. The scum of the foure salts sod in mans vrine, and layd to the winde-gall, wil take it away.

There be others which take a potttle of Vine-gar, a pound of Orpiment, a quarter of a pound of galles, and as much of the hearbe Molleyne stampt small; mingle these wel together, and put them into a pot; then euery day therewith bathe the wind-gall, and in three weekes it wil dry them cleane vp; it will also take away a curbe or a spauen, or a Ring-bone, if you take them at the first breeding. Other Farriers vse of Ciuill oyle and brimstone, of each a like quantity, and seeth them in mans vrine, and stirre them well together; after put in the quantity of a VVall-nut of sope, to preserue the haire from scalding off; then bathe the winde-gall with this hot, thrice together, rubbing it well in: then annoynt it aboue with nerue-oyle, and oyle de Bay, and make it, by holding to it a hot barre of Iron, or a hot fire-panne, to sinke in the flesh, and in three dayes it wil drie vp any winde-gall.

Now for mine owne part, the beſt medicine I haue found in my practiſe for this Sorrance, and the eaſieſt, is with a fine lancet to open the winde-gall, making the hole no bigger then that the ielly may come forth: then hauing thruſt it cleane forth, lap a wollen wet cloath vpon it, and with a Taylors hot preſſing Iron, rubbe vpon the cloath till you haue made the cloath ſucke in all the moyſture from the winde-gall, and that the winde-gall is drie: then take of pitch, of roſen, and of maſticke, of each a like quantity, and being very hot, daube it all ouer the winde-gall; then clap good ſtore of floxe of the colour of the horſe vpon it, and ſo let the horſe reſt, or runne at graſſe till the plaiſter fall off by it owne accord, and be ſure the winde-gall will be gone.

Now I would giue you this for a rule, that by no meanes you vſe to a winde-gall, either arſnicke or reſagall: for commonly then the winde-gall will come againe; neither muſt you burne much, nor make any great inciſion: for any of theſe will turne the ſoft ſubſtance of the winde-gall to hardneſſe, and then the horſe will be lame without cure.

Chap. 81.

Of a ſtraine in the Paſtorne ioynt, or Fetlocke.

A Horſe may bee ſtrained in the Fetlocke or Paſtorne ioynt, either by ſome wrinch in the ſtable when the planchers are broken vnder him, or by treading awry vpon ſome ſtone, or vpon ſome Cart-rout, as he trauelleth by the way. The ſignes whereof be

be these: the ioynt will be swolne and sore, and the horse will halt; and the cure, according to the old Farriers, is, take a quart of stale vrine, and seeth it till the foame arise; then straine it, and put thereto an handfull of Tansie, and a handfull of Mallowes, and a saucer full of hony, and a quarter of a pound of sheepes suet: then set it on the fire, and seeth them all together till the hearbes be sodden soft; and then being very hot, lay this *Pultus* to the ioynt, and couer it ouer with a blew cloath; and in three times dressing it wil helpe the straine. Other Farriers take of *Dialthea* halfe a pound, and as much nerue oyle; mingle them together, and annoynt the sore place therewith, chafing it wel with both your hands that the oyntment may enter in, continuing so to doe euery day once vntil the oyntment be all spent, and let the horse rest; but if this wil not preuaile, then they will vse *Cantharides*, as in case of the splent; but I doe not hold that cure conuenient, because it will make a double griefe. Therefore I had rather you should take Pompilion, Nerue oyle, and blacke Sope, of each a like, and heate them hot on the fire; and then annoynt the sore place therewith, and it wil make the horse sound.

Chap. 82.

To remedy any manner of halting that commeth by straine, stroke, or any other accident.

NOw forasmuch as halting is such a generall forrance amongst horses, that not any man that is maister

maister of a horse, but euen in his smallest trauell, is at one time or other vexed with the same, I will heere before I do proceed any further, set you down certaine general receipts selected and culd out of the priuate practise and experiments of the best Farriers in Christendome, of which I may giue the bolder testimony, because I haue made practise of their vertues.

If then your horse haue taken any halt, either by stiffenesse of sinewes, straine, wrinch, stroake, or any other accident, if the griefe bee in his legge, you shall take Smallage. Oxe eye, and sheepes suet, of each a like quantity, choppe them all together, and boyle it in mans vrine, and bathe all the legge therewith: then with hay-ropes wet in cold water, rowle vp his legge, and hee wil be able to trauel the next day: or if you seethe a pound of blacke Sope in a quart of strong Ale vntil it looke like tarre, and annoynt the legge therewith, and it wil supple his sinewes, and bring them to their true course. If you wash his limbes with the grounds of Beere or Ale made warme, and then rope them vp with hay-ropes wet in the same, it will recouer a straine. If you take of the flower of linseed, of turpentine, and of life hony, of each a like, and boyle them with white wine vntill they be thicke like vnto to oyntment: then spread it on a cloath, and lay it to the griefe, and it will take away any ache or paine in the sinewes: likewise a plaister of wine Lees and wheate flowre, or a plaister of blacke sope and boares grease will doe the like. If you mixe nerue oyle, oyle de Bay, and Aqua vitæ together, and warme it, and chafe it in, and vpon,

on, and about the ſtraine, it wil take the anguiſh quite away. If the griefe bee in the ſhoulder, or the hinder legge, then burne him vpon the very ioynt, by taking vp the skinne with a paire of pinſons, and thruſt the skin through with a hot Iron ouerthwart; and if this cure him not, then his paine is betwixt the thin skinne and the bone, which muſt then be rowelled. If the griefe bee in the ſhoulder, or in the hippe, or elſewhere, then let him bloud, and ſauing the bloud, mixe therewith the powder of Frankinſence, and annoynt the horſe with the ſame. If the griefe be onely in the ſinewes, then take the plaiſter called *Sologliatium*, made of gum-dragant, new wax, pitch and turpentine mixt together; or elſe take the yolkes of two egges, an ounce of Frankinſence, and a little branne, and beate them wel together, and lay it to the paine. If the griefe doe proceede from a hot cauſe, then let the horſe bloud, and with that bloud mixe vinegar and oyle, and annoint him, and chafe it well in. But if it do proceed from a cold cauſe, then let him bleed a little, and with figges ſoaked a day in warme water, and as much muſtardſeed, make a plaiſter, and lay to the griefe. If it come eyther by any ruſh or ſtripe, let the horſe bloud, and with that bloud mingle ſtrong vinegar, egges ſhels and all, three ounces of *Sanguis Draconis*, foure of Bole-armony, and fiue of wheate meale, and daube it all ouer the ſore place. If the griefe bee in the ſhoulder, and the skinne broken, take galles of *Soris* pund, and mingle them with hony, and lay it to the ſore. If the paine come from the ſtiffeneſſe of his ioynts, take a pound of blacke ſope, and boyle it in a quart

quart of Ale til it be thicke, and it wil comfort the ioynts. If the ioynts be ſweld, take pitch, rozen, turpentine, and *Sanguis Draconis* molten together, and lay it to the ſwelling ſomething warme, and it wil either take away the ſwelling, or elſe ripen it and make it runne. If you take of the oyle of Camomile, oyle of Dil, butter and Agripa, of each a like quantity; or make a plaiſter of an ounce of Turpentine, halfe an ounce of Verdigreaſe, and the marrow of a Stag; or bathe the horſe with warme water, wherein Roſemary hath beene ſodden, and it wil eaſe any paine whatſoeuer. If the horſes paine bee in his ſhoulder, firſt with a Lancet pricke the skin through betweene the ſpade bone and the marrow bone: then putting in a quil, blow the skinne from the fleſh euen all about: then thruſting out the winde with your hand, put in a rowell; then take a pottle of ſtale vrine, ſeeth it with a pound of butter, and as much ſwines greaſe, and a handfull of mallowes, a handfull of tanſie, a handfull of veruine, a handfull of red nettles, a handfull of ſouthernwood, and a handful of balme leaues; then beate them all well together, and ſo annoynt his ſhoulder therewith, and let him not goe forth of the ſtable for ſeauen dayes. If his griefe bee in any neather ioynt, then take a handfull of Laurell leaues, and of Prime-roſe leaues, of ground Iuie, of crow-foot, of Mallowes, of red fennell, and of fine hay, of each of them ſeuerally as much; ſeeth them well together, and then let them ſtand foureteene dayes; then bathe the ioynt once a day, and binde of the hearbs vnto it for foure dayes together: then after chafe into the ioynt freſh greaſe and oyle

mixt

mixt together, and it will eaſe all his paine. Now to conclude, if any ioynt or member about a horſe be by any fluxe of humors ſweld and growne out of ſhape, whereby the horſe goeth ſtiffe, and halteth; then to diſſolue thoſe humours, take Wormwood, Sage, Roſemary, the barke of the Elme tree, and of a Pine, together with lin ſeed, and booling theſe together, make a bathe or Pultus thereof, and lay it to the ſicke member, and it will diſſolue the humours, and ſo likewiſe will figges, being ſtampt with ſalt, and applied to the ſore.

Three rare and well approued medicines which will cure any manner of ſtraine or ſwelling whatſoeuer, be it hard or ſoft, by what accident ſoeuer it ſhall come.

IF the ſtraine be newly taken, you ſhall then take Vinegar of the beſt a pint, and of ſweete butter better then a quarter of a pound, and melt them ouer the fire: then with fine wheat branne, make it into a Pultus vpon the fire, and lay it as hot to the ſtraine as the horſe is able to endure it without ſcalding: and doe thus morning and euening till the ſtraine be aſſwaged. But if the ſtraine be of longer continuance, then take Mallowes and Chicke-weede, and boyle them either in the grounds of Ale, or of ſtrong vrine, and lay them very hot to the ſtraine. Laſtly, if your ſtraine, by length of time, or euill medicines, be growne, in mens imaginations, paſt cure, the ſinewes and ſwelling being bony, hard, and knotted; then you ſhall take peece-greaſe, which is made of

Shooe-

Shooe-makers ſhreds, and melting it on the fire, annoynt and bathe the ſtraine therewith very hot, not onely chafing it exceedingly with your hand, but alſo holding a hot barre of Iron againſt it to make the oyntment ſinke in: then take a fine linnen rowler, and rowle vp the legge gently: doe thus once a day, and it will take away the greateſt and moſt deſperate ſtraine that may be.

Chap. 83.

Of Enterfearing.

ENterfearing is either when a horſe through a naturall ſtraitneſſe in his pace, or through euill and too broad ſhooing goeth ſo narrow behind with his hinder feete, that he heweth the one againſt the other vpon the inſide of his legges, euen with the paſtorne ioynt; and by meanes of this hewing there groweth hard mattery ſcabs, which are ſo ſore, that they many times make the horſe to halt much. The ſignes are the ſtraitneſſe of his going, and the apparantneſſe of the ſcabbes. Now the cure conſiſteth as much in preuention as in ſalue: For the preuention, which is to keepe a horſe from hewing one legge vpon another, it conſiſteth onely in the office of the Smith, and the making of his hinder ſhooes, whereby he may goe wider, and not touch; of which we ſhall ſpeake more at large when we intreate of paring and ſhooing of each ſeuerall foote. For the ſalue which is to cure the hurt being once receiued, it is thus: You ſhall take of May butter (if you can get it) or elſe freſh greaſe, or freſh butter, with

with a quantity of Rozen, and as much Nerue-oyle: then frye them all together in a panne, and then let it ſtand till it be cold, and put it in a pot, and put to it a little cow-dung: and then plaiſter-wiſe apply this vnto the ſore, renewing it once a day, and it will not onely heale this ſore, but alſo any pricke by a naile whatſoeuer.

Chap. 84.

Of the ſhackle-gall, or gall in the Paſtorne, either by ſhackle or locke.

IF a horſe be galled in the paſtorne, on the heele, or vpon the cronet, either with ſhackle or locke, as it many times happens in the champion countreyes, where the Farmers vſe much to teather their horſes: then for ſuch a ſore you ſhall take hony and verdigreaſe, and boyle them together till the one halfe be conſumed, and that it looke red: then after it is a little cooled, you ſhall annoynt the ſore place therewith twice a day, and then ſtrew vpon it a litle chopt flox to keepe on the ſalue. This is excellent for any gall whatſoeuer, and chiefly for the Scratches.

Chap. 85.

Of hurts in the legges which commeth by caſting in the halter.

THe hurts which a horſe getteth by being caſt in the halter, are many, and proceede from diuers accidents, as when the reines of the Coller are ſo long, and will not run to and fro, that the horſe gets one or both his fore-legs ouer them, and then with ſtruggling

ſtruggling, woundeth and galeth them much; or elſe when a horſe hauing deſire to ſcratch his eare with his hinder foote, rubbing it to and fro, in the end faſteneth his foote either in the coller or the reines; and then the more he ſtriueth to looſen it, the more hee galleth and woundeth it, euen ſometimes to the very bone. Now for the cure, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, it is thus: Take of oyle oliue one ounce, of Turpentine two or three ounces; melt them together ouer the fire, and then put thereunto a little Waxe, and working them all well together lay it plaiſter-wiſe vnto the ſore renewing it once a day vntill it be whole. Now there be other Farriers which onely annoynt the ſore with the whites of egges and fallet oyle mixt together; and then when the ſore commeth to a ſcabbe, annoynt it with butter being molten vntill it looke browne. Now for mine owne part, the cure which I principally vſe for this ſorrance, is to take of Waxe, of Turpentine, and of Hogges greaſe, of each one ounce, and hauing mingled and molten them well together, put them into a pot: then take an ounce of Verdigreaſe beaten to powder, and an ounce of Hogges greaſe, and mixe them very well together, and put that into another pot: then when you dreſſe the ſore, take of the firſt ſalve two parts, and of the latter a third part, and mixing them well together in the palme of your hand, annoynt all the ſore place therewith, doing thus once a day till it be whole.

Chap. 86.

Of the Scratches, Crepanches, or Rats tailes.

THe Scratches, Crepanches, or Rats-tailes, be in al but one forrance, are long, scabby, dry chaps, or rifts, growing right vp and downe, and ouerthwart on the hinder legges, iust from the fetlocke vnto the place of the Curbe; and as the Paines are vnder the fetlocke, so the Scratches are aboue the fetlocke; and doe proceed either from dry melancholy humors ingendred by outward filth, or else by the fuming of the horses dung lying either neere or vnder him. The signes are both the apparant sight, and the easie feeling of the same, besides the staring, deuiding, and curling of the haire, as also that the sorrance will stinke much. The cure is according to the opinion of the old Farriers, to take any of these former medicines whatsoeuer, which are already recited, either for the Paines, or Mules; yet for your more particular vnderstanding, you shall knowe, these medicines are most proper for this sorrance. First, you shall shaue away the haire, and make the sore raw: then take of Turpentine halfe a pound, of hony halfe a pint, of hogges grease halfe a quarterne, and three yolkes of egges, and of Bo'ear-mony a quarterne beaten into powder, of beane flowre halfe a pint; mixe all these well together and make a salue thereof, and then with your finger annoynt all the sore places therewith, and let the horse come in no wet during the cure. Other Farriers vse (and sure it is the better practise)

first after they haue shaued away the haire, and laid the sore raw, to wash it well with old Vrine very warme; then take blacke sope, mustard, and vinegar, of each a like quantity, and mixe therewith some of an Oxe gall, them stirre them well together, and chafe and rubbe the place therewith, and bind thereto a cloath, so vse it once a day till it be whole: then after annoynt it with neates foote oyle to supple the sinewes againe. Others vse to take the finest hay, and burne it to ashes vpon a faire board, then mixe it with neates foote oyle, and make a salue thereof; then all to rub the sores vntill they bleed almost, and then annoynt them with the saide salue, and rope his legges and keepe them from wet. Others vse after they haue washt the sore with old stale, then to take a quantity of strong mustard, vinegar, gray sope, barrowes grease, and some quicksiluer; mixe them together, and therewith annoynt the sore. Other Farriers take a quantity of vnsleckt lime, halfe so much blacke sope, and so much of strong vinegar as shall suffice to make it like an oyntment: then the haire being cut away, and the sore washt with vrine, lay to this oyntment, renewing it not the space of two dayes, and it will kill the sorrance: then wash the place once or twice with warme wine; then after heale it with Turpentine and Hogges grease molten together, and in no wise let the horse come in any wet. Others vse after they haue washt the sore place with vrine, and clipt away the haire, and made the wound raw, to take Butter and Tarre, of each a like, and boyling them together, annoynt all the sore place therewith euery day till it be whole.

Others

Others take of hony and verdigreaſe of each a like, and boyle them together vntill halfe bee conſumed, and then annoynt the ſore therewith once a day vntill it be whole. Others of our latter Farriers vſe either to ſhaue off the haire, or ſcald it off with orpiment, and vnſleckt Lime boyld in ſtrong Lees; then waſh it with warme Vinegar, or white Wine, then when it is dry annoynt it with this oyntment. Take of Orpiment one ounce, of Verdigreaſe three ounces, of ſoote fiue ounces, a little vnſleckt lime, and of hony one pound; mingle them all well together vpon a ſoft fire, and being made like an oyntment, vſe it as aforeſaid, once a day to the ſore; or elſe take hony, ſope, verdigreaſe, vnſleckt lime and vinegar, and boyle them with allome, galles, and maile, till it come to a plaiſter, and then apply it vnto the ſore; or elſe boyle ſallet oyle with a little ſuet and ſope, then skimme it and take it from the fire; then adde an ounce of quicke-ſiluer reſolued, two ounces of verdigreaſe, three ounces of vnſleckt lime, and one ounce of white waxe: when all theſe are well mixt together, and made into a ſalue, then apply it once a day vnto the ſore, vntill it be whole.

Other Farriers vſe, after they haue ſhaued the place, to boyle vinegar and the skinne of lard or Bacon together, and to apply that to the ſore three dayes together: then take larde molten, litargie, maſticke, verdigreaſe, and ſoote mingled together, with goates milke, and lay it to, renewing it once a day vntill the ſore be healed. The ſcraping of a pannes bottome mixt with the inner pils of Elder, are alſo good for the Scratches; or new mans dung applyed for

fiue dayes, and after annoynt the sore with oyle and sope mixt together. Others take of vnsleckt lime, the powder of glasse, and of verdigrease, of each one an ounce; of Orpiment an ounce, of oyle and of fresh grease, of each foure ounces; mixe all these well together, and apply it to the sore vntill it bee whole; If you take blacke Snailes and Burre-rootes, and beate them together, it will also helpe this sorrance. Other Farriers take an ounce of Sope, two ounces of vnsleckt Lime, and as much Lye, or strong Vinegar as will temper it, and so dresse the sore vntill it be whole. Others take Fenugreeke and beate it, three Oranges cut in peeces, halfe a pound of sheepes suet, new sheepes dung; boyle all these in the grounds of good Ale, and then bathe the horse therewith as hot as may be: then rope him vp with hay ropes, and so let him stand three daies, then bathe him so againe.

Others take hogs grease, sope, brimstone, soote, and hony; boyle them, and lay them to cold, you may also adde verdigrease: but before you lay on this oyntment, scrabe the scabbes off and make them bleede, and rubbe them with sope, mustard, and vinegar, mixt together.

Chap. 87.

Of the Ringbone.

THe Ringbone is a sorrance, which appeareth aboue vpon the cronet of the hoofe, being a certaine hard gristell going sometimes round about the same: It proceedeth as some Farriers hold

opinion

opinion either from some blow of an other horse, or by striking the horses foote against some stubbe, or stone, or such like accident: but surely I holde that it also proceedeth from some imperfection in nature; forasmuch as I haue seene many foales foaled with ring-bones on their feete. The ring-bones do breed a viscous and slimy humour, which resorting to the bones that are of their owne nature cold and dry, waxeth hard, and cleaueth to some bone, and so in processe of time becommeth a bone. The signes of the sorrance are, the apparant sight of the sorrance, being higher then any part of the cronet, the staring of the haire, and the halting of the horse; and the cure according to ancient Farriers, is first to scarifie the skin aboue the ring-bone with a lancet; then take a great onion and pick out the chore; then put into it verdigrease and vnsleckt lime, then couer the hole, and roast the onion soft, then bruise it in a mortar, and so very hot lay it to the ring-bone doe thus foure dayes together, and it will cure it. Others of the old Farriers vse first to wash the sorrance with warme water, and shaue away the haire: then scarifie it lightly with the point of a razour so as the bloud may issue forth: then dresse it with *Cantharides* and *Euforbium* in such sort as hath beene taught for the splent, vsing him, and curing him after the same manner; but when the haire doth beginne to grow againe, then draw the sore place with a hot drawing Iron in strait lines, from the pastorne downe to the coffin of the hoofe, in this manner: and let the edge of the drawing Iron be as thicke as the backe of a meate-knife, and burne him no deeper

per then that the skin may looke yellow: that done, couer the burning with pitch and rozen molten together, and clap thereon floxe of the horſes owne colour, and aboue three dayes after lay againe ſome of the laſt mentioned plaiſter, and alſo new floxe vpon the old, and there let them remaine till they fall away of themſelues. Others doe vſe to ſhaue off the haire, and to ſcarifie the ſore with a launcet vntill it bleed: then ſtrew vpon it the powder of Tartar, and Salt, of each a like mixt together, and binde it ſtrait: then after annoynt it with freſh greaſe; or elſe ſoften the ring-bone with the skinne of old bacon, the fatte being ſcraped off, that you may ſee through the skinne, and layd to after it is ſhauen and made bleed, after launce it and let out the ring-bone. Others vſe to launce the skinne with a razor; then opening the skinne with a cornet, pricke the ring-bone. Laſtly, ſtrew vpon it the powder of vitriolle, and bind it on, ſo as it may not ſtirre for nine dayes; then thruſt out the matter which is diſſolued. Laſtly, waſh it with Salt, with Vrine and Vinegar mixt together. Other Farriers do vſe, after they haue ſhaued it, to lay vnto it a plaiſter made of bran, and hony, with the young leaues of wormewood, pellitory, and *Branke-vrſine* mingled with Swines greaſe, and beaten together, and boyled, and vſed as hot as the horſe can ſuffer it. This medicine will not onely cure the Ring-bone, but any other hard ſwelling whatſoeuer. Alſo a plaiſter of the leaues of Smallage being beaten to peeces, is not onely good for this ſorrance, but for any windgall alſo. To waſh a ring-bone continually with ſtrong vinegar will abate it: or elſe to ſhaue away the haire,

haire, and take halfe a Lemmon, and ſprinkle Arſnicke thereupon, and lay it to the ring-bone, and it will eate it away off; if twice or thrice a day you bind a hard egge burning hot vnto the Ring-bone, it will take it away. Laſtly, if you take *Euforbium*, and mingle it with the oyle of Iuniper, ſalt, and pepper, and ſo apply it to the Ring-bone, it will in a very ſhort ſpace conſume the Ring-bone quite away; alwayes prouided that you keepe the horſe from any wet during his cure.

Chap. 88.

Of hurts on the Cronet by croſsing one foote on another.

IF your horſe by croſſing one foote vpon another, chance to wound or hurt the cronet of his hoofe, you ſhall then, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, firſt waſh it well with VVine, or with warme vrine, and then lay vnto it the white of an egge mixt with chimney ſoote and ſalt; and that if it be renewed once a day, will in two or three daies dry vp the ſore. Other Farriers vſe firſt to pare or cut away the hoofe that it touch not the hurt, and keepe it cleane from filth, by waſhing it with vrine; then ſeeth two egges hard, and take off the ſhelles, then preſſe them with your hand long, & firſt to roaſt it hot, and tie it to hard; when that is cold, vſe the other: after make a plaiſter of ſoote, ſalt, and oyle boyled together, and lay it to the ſore, renewing it once a day vntill it be whole.

Chap. 89.
Of the Crowne Scabbe.

THE Crowne Scabbe is a filthy and ſtincking Scabbe, breeding round about the cronets of the hoofe, and is a cankerous and painefull ſorrance, it commeth oft-times by meanes that the horſe hath beene bred in a fenny mariſh ground, where the cold, ſtriking corrupt humours vp to his feete, ingendreth this ſorrance, which is euer more painefull in the VVinter then in the Summer. The ſignes are, the haires of the cronet will be very thinne, and ſtaring like briſtles, and the cronets will be alwayes mattering, and run on water. Now the cure, according to the opinion of many Farriers, is to take the skinne of Bacon, and lay thereon Soote and Salt beaten together, mingled with greaſe or ſuet, waxe, and pitch molten together; and if the fleſh chance to grow proud, eate it away eyther with Verdigreaſe beaten to powder, or with the ſcrapings of a Harts horne, or an Oxe horne, made into fine powder.

Other Farriers vſe to take of Sope, and of Hogs greaſe, of each halfe a pound, of bolearmony a little, of Turpentine a quarterne; and mixe them well together, and make a plaiſter and binde it faſt on, renewing it euery day once vntill it leaue running; and then waſh it with ſtrong vinegar, being luke warme, euery day once vntill the ſore be cleane dried vp, and let the horſe come in no wet vntill the ſorrance be whole.

Others

Others vse onely to bathe it continually with old stale sod in Salt, and that will drie vp the humor and heale it.

Chap. 90.
Of the Quitter-bone.

THe Quitter-bone is a hard round swelling vpon the cronet of the hoofe, betwixt the heele and the quarter, and groweth most commonly on the in-side of the foote: it breedeth commonly by the meanes of grauell gathered vnderneath the shooe, which fretteth inward, and forceth an vlcer to break vpward; or else it commeth by the cloying or pricking of some naile driuen by an ignorant Smith, the anguish whereof looseneth the gristle, and so breedeth euill humours, whereof the Quitter-bone springeth; the signes are, the horse will halte much, and the swelling is apparant to the eye, which in foure or fiue dayes commeth to a head, and will breake out with matter at a little deepe hole like a Fistula; and surely then this Quitter-bone, there is no outward sorrance whatsoeuer more dangerous vnto a horse. The cure thereof, according to the opinion of some of the ancient Farriers, is, first to cut the hoofe to the quicke: then seeth a Snake or an Adder til the flesh part from the bone, and be molten as an vnguent; then annoynt the sore place therewith very warme, euen to the bottome, and during the cure keepe the foote cleane from any filth; for this both dryeth and killeth the quitter-bone. Other of the old Farriers first burne about the quitter-bone with a hot

hot Iron, in manner of a halfe circle, and then with the ſame draw another right through the midſt thereof in this ſort: then take of arſnicke the quantitie of a bean beaten into fine powder, and put it into the hole, thruſting it downe to the bottome with a quill, and ſtop the mouth of the hole with a little tow, and binde it ſo faſt with a cloath and a rowler, that the horſe may not come at it with his mouth, and ſo let it reſt for that day; and the next day if you ſee that the ſore looketh blacke within, then it is a ſigne that the arſnicke did worke well; then to allay the burning of it, taint the hole with flaxe dipt in hogges greaſe, and turpentine molten together, and couer the taint with a plaiſter of pitch, roſen, waxe and turpentine molten together, but there muſt be as much turpentine as of all the reſt: And thus you muſt continue to do vntill you haue gotten out the chore, which the arſnicke did eate; then ſhall you ſee whether the looſe griſtell in the bottome bee vncouered or not; and if it be not vncouerd, then feele with your fingar or with a quill, whether you be nigh it or not; and if you be, then raiſe the griſtle with a little crooked inſtrument, and pull it cleane out with a paire of ſmall nippers or mullets made for the purpoſe: that done, thruſt it againe with a full taint, dipt in the foreſaid oyntment, to aſſwage the anguiſh of the laſt dreſſing, and ſtop it had to the intent that the hole may not ſhrinke together or cloſe vp: and the next day take out that taint, and taint it anew with holy and verdigreaſe boyld together, till they looke red, renewing it euery day once vntill it be whole, keeping

keeping alwayes the mouth of the sore as open as you may, to the entent that it heale not vp too fast, and let not the horse come in any wet, nor trauell vntill hee bee perfectly whole. Other Farriers vse to cut the hoofe open to the quicke; then take *Galbanum*, *Sagapenum*, pitch of Greece, *Olibanum*, *Mastick*, oyle, and white waxe, of each an ounce, with halfe a pound of sheepes suet: melt them vpon a soft fire, and incorporate them well together, and therewith dresse the sore place vntill it be whole. Others vse, after the sore is opened, to put in salt of Tartar, and when that hath eaten away the Quitter-bone, to heale it vp with hony and verdigrease boild as aforesayd. Others take of Goates dung two ounces, of sheepes tallow three ounces, and as much strong vinegar as will suffice to boyle them well in, and then therewith to dresse the Quitter-bone, vntill it be cleane whole.

Chap. 91.

Of grauelling a horse.

GRauelling is a certaine fretting of grauell, sand, or dirt, vnder the foote betwixt the sole and the shooe, sometimes on the inside, and sometime on the outside of the foote, and sometimes of both sides of the heele. It commeth, as I sayd, by meanes of little grauell stones getting betwixt the hoofe, or calking or sponge of the shooe, which by continuall labour and trauell of the horse, doth eate through the hoofe into the quicke of the foote, and the rather if the horses heeles bee soft and weake,

or

or that the shooe doe lie flat to his foote, so as the grauell being gotten in it, can not get out againe. The signes whereof are these, the horse will halte much, and couet to go most on his toe, to fauour his heele, and the softer the way is, the more is the horses ease. Now for the cure, according vnto the old Farriers, it is thus; first pare the hoofe till you may see the sore, then take an ounce of virgin waxe, and a quarter of an ounce of Rozen, and a quarter of Deeres suet, and halfe an ounce of Boares grease, and beate them all well together in a mortar, and then melt them together on the fire; that done, dip good store of flaxe therein, and so stop vp the sore close and hard, and then you may trauell the horse whither you please; and doe thus once a day vntill the foote be sound. Other of the old Farriers vse, first to pare the hoofe, and to get out the grauell with a drawing knife, leauing none behinde; then stop the sore place with turpentine and hogs grease molten together, and layd on with a little towe or flaxe, and then clappe on the shooe, to keepe in the stopping, renewing it euery day once vntill it bee whole, and suffer the hoofe to come in no wet vntill it bee healed. Now you must vnderstand, that if a grauelling be not well stopped to keepe downe the flesh, it will rise higher then the houe, and so put the Farrier to much more paine, both in bolstering it and abating that ill growne substance. Others vse onely to pare the foote, and picke out all the grauell cleane, then wash it well with Beere and Salt; then melt into it tallow, rozen, and pitch: then couering it hard and close with flaxe, set on the shooe

againe, and doe thus once a day. Others vſe after they haue cleanſed the ſore, to lay hurds into it, being dipt in the white of egges, then after heale it with ſalt beaten ſmall and mixt with ſtrong vinegar, or elſe with the powder of Galles, Salt, and Tartar, mixt together, which alſo is good for any cloying or pricking.

Chap. 96.
Of Surbating.

SVrbating is a continuall beating of the hooſe againſt the ground, and it commeth ſometimes by meanes of euill ſhooing lying too flat to his foote, or by going long bare-foote; and ſometimes by the hardneſſe of the ground, and the high lifting of the horſes feete, either in his trot, or in his amble; and the horſes which are moſt ſubiect to this ſorrance, or thoſe which haue either great round feete, or ſuch as are flat footed, the Coffins whereof are weake and tender, and alſo thoſe which haue weake heeles. The ſignes of the griefe are, the horſe will halt much, and goe creeping and ſtiffe, as if hee were halfe foundred; and the cure, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, is to roaſt a couple of egges exceeding hard, and then in the very violence of their heate, to burſt them in the horſes feete, and then powre hot boyling Sallet oyle alſo amongſt them, and ſo ſtop the ſhooe vp cloſe with a peece of leather, and two croſſe ſplents of wood, and do thus thrice in one fortnight, and it will helpe him.

Others

Others of the ancient Farriers, take off the horses shooes, and pare him as little as may be; and if the shooes be not easie, that is to say, long, large, and hollow enough, then make them so, and tacke them on againe with foure or fiue nailes: that done, stoppe his feete with hogges grease, and branne boyled together so hot as may be, and also couer all the Coffin round about with the same, binding all in together with a cloath, and a list fastned about the ioynt, renewing it euery day once vntill it bee sound; and giue the horse during the cure warme water to drinke, and let him stand dry, and not haue much trauell.

Now if your horse surbate in your trauell, if euery night you stop his feete well with Cowes dung, or with Cowes dung and vinegar, it will make him endure out his iourney.

Chap. 92.

Of the pricke in the soale of the foote, either by treading on a naile, or any other sharpe thing.

IF a horse in his trauell chance to treade either on stubbe, naile, thorne, or any other sharpe thing whatsoeuer, by meanes whereof hee is prickt in the sole of the foote, the rider shall perceiue the same by the sudden faltring of the horse, who will instantly stand still and lift vp his foote, as desiring helpe: And if it chance at any other time, then the halting of the horse, and the dilligent searching of a carefull Farrier must finde out the mischiefe.

chiefe. Now the cure, according to the opinion of the auncient Farriers, is firſt to pull off the ſhooe, and pare the foote, and with a drawing knife vncouer the hole, making the mouth ſo broad as a two-pence: then tacke on the ſhooe againe; that done, ſtop it by powring into the hole Turpentine and Hogges greaſe molten together, and lay ſome flaxe or tow vpon it; and then ſtoppe all the horſes foote with Cowes dung, nnd ſo couering with a peece of leather, ſplent it with two croſſe ſtickes ſo as the ſtopping may abide in, renewing it euery day once vntill it be whole, and let the horſe tread in no wet.

Now you muſt be very carefull in the curing of this ſorrance: For if it bee not hea'ed from the bottome, beſides that it is dangerous to the life of the horſe, It is alſo a great hazard that the ſore will breake out at the toppe of the hoofe, and ſo looſen the hoofe round about, and perhaps make it fall cleane away; but if you ſee that it beginne to breake out aboue, then make a greater iſſue beneath by opening the hole wide, and taking more of the ſole away, that the fleſh may haue the more liberty: then take of Bolearmony halfe a quarterne, and of beane flowre as much, and two egges; beate them, and mingle them well together, and make a plaiſter thereof vpon tow, and lay it round about the cronet, binde it faſt on, and ſo let it remaine the ſpace of two dayes, and then renew it againe, not failing ſo to do euery two dayes vntill you ſee it wax hard and firme aboue: for this plaiſter being reſtrictiue, will force the humours to reſort alwayes downe-

downeward ; which humours must be drawne out with Turpentine and hogges grease, as before, vntill it leaue mattering ; and then dry it vp with burnt Allome beaten into powder, and strewed vpon the sore, with a little flaxe laid againe vpon that, continuing so to doe euery day once vntill it bee hardened ; and let not the horse come in any wet vntill it bee whole. Other Farriers vse to taint the sore with Tallow, Tarre, and Turpentine being molten together, and annoynt all the coffin and cronet of the hoofe with Bolearmony and vinegar beaten together till the sore bee whole, especially if the thing which did pricke the horse was venemous or rusty.

Chap. 93.

To draw out either Stub, Thorne, or Iron, either out of the foote, or any other part of the body.

IF either the Stub, the Thorne, the Iron, or any thing whatsoeuer, wherewith your horse is wounded, begotten so deepe into the flesh that you cannot get hold vpon it to pull it out; then, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, (if you finde that albeit it be to deepe, yet it is not much too deepe) you shall take a good quantity of blacke Sope, and lay it to the sore for a whole night, and it will make it to appeare, so as you may pull it out with a paire of nippers : but if it lye very deepe, then you may open the place with a launcet, and thrusting in your mullets or nippers, pull it out by strength, and afterwards heale vp the wound, as was before taught

in

in the last chapter. Other Farriers say, that the rootes of reedes being stampt and mixt with hony, it will draw out any stub or naile, so will also blacke snailes being stampt and wrought with fresh butter. Now if the place be much swolne, then it is good to mollifie it with a plaister made of wormwood, parietory, beares foote, hogges grease, and hony well boyled and mixt together, which will asswage any new swelling that commeth by stripe, or otherwise. Now when you haue gotten out that which you sought for, then you shall powre into the wound scalding oyle oliue; when that is cold, powre into it as hot turpentine; when that is cold, strew on the powder of sulphur, and then bolster his foote or the sore with hurds, and keepe it from all wet and filthinesse.

Chap. 94.
Of the Figge.

IF a horse hauing receiued any hurt, as is before said, either by stub, great naile, thorne, bone, splent or stone, either in the sole, or any other part of the foote, and be not well dressed, and perfectly cured, there will grow in that place a certaine superfluous peece of flesh, like vnto a figge, full of little white graines, as you see are in a figge. The cure whereof, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, first with a hot Iron to cut the figge cleane away, and keepe the flesh downe with turpentine, hogges grease, and a little wax molten together and laid on with a litle tow, stopping the hole hard that the flesh rise not, renewing it once a day vntill the sore bee

whole. Now other of our latter Farriers vse after they haue, as before said, cut away the figge, then to take the croppes of young nettles, and chopping them very smal, lay them vpon a cloath, iust as bigge as a figge: then take the powder of verdigrease, and strew it thinne vpon the chopt nettles, and so bind it to the sore, renewing it once a day vntill the hoofe haue couered the sore, and this is a most certaine cure.

Chap. 95.

Of a Retrait.

A Retrait is when a horse by the ill gouernment of the Smith, is prickt in the foot with some ill driuen naile, yet in such sort that it is immediately espied, and the naile drawne backe againe; and although it proceedeth oftest from the negligence of the Smith, yet it may also come by reason of the weakenesse of the naile, and the hollownesse of the shanke: for when the naile is a little too weake, the point many times bendeth awry into the quicke, when it should go right forth; and when it is hollow it shiuereth in the driuing into two parts, whereof one part razeth the quicke in pulling out, or else perhaps breaketh asunder, and so remaineth still behind: and this kinde of pricking is the worst of all other, because it will rankle worst, in as much as the flaw cankereth and remaineth still in the foot. The signes hereof are, first the apparant shrinking and strugling of the horse so soone as the quicke is touched; and next his much halting: lastly you shall search his foot:

foot with a hammer, by knocking vpon the clinch of euery naile: for when you knocke vpon that naile where the griefe is, the horſe will ſhrinke vp his foot; and if that will not ſerue, then grope the hooſe with a paire of pinſons round about vntill you haue found the place grieued. Now the cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is firſt to pull off the ſhooe, and then open the place grieued, either with a butteris, or with a drawing knife, ſo that you may perceiue either by feeling or ſeeing, whether there be any peece of naile or not; if there be, then pull it cleane out: after take of nettles halfe a handfull, and bruiſe them in a mortar, and put thereto a ſpoonefull of redde vinegar, and a ſpoonefull of blacke ſope, and two ounces of brockes greaſe, or the fat of ſalt Bacon, and bray all theſe well together, and ſtoppe well the hole of the ſore with this, and then tacke on the ſhooe againe, and you may ſafely aduenture to trauell him. Other Farriers vſe, after they haue opened the ſore, to ſtop the hole with Turpentine, Waxe and Sheepes ſuet molten together, and ſo powred hot into the hole; and then lay a little tow vpon it, and clap on the ſhooe againe, renewing it thus once euery day vntill it bee whole; during which time, the horſe muſt not come in any wet, and it muſt bee ſtopped in this ſort, though it be but prickt, without any peece of naile remaining: and if for lacke of looking to in time, this retrait cauſeth the horſe to breake out, then you ſhall cure it either with a reſtrictiue plaiſter of Bolearmony, beane flowre and egges, mentioned in the 97 chapter; or elſe with

chopt nettles and verdigreaſe ſpoken of in the laſt chapter. Now there be other Farriers, which not onely for this retrait, but for any pricke in the horſes foot, vſe after they haue laid open the wound, to take of turpentine one ounce, of tarre one ounce, of pitch one ounce, of beefe ſuet one ounce, and one head of garlicke; boyle them all together, and lay them to it ſo hot as may be ſuffered: and if it chance to breake out aboue the hoofe, then apply alſo the ſame medicine vnto it, and it will cure it.

Chap. 96.
Of Cloying.

A Horſe is ſaid to be cloyed with a naile or pricke with a naile, when the whole naile is ſtricken into the quicke of the foot, and ſo remaineth ſtill in the ſame, and is clinſed as other nailes be; by meanes whereof the horſe halteth extremely. Now this griefe is is knowne by ſearching the grieued place with a hammer or pinſons, as is before ſaid. Now for the cure, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, it is thus; if the horſe halt immediatly, then pull off his ſhooe, and open the hole vntill it begin to bleed, and then ſtoppe vp the hole with Turpentine, Waxe, and Sheepes ſuet boyled together, and powred in very hot, renewing it once a day vntill it be whole; and let the horſe tread in no wet, and let his ſhooe bee tackt on againe as ſoone as hee is dreſt. Others vſe onely to powre into the hole ſcalding butter, and that will heale it, or elſe to burne the hole with another naile, and that will heale it. Other Farriers vſe,

after

after they haue opened well the ſore, to take halfe a pound of Frankinſence, a pound of Rozen, a pound af pitch of Greece, halfe a pound of blacke pitch, a pound of new waxe, a pound of goats greaſe, halfe a pound of varniſh, halfe a pound of Turpentine, two ounces of oyle oliue; and melt them all together, and lay this vnto the hoofe plaiſter-wiſe, and it will not onely heale any pricke whatſoeuer, but alſo any cracks, chinks, or clifts in the hoofe howſoeuer they breed; prouided that you let the horſe treade in no wet during the cure; but if the ſore chance to breake out on the top of the hoofe, then you ſhall take two or three yelkes of egges, whites and all beaten together, and adde thereunto an ounce of Bolearmony, and as much beane or wheate flowre as will thicken the ſame; then make a plaiſter thereof two fingers broad, and as long as will go round about on the top of the horſes hoofe, bind it faſt on with a roller, and renew it once a day vntill it be whole.

Other Farriers vſe, after they haue ſearched and laid open the wound, to put into it hurdes dipt in the white of an egge: then ſtoppe the hole with ſalt beaten very ſmall, mingled with veruine and ſtrong vinegar, and couer it with flaxe dipt in ſtrong vinegar; or elſe holding vp the horſes foote, powre into the wound hotte ſcalding oyle oliue; and when that is cold, powre in hot Turpentine, and that being cold, ſtrew vpon it the powder of Sulphure; then lay on a bolſter of flaxe: then ſhooe him, and keepe him from treading in any wet.

Others vſe to take Tallow, the powder of Sulphure, Mallowes, and very ſtrong Vinegar; boyle

them together vntill they bee thicke like an oyntment: then lay the same to the sore as hot as the horse can endure it, renewing it once in twelue houres till it be whole. Others vse to take of hony and vinegar, of each a like quantity, a little oyle, and suet of a he goat; boyle them with a soft fire, and stirre it: when it waxeth redde, adde verdigrease and vitriolle, of each a like, made into powder, still stirring it till it be thicke and redde; then stoppe the sore euery day therewith vntill it be whole, after you haue washed it well with salt and vinegar. Others take Pepper, Garlicke, and Cabbadge leaues beaten with swines grease, and lay that to the sore: or else take tallow and horse dung, and mixing them well together stop the sore therewith, and in short space it will cure it.

Other Farriers vse to take off the shooe, and hauing opened the sore, to wash it with wine: then lay vpon it the inner rinde of Elder, and through that melt in greaso with a hot Iron: then tacke on the shooe againe, and doe thus diuers dayes together, and it is a certaine cure.

Chap. 97.

Generall Obseruations for the Feete and Hooues of a Horse.

Forasmuch as the Feete and Hooues of a Horse are the onely instruments of labour, and that a small griefe in that part depriues a man of the benefite and vse of the rest; I thinke it not amisse before I speake of the particular diseases of the Hooues,

to

to ſhewe you ſome generall notes and obſeruations which you ſhall obſerue for the benefite of the feete. Now then, that firſt it is meete that you let your ſhooes before be ſhort, with ſtrong ſpunges, but no cawkins, and your nailes to haue ſpeciall good heads.

Let your ſhooes behinde haue no cawkin on the out-ſide; but if hee enterfeare, let the hawkin be on the in-ſide to make him caſt outward, and let the in-ſide of that ſide inward haue a welt an inch deep, or be twice as thicke as the out-ſide: but if all this helpe not his enterfearring, then bring him to an amble; but if hee will not amble, burne him with a hotte Iron betweene the legges, that the ſoreneſſe thereof may make him goe wide behinde, which is an ordinary practiſe amongſt the French men.

Let your ſhooes bee made of Iron that will not breake, of which our Engliſh is beſt, the Spaniſh next, and the Danske worſt. Let them alſo bee light, yet ſo as they may bee able to beare the burthen of the horſe, being broader at the toes, then at the cawkings or ſpunges.

Let your cawkins be ſhort, and blunt at the points, and your ſpunges long and thicke.

Let your ſhooe bee full as ſtraite as the horne of the hoofe ſo farre as the nayles goe, and from the two heele nailes backward, let the ſhooe bee broader then the hoofe, that the ſhooe may bee without the horne.

Giue vnto euery ſhooe nine nailes, on each ſide foure, and one in the midſt; and let the ſhankes of

the nailes be very flat and thinne, that if the hoofe be naught, they may yet keepe the ſhooe firme with little hold, and the neerer that your nailes are driuen backeward towards the heele (ſo it be without danger) the faſter the ſhooe will ſit, and the harder to be puld away.

Let your cawkins ſit a ſtrawes breadth behind the corner of the Coffin, and let your naile heads enter into the ſhooe, eſpecially on the outſide, and by all meanes hollow your ſhooe ſo little as may be.

Pare very little or nothing at all from the heele of a horſe; yet open his heeles as ſufficiently as may be, becauſe euer the heele muſt be thicke, and the toe thinne.

In faire waies paire the ſole thin, but in froſt, or ſtony wayes, pare as little as may be.

To conclude, when the hoofe is higher on the out-ſide, then on the in-ſide, it will make a horſe enteſeare; and when it is higher on the in-ſide, it will make a horſe ſtraddle, ſo that a faire ſmooth table is of all moſt conuenient. After trauell euer ſtoppe the in-ſide of the hoofe with Cowes dung, and rubbe the out-ſide and the cronet with the ſward of fat bacon: for that will keepe a tough, ſmooth, and a ſound hoofe.

Chap. 98.

Of looſening of the Hoofe.

A Hoofe is ſaid to bee looſened when there is a diſſolution or parting of the horne or Coffin of the Hoofe from the fleſh, at the ſetting on of the cronet.

cronet. Now if this dissolution or parting bee round about the cronet, then it proceedeth by meanes of some foundring; but if it bee but in part, then it proceedeth from the anguish caused either by the pricking of some canell nayle, or other nayle piercing the sole, or quarters of the foote; or by some quitter bone, retraite, grauelling, or cloying, or such like accident. The signes of the disease be these: When it is loosened by foundring, then it will breake first, and the dissolution will appeare on the fore part of the cronet, right against the toe, because the humour doeth couet alwayes to descend towards the toe; but if it proceede from pricking, grauelling, or such like, then the hoofe will loosen round about, equally euen at the first; but when it proceedes from some quitter-bone, or hurt vpon the cronet, then the hoofe will breake right aboue the place that is offended, and most commonly will goe no further. Now the cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, of what cause soeuer the loosening proceede, first to bee sure to open the hoofe in the sole of the foote, so as the humour may haue free passage downeward; and then to binde about the toppe of it, the restrictiue plaister spoken of in the 27. Chapter, and in the 100. Chapter, and in such sort as it is there written, and then heale it vppe with Turpentine and Hogges grease molten together. Others of the ancient Farriers take three spoonefull of Tarre, and a quarter of a pound of Rozen, and halfe a handfull of Tansie, and halfe a handfull of Rew, and halfe a handfull of redde Mints, and halfe an handfull of Southernewood

wood, and bray all these together in a mortar: then adde halfe a pound of butter, and a penyworth of virgine waxe; then melt them all together ouer the fire vntill it come to a thicke plaister or salue: then spread some of it vpon a cloth, and lay it to the sore, renewing it once a day for seuen dayes, and it will heale it. Others vse to take the braines of a swine, or a pig, and to stop his hoofe very well therewith three daies together, renewing it twice or thrice a day, and it will grow fast, and indure as well, or rather better then euer it did. Other Farriers vse to cut out the sole below, letting it bleed well; after stoppe it with hurds dipt in the whites of eggs: tie this to for twenty foure houres, then wash it with strong Vinegar warmed, after fill it with tartar and salt of each a like quantity, let that remaine in two dayes: then annoint it with the oyntment made of *Olibanum*, Masticke, pitch of Greece, of each a like, and a little *Sanguis Draconis*, and of new waxe and sheepes suet as much as of the first, and melt and boyle them all very well together, and let this oyntment be applyed once a day till the sore be whole. But if you perceiue that any new hoofe come, then cut away the old, lest the hardnesse of the one hinder the tendernesse of the other; and then annoynt the new hoofe with suet, Oyle, and Waxe, of each a like boyled together, to make it grow; or else with pitch of Greece, Masticke, *Olibanum*, *Sanguis Draconis* and *Galbanum*, of each a like, being molten with suet: for this will make the new hoofe to grow also; so will also new waxe, hony, oyle, swines grease, and sheepes suet, being boyled together; and when it is cold, adde Masticke,

Sanguis

Sanguis draconis, and Frankinsence, and incorporate them all together; for nothing sooner then this will make either new or old hoofe grow. Others vse to take shell snailes, and stampe them, and lay them twice a day to the sore, and it will either fasten the old hoofe, or quickly bring forth a new. Now there be other Farriers which first fill the sore with Turpentine, and after it hath laine twenty foure houres, then wash the sore with vrine and Copporas water; then fill it either with verdigrease, or with sheepes tallow, pitch and rozen boyled together; in which, hauing dipt hurds, lay it to the sore very hot twice a day vntill it be whole.

Chap. 99.

Of casting the Hoofe.

THe casting of the hoofe is when the whole coffin thereof falleth cleane away from the foote; which commeth of all the former causes rehearsed in the last chapter, and is so apparant to the eye, that needeth none other signes. Now for the cure, it is thus, take of Turpentine one pound, of Tarre, halfe a pint, of vnwrought waxe halfe a pound, of sheepes suet halfe a pound, and of sallet oyle halfe a pint; boyle all these things together, and stirre them continually vntill they bee throughly mixt together; then make a boote of leather, with a strong sole fit for the horses foote, to be laced fast about the pastorne; then dresse his foote with the salue aforesaid, laid vpon flaxe or tow, and bolster or stop his foote with soft flaxe, as the boote may griene him

no-

no manner of wayes, renewing it euery day once vntill the new hoofe come: then as the hoofe beginneth to harden, if it grow either thicke, crumpled, or out of order; with a fine rape-file keepe it smooth and plaine till the hoofe bee perfect, and then put him to grasse, that there it may take a kindly hardning and toughnesse.

Chap. 100.

Of the Hoofe-bound.

THe hoofe-bound is nothing else but a shrinking in of the whole hoofe in the vpper part thereof, making the skinne to stare aboue the hoofe, and to grow ouer the same. It proceedeth from keeping the horses hoofes too dry in the stable, or from strait shooing, or from some vnnaturall heate after foundring; and the signes of the disease are, that the horse will halt much, and his hoofes will bee hot; and if you knocke vpon them with an hammer, they will sound hollow like an empty bottle; and if both his feete bee not hoofe-bound, then the sore foote will euer bee the lesser: and you shall also vnderstand, that this disease of some Farriers is called a dry foundring. Now for the cure thereof, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is thus: take a pound of the sward of bacon, and a quarterne of a pound of white Sope, and a handfull of Balme, and a handfull of Bay leaues, and foure or fiue branches of Rew, and stampe them well together; and then fry them, and lay them about the cronet of the hoofe very hot, suffering it so to abide the space

of

of fiue dayes,and then renue it,but in no caſe let him tread in any wet,and this will helpe him. Other of the ancient Farriers vſe , firſt to pull off his ſhooes, and to ſhooe him with halfe moone ſhooes , called *Lunets*, or *Lunet*, the ſhape whereof you ſhall ſee in another place ; then raze both the quarters of the hooſe with a drawing knife , from the cronet vnto the ſole of the foote, ſo deepe that you may ſee the dew come foorth : and if you make two razes , on each ſide , it ſhall be ſo much the better , and inlarge the hooſe the more;that done,annoynt all the hooſe aboue, next vnto the cronet, round about, with the oyntment deſcribed before in the laſt chapter of caſting the hooſe,continuing ſo to doe euery day once vntill he begin to amend;and let him be ridden vpon ſome ſoft ground an houre or two euery day once for the ſpace of a moneth ; and if he goe not well at the moneths end, then take off the halfe ſhooes, and pare all the ſoles, fruſhes and all ſo thinne , that you may ſee the dew come forth , and tacke on a whole ſhooe, and ſtop all the foot within with hogs greaſe and bran molten together , and laid very hot to the foote , renewing it euery day once the ſpace of nine dayes,to the intent the ſole may riſe ; but if this will doe no good , then take away the ſole cleane , and clap on a whole ſhooe , and ſtop toe foote with nettles and ſalt braid together ; yet ſtop it not too hard, to the intent the ſole may haue liberty to riſe;and let this bee renewed euery day once till the ſole bee growne againe,and let him be ſhod with *Lunets*,and ſo ſent to graſſe. Other Farriers vſe onely to raze the hooſe from the cronet to the verdge of the hooſe in

foure

foure or fiue places, and rub it twice or thrice a day with salt, and that will open the hoofe. Others vse onely to open the horse exceeding much at the heeles once a weeke, and to shooe him with very wide open shooes, and then for a moneth or two to draw him in some cart, that being forced to set his foote hard to the ground, hee may thereby stretch forth and widen his hoofe. Now to preuent this sorrance, it is good to annoynt his hoofes with neates foote oyle, or with Turpentine, and to stop them vnderneath with cowes dung.

Chap. 101.

Of the running or rotten Frush.

THE Frush, which of some is called the Frogge of the foote, is the tendereſt part of the hoofe towards the heele, and is fashioned like a forked Arrow head, being onely that part of the foote which Farriers cut forth, when they say they cut forth the sole of the horses foote. Now in this Frush breedeth many times a rottennesse or corruption proceeding of humours which commeth out of the legges, by which the legge is kept cleane from winde-gals, and all other rumors or swellings, by meanes that the humours haue passage that wayes; notwithstanding the mischiefe of this sorrance is greater then the benefite, becausse it maketh the horses foote so weake and tender, that hee is not able to treade vpon any hard ground. The signes of the sorrance are, the horse will halt much when he trauelleth either vpon loose stony ground, or vpon stiffe durty wayes, and goeth

goeth euer beſt vpon greene ſwarth; but aboue all, he halteth moſt when the paſſage of the humour is ſtopped with any grauell gathered into the Fruſh, and not being ſtopt, it will continually runne, and ſtinke ſo extremely that a man can hardly endure it; beſides, in ſome places it will looke raw. Now the cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is thus: Firſt take off the ſhooe, and pare away all the corrupt places, and make them rawe, ſo as you may ſee the water iſſue out of the raw places: then tacke on the ſhooe againe, being firſt made wide and large enough: that done, take of Soote one handfull, of Salt as much; bruiſe them well together in a diſh, and put thereto the whites of three egges, and temper them all together; and with a little tow dipt therein, ſtop all the foote, and eſpecially the Fruſh, and ſplent it in ſo as it may not fall out, renewing it once a day the ſpace of ſeuen dayes, and certainly it will cure him. Now during the cure, the horſe muſt reſt, and come in no wet; and at the ſeuen dayes end, leaue ſtopping him, and ride him abroad, and alwayes when hee commeth in, let his ſore foote be cleane waſhed: for there is no greater enemy vnto the ſorrance then grauell and durt. Other of our latter Farriers onely take off the ſhooe, and pare him well, and keepe the ſore cleane, both from durt and his owne dung, by waſhing it three or foure times a day with vrine, and that alone will cure him as well as any medicine.

CHAP.

Chap. 102.
Of euill Hooues.

HOrſes partly through a natural inclination, partly through the ſtonineſſe of the ſoyle wherein they are bred, and partly through miſchance or ill gouernment, will haue ill fauoured and naughty hooues, as either wrinkled or crumpled, or elſe moulded awry, or ſuch like: all which needes no ſignes, becauſe of the apparant ſight thereof: then to amend them, the beſt cure is with a fine rape-file to ſmooth the wrinckles away, and to annoynt the cronet of the hoofe with the fat ſward of bacon rubbed in ſoote: then let the horſe ſtand for at leaſt a fortnight vpon his owne dung, whereon you ſhall caſt good ſtore of water, onely remoue away the dung euery night; and then preſently after the change of the Moone, ſhooe the horſe ſtith ſtrong ſhooes, keeping the ſole of the ſoote by paring, ſo hollow as you can poſſible, and it will ſhape his hoofe to your pleaſure.

Chap. 103.
Of brittle Hooues.

IF a horſe either through the heate of his owne nature, or in that he hath beene either heated on his feete by labour, or foundred and euill cured, ſhall happen to haue his hooues ſo brittle and ſhort, that they wil hardly beare a ſhooe: the ſignes whereof are, the hoofe will be white and crumbling: then the beſt cure, according to the opinion of the beſt Farriers, is to take oxe dung and vinegar, and mixing them

them very well together, warme them on the fire, and so binde it both vnder and aboue round about the horses hoofe, and then lace on his boote of strong leather as is aforesaid in the chapter of casting of the hoofe. Other Farriers vse to let the horse stand vpon his owne dung, and annoynt all the vpper part of his hoofe with the fat of Bacon soode and mixt with Turpentine: And this you must doe euery day once till you see his houes come to some toughnesse. Others vse to take Turpentine, hogges grease, and hony, of each alike; melt them well together, and being warme annoint all the hoofe therewith: then dip tow therein, and fold it all about the horse foote both vnder and aboue; and then put on his boote: dresse him thus once a day, & once in two dayes let him stand foure houres without his boote, that his hoofe may grow as well hard as tough.

Chap. 104.

How to preserue Houes.

IF you meane to preserue your horses houes either from any of the former sorrances, or any other griefe whatsoeuer, you shall, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, take three heads of garlicke, a little bundle of Rew, sixe ounces of Allome beaten into powder, two pound of old grease, and the dung of an Asse; boyle them all very well together, and stoppe your horses hoofes therewith once a day. Other Farriers take of vinegar a quarterne, of Tarre halfe a pint, of Hogges grease halfe a pound, of oyle a pint, and a good handfull of woormewood,

and foure or fiue heads of garlicke; boyle all these together to a thicke oyntment, and therewith annoint all the horses hooses. Others vse to boile beans till they burst, and then temper them with hony, and therewith annoint all the hooses: or else wash all the hooses with warme vinegar, and then annotnt them with horehound, wormwood, and grease molten together.

Other Farriers take of *Olibanum* and new Waxe, of each an ounce: of *Dialthea* and Turpentine, of each three ounces, of butter foure ounces, of old oyle sixe ounces, and of sheepes suet and plantaine, of each a pound; boyle them all well together, and therewith annoint the hooses twice a day. Other Farriers annoynt his Hooses with Turpentine, hogges grease, and hony warmed and molten together, of each a like quantity; then pare the foote well, and shooe him in the new of the Moone two or three dayes after the change. Others vse to take chaulke and white lead mingled together; or else barke-dust and hony mixt together, and being heated in a posnet, and laid hot on the bare flesh, is most excellent to make any hoose grow; to conclude, if a horse stond vpon his own dung (being very well watered) so he doe not lye in it, it is most soueraigne for the preseruing of the houes.

Chap. 105.

For any hurt vpon the Houes.

IF your horse shall receiue any hurt vpon his houes either outwardly, or inwardly, as either by any false treading

treading or crossing one foote vpon another, or by any bruise either vpon cogle-stone, flint, or such like, then for the cure thereof you shall first stop the hoofe with hony and vinegar mixt together, for the space of three dayes at the least; and then afterward with the leaues of *Tamariske*, well bruised and beaten together, vntil the horse be sound againe. Other Farriers vse onely to stoppe the hoofe with sheepes grease and horse dung well mixt together, renewing it onely once a day vntill it be well.

Chap. 106.

How to soften houes.

THe houes of horses will, by long and dry standing vpon dry plaunchers, grow so hard that they will not be pared, nor cut by any Butteris; besides, they will so take from the horse the sence and feeling of his feete, that the horse will goe very stiffe and vnnimbly: wherefore when you shal perceiue any such defect, which is best knowne by offering to pare the hoofe, then presently you shall take an ounce of sope, two ounces of vnsleckt lime, with as much strong lye as will make it soft like a lenwicke salue, then with that stop the horses feete daily till they come to a conuenient softnesse.

Chap. 107.

How to harden houes.

AS dry standing, and dry keeping doth harden the houes too much, so wet and moist keeping,

as continuall going in marrish grounds, or continuall standing either vpon durt or the horses owne dung, will make a horses houes too soft; in so much that the horse through the tenderneſſe thereof will neither bee able to goe nor to beare any shooe, which you shall perceiue by the soft and easie cutting of the hoofe. The manner then to harden and cure them is, according to the oppinion of the ancient Farriers, first to burne an old shooe sole, then seeth it well in vinegar, & therewith bathe the horses houes, at the least twice a day, and it will harden them. Other Farriers vse to take of the powder of galles, of branne, and of salt, of each a handfull; boyle these well in a pottle of strong vinegar, and therewith bathe the hoofes, and in a short space it will harden them.

Chap. 108.

Of the Malt-long on the Hoofe.

THE Malt-long, or as some Farriers call it, the Malt-worme, is a cankerous sorrance aboue the hoofe, iust vpon the cronet, which will breake out into knobbes and stranches, and out of the same will run a waterish sharpe lye or humour, which will venome the whole foote; as for the signes, they are the apparant sight of the sorrance, and the continuall running out of the thin water. Now the cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers is; if it be in the summer time, to take blacke Snailes, and Bur rootes, and beating them well together lay them vnto the sore, and renew them once in twenty foure houres.

houres. But if it be in the winter, then take scraping of a pans bottome or of a cauldron, and put thereto an handfull of the inner greene barke or pils of the Elder tree, and hauing beaten them well together in a mortar, lay it vnto the sore, and renew it once a day, and it will heale it. Others vse to take garlicke pepper, and hony, of each a like quantity; stampe them very well together, then annoint his tongue with a little thereof, and then lay some to his pastornes, and that will cure the sorrance.

Chap. 109.

How to skinne any sore foote.

THere is nothing better to skinne any sore foote of what accident or sorrance soeuer it proceede, then to take Turpentine simply of it selfe, and therewith euery day to annoynt the sore foote, and it will not onely gather skinne but hoofe also, if it be in a place where any such need requireth.

Chap. 110.

Of gouded or swolne legges.

THe gorge or gourded legs, is an ill sorrance, being a grieuous swelling in the nether part of the legges, proceeding either from the melting of the grease by immoderate labour, and then wanting wherewith to auoyde that grease out in excrements, it falleth downe into the limbes, and there breedeth this swelling; or else when a horse is exceedingly heated, and then without care set vp, and taketh

cold, insomuch that the bloud falleth downe into his legs, and there congealeth, and maketh his legs to swell. To conclude, they doe sometimes proceed from hard beating in hard wayes in the Summer time, which first raiseth vp wind-gals, and then those wind-gals offending the sinewes, maketh them to swell, and this is the worst gourding, because euer (for the most part) lamenesse doth follow it.

The signes are, the horses legs will euer be most swolne when he standeth still in the house, and least when he is trauelled, especially if he trauell in much water, & the swelling most commonly is accompanied with some small scabbes, and in the end it will breake out into scratches. The cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers is, to draw him with a hot Iron a handfull aboue the knee, and then rope his legges with a soft rope of hay wet in cold water, and let it so remaine a day and a night, and it will take away all the swelling. Other Farriers take two pounds of new oyle, two pounds of blacke sope, a pound of Boares grease, and melt and boyle all these well together: then straine it and so let it coole: then when you haue any need, annoynt and chafe your horses therewith; and to make it sinke in the better, annoynt him first with nerue oyle, and hold a hot Iron against his legs to cause it melt: then vse the other oyntment in the same manner, which done, keepe his legges cleane from dust by lapping a linnen rowler about them. Others of our later Farriers vse to take vp the veines beneath the knee, and let him bleede well: then knit the veine both aboue and below, and then annoynt his legs with this oint-

ment:

ment: Take of Frankinſence, Rozen, and freſh greaſe, of each a like quantitie, and hauing boyled them very well together, then ſtraine it and vſe it once a day as you ſhal haue occaſion and it wil heale any gorge whatſoeuer; onely for the taking vp of the veines, you may, if you will, forbeare it, ſith if it bee not done with great cunning, it will make the horſe ſtiffe euer after. See further in the new Additions for any ſtraine in generall.

Chap. III.

Of the Farcy or Faſhions.

THE Farcy (of our ignorant Smiths called the Faſhions) is of all outward ſorrances the vileſt, the moſt poyſonous, infectious, and the moſt dangerous (being any whit neglected) otherwiſe the moſt eaſieſt, and with the leaſt coſt or trouble to be helped. It is a kind of creeping vlcer, growing in knots, euer following alongſt ſome one veine or other, and ſometimes alongſt diuers or ſundry veines, according to the ſtrength of the infection. It proceedeth ſometimes from corrupt blood ingendred in the body, ſometimes from outward wounds or hurts receiued by cankerous or poyſonous inſtruments as ruſty ſpurres, ruſty forkes, bitings of dogs or horſes, bitings of ticks, hogs lice, or ſuch like; ſometimes by the rubbing of ſwine againſt the legges of the horſe, or by lying in the litter where ſwine haue lain, or by enterfearing, or hewing one leg vpon another: but generally it proceedeth from an euill habite

of the body, being surfaited by disorderly and vnruly trauell, wherby the blood being heated, the grease melted, and sudden cold taken, there groweth such obstructions in blood, and such putrifaction in the body, that it can no way euacuate or auoyde, but by these small knots, pustules, or vlcers, which are so infectious, that as many horses as do gnaw or gnappe vpon the horse infected, will within one moneth haue the same disease: or if the horse infected do bite any other, hee will infect him also; and this infection without present cure, is mortall, and will kill any horse; therefore whensoeuer you haue any horse troubled with his sorrance, see that you separate him from other horses to preuent the danger.

Now for the signes, they are the apparance and palpable feeling of the knots, which knots are neuer but accompanied with great swellings and ranck-lings, running alongst as the veines runne, and diuiding themselues as the branches of the veines diuide, the number of the knots multiplying and encreasing vntill the body be vniuersall couered ouer, or else that the member (if it be in a member) be vtterly deformed and mishapen.

Now the cure (according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers) is, first let him blood on his necke veine, and on both his spurre veines, then giue the horse this drinke: Take a gallon of water, and put into it a good handfull of Rew, and a pound of Hempe-seede, both being first bruised in a mortar; then boyle them in water till the one halfe be consumed, and giue the horse this to drinke in the morning

ning fasting, being cold, for diuers mornings together, and it will cure him.

Others of the ancient Farriets vse first to let the horse blood in that veine where the sorrance first riseth, as nigh the sore place as may bee, and let him bleed well: then fire or cauterize euery knot one by one, taking the knot in your left hand, and pulling it so hard as you can from his body, to the entent you may the better pierce the knot with a round blunt hot Iron, of the begnesse of a mans fore-finger, without doing the body any hurt, and let the matter out, leauing none vnburned be it little or much: that done, annoint euery knot so burned with hogs grease warmed euery day once vntill the cores bee ready to fall; and in the meane time prepare a good quantitie of old vrine, and when you see the cores ready to fall, then boyle the vrine, and put therein a little copporas and salt, and a few strong nettles, and with that water being warme, wash out all the cores and all the corruption: that done, fill euery hole immediately with the powder of fleckt lime, continuing thus to doe euery day once vntill the holes bee closed vp; and if any bee more ranker then others: fill those with Verdigrease; and during this cure let the horse be thinly dietted, that is to say, with straw and water onely, vnlesse it be now and then to giue him a loafe of bread, or a little other prouender: for the lower he is kept in flesh, the sooner hee will heale; and in any wise let his necke either be yoaked in an old bottomlesse paile, or else splented with staues in such sort that hee may not come to licke any of his sores, and the lesse rest hee hath, the better

ter

ter will bee his amendment. Now there bee other later Farriers which for this sorrance take a good quantitie of Mistelthoe, hony, and blacke sope, and boyle them very well in old vrine, and being very warme, wash your horse all ouer therewith, euery day once for the space of fiue or sixe dayes, and it will helpe it. Others vse to cut the horse two inches long, downe the forehead, and open it in middest thereof on both sides two inches, and put thereto a tampin wade of the inner rhinde of Elder barke which is greene, and looke that it lie crosse the cut; for so it will destroy all the venemous humor in his body, and it will heale him very perfectly hauing beene very oft approued. Others vse to take a very sharpe bodkin, and to thrust it crosse-wise through the nether part of the horses nose, euen through the small gristle, so that he may bleed well, or else to let him bloud in the necke veine, then feele the knots, and as many as are soft, launce them and let them run: then take strong lye, lime, and allom, & mixing them well together bathe all the sore therewith, and it will cure him. Others take a sharp launce knife, & in the top of the horses fore-head somewhat aboue his eyes, making a long slit euen vnto the skull; then with a blunt instrument for the purpose, loose the flesh from the scalp a good compasse, then take carret rootes cut into little thin round peeces, and put them betweene the skin and the skull, or for want of carret rootes you may take red docke rootes, and see that they be a little beaten or bruised before you put them in, and once a day see that you thrust out the matter, but by no meanes thrust out the rootes: but

if

if the rootes will not ſtay in, then with a needle and ſilke ſtitch the wound together that it may hold in the medicine; then once a day annoynt the wound with freſh butter: this is held a very certaine cure for the farcy, for looke how this wound thus made, ſhall rot, waſte, and grow ſound, ſo ſhall the ſorrance breake, dry vp, and be healed; only the fault of this cure is, that it will be ſomewhat long in healing, and is a foule eye-ſore vntill it be whole.

Now there be other Farriers which after the putting in of roots, as is aforeſaid, vſe to burne all the ſore places round about with a hot Iron; and then with another blunt hot Iron as big as a mans fingar, to burne the ſores in the midſt till the white matter come forth, then with a paire of pinſons plucke out the knots; this done, annoint all the ſore places with ſope, and then dreſſe him no more the ſpace of foure or fiue daies, in which time you muſt prepare a good quantitie of ſtrong piſſe, with the which you muſt waſh him euery day, the piſſe being firſt made ſcalding hot, and rub the ſores well vntill they beginne to bleede; then hauing dryed all the ſore places, throw on the powder of vnſleckt lime, or of burnt allom, which will heale better then lime. Now if you ſee that in any of the ſores, through negligent dreſſing there riſeth prowd fleſh ſo high, as that you cannot correct it ſufficiently with the aforeſaid powder, then you may burne any ſuch place ſo ſore or ſorer, as you did at the firſt, and dreſſe it as before. Now there are other Farriers, which when they ſee the Farcy to haue beene old and long gone, and that it is ſo farre entred into one

member

member or other, that the mẽber is disfigured, they will then first purge the horse with some strong purgation, of which you may finde choice in a chapter before written, and then vnder his belly put in one rowel either of haire or leather; and on the pitch of his shoulder of his grieued leg (if it bee behind) put else on the stifling place, if his griefe be behinde, put in another rowel, and so keepe those two places together with the issue in his forehead open, vntill the cure be finished; then with another hot Iron burne all his leg downe with long strikes, euen from the body to the hoofe, not aboue an inch one strike from another, the edge of the Iron being not aboue a strawes breadth, and draw your stroake euer downeward with the haire, and burne him no deeper then that the skin may looke browne. Now when by this practise you haue cured the disease, if then the member be vnfashionable, or by swellings out of all forme, then you shall lay vnto the member a plaister made of wine lees, and wheate flowre, and rowle it with a woollen rowler, renewing it once in twenty foure houres till the member be asswaged; and this practise will heale any great sweld leg, if it be applyed and continued with patience; but if by former dressings, burnings, manglings, or cuttings of some ignorant Farriers, there be any extraordinary, hard, or horny substance grown about the member which the plaister aforesaid will not resolue; then you shall take of Virgine waxe halfe a pound, of mirrhe one pound, of raisins a pound, of *Galbanũ* halfe a pound, of *Costus* sixe ounces, of armoniarcke sixe ounce, of swines grease 2 pounds; put your swines grease first into

into an earthen pot, and hauing placed it in a broad cauldron full of water, then make a ſoft fire vnder it, to the end that your water may boyle; and when you doe perceiue your Swines greaſe is almoſt melted, then ſhall you put in all the other ſimples, except the *Coſtus*; and when they are all molten, which will aske fiue or ſixe houres boyling at the leaſt, then your *Coſtus*, which is a white root, being beaten into fine powder, you ſhall adde to the aforeſaide things after it is taken from the fire, and incorporate them all very well together; then make a plaiſter thereof vpon a peece of ſheepes leather, ſomewhat bigger then the ſore, and this plaiſter without renewing will ſerue for at leaſt thirty dayes with a very little refreſhing, onely you muſt once a day take it off, and rub his legge very well, for feare it itch, which may cauſe the horſe to beat and ſtampe with his foot, and ſo rather increaſe then decreaſe the ſwelling; & you muſt regard, that you doe not rowle him too ſtraite, for that is moſt hurtfull. It ſhall not be amiſſe now and then to ride him into the water, and walke him an houre after; then bringing him into the ſtable, rub his leg well; then warme his plaiſter ouer a chafing-diſh and coles, and ſo lay it to againe: and this practiſe in two or three moneths will take away any deformity of ſwelling, be the member neuer ſo vncomly. Now there be other Farriers which for this Farcy if it be but yong, and eſpecially if it bee about the head or face of a horſe; will take onely of Aqua vitæ two ſpoonefuls, of the iuyce of garlicke two ſpoonefull, and of the iuyce of Rew, or hearbe of Grace two ſpoonefull; mixe them well together, then take ple-

gants

gants or round bals of flaxe, and steepe them therein, and then stop them hard into the horses eares; then take a needle and thrid, and stitch the tips of his two eares together, by meanes whereof hee cannot shake out the medicine, and vse the horse thus three seuerall mornings together, and it will kill the Farcy as hath beene oft proued. Other Farriers vse to take Drag-woorts or Groundsell, and beate it well in a mortar with white Salt, and then stop it hard into the horses eares, and so either stitch them together or with a broad inckle bind them vp; renewing it once in foureteene houres for three or foure dressings, and it will heale any reasonable Farcy. Others vse to annoynt all the sores either with Tansey and verdiuice boyld together, or else with boares grease very hot, and that will kill it. Others vse first to wash the soares with old urine, then take the powder of glasse, brimstone, and hogges grease well stamped and beaten together; then opening or slitting the knots annoint them all therewith, and it will cure them immediately; Other Farries vse to let the horse blood if it bee at the beginning of the disease, or else not; & then so burne all the knots as is aforesaid, and then to heale the burnings with Tarre, oyle and hony mixt together, and giue him with a pint of Malmsey, two or three spoonefull of the powder *Diapente*: or else giue him foure ounces of the powder of Wal-woort, or Dan-wort, with a pint and a halfe of Malmsey, three daies two together, after that take an ounce of *Aloes*, one ounce of *Centuary*, one ounce of *Opoponax*, beate them all into fine powder and giue them him to drinke in a pint and an halfe of Malmsey

Malmsey warmed, wherein the roots of the aforesaid Hearbe called wal-woort, or dan-woort, haue beene sodden: vse to ride him oft vntill he sweat; and when the disease is killed, turne him to grasse: for running in the open aire is very wholesome. There be others which take blacke sope, Arsnicke, vnsleckt lime, verdigrease, and red lead; worke all these well together, and opening the knots, dresse them therewith till you see they begin to dry vp and dye. Others open the knots with a hot Iron, and then take blacke sope, and great salt beaten together, and halfe so much as of them of verdigrease, and boyle the verdigrease with fresh grease, and then take a saucerfull of Mustard, and put them all together, and dresse the sores therewith. Others take three ounces of quicksiluer, and put it into a bladder, with two spoonefull of the iuyce of Orenges or Lemons, and shake them together to coole the quicke-siluer: then take halfe a pound of fresh hogges grease, and of verdiuice an ounce; put all these in a trend dish, and worke them well together: then annoynt the knots with this oyntment, till they rot: then let them out with a sharpe knife, and annoint them still, and put into his eares the iuyce of rag-weed, and the sores will dry vp. This medicine is very well approued. Others take blacke sope, mustard made of wine vinegar, and red lead; mixe all these together, and annoint the veine all along; holding a hot Iron close to the sore, to make the ointment sticke in, and doe thus once a day vntill the sores dry vp. Other Farriers take of the iuice of hemlocke a good quantity, & dipping tow therin, stop his eares therewith, then open all the knots and

thrust

thruſt in ſalt. Laſtly, giue him to drinke ſweete woort mixt with Fennell and Treacle. Other Farriers take the butter burre, and being dryed and beaten to powder, ſtrew it vpon the knots after they haue beene opened; and then giue him two or three ſpoonefull of the ſame powder with a pint of Malmeſey to drinke, and it will cure the Farcy, and it is alſo exceeding good for all manner of vlcers; the roote is ſtrong in ſmell, and bitter in taſte. Others take ſulphure, orpiment, vnſleckt lime, and mixing them together, put it into the knots, and it will kill the Farcy: which done, annoynt him with Bolearmony made into powder, and incorporated with ſtrong vinegar, the iuyce of houſlicke, and of white leekes, and Solatro. Other Farriers after they haue let the horſe blood will boyle in vinegar, beane flowre and ſwines greaſe, then adde a pretty quantity of oyle, and then ſtraine it, then adde one part of Aloes, and two of Brimſtone, and boyle it a little: then being warme annoynt all the ſore places therewith, or elſe annoint them twice a day with the iuice of ſmallage, and the yolkes of egges beaten together. There be other Farriers which take two ounces of oyle de bay, one of *Euforbium*, and two ounces of Arſnicke, and mixing them together, annoint the ſores therewith, and it will kill the Farcy. Now after all theſe many receipts, of which not any but hath beene approued to be very good, yet theſe two which I ſhall now rehearſe, I haue euer found to be the moſt excellent for any manner of Farcy whatſoeuer, whether it be, as our ſimple Smiths tearme it, a dry Farcy, as wet or woter Farcy, or a running Farcy

cy, all being indeed but one Farcy, and proceeding from one cause; onely some horses not hauing such flux of humors in them as others haue, the knots will be vnwilling to breake,& then they say itt is a dry farcy: others of the contrary part will breake as fast as the knots arise,& run filthy matter;and then they call it a water Farcy: others will spread in many parts of the body, yet not breake, but as it were moue betwixt the skin and the flesh, and that they call a running farcy. Now all these are but one farcy,and haue but one certaine cure, which is this: first, with diligent heed make vpon what principall veine of the horses body the knots doe arise, and note how they spread & run;then if the farcy be diuided into sundry branches, according as the veine doth deuide, you shall take the last knot of euery branch, which for the most part will be hard, and not come to rottennesse; and then slit them, and fill them with your kniues point full of white Arsnicke: then those which you find to be rotten, let the matter forth, and annoynt them with blacke sope and Arsnicke mixt together: then within 2 or 3 daies you shal see those which you dresst with Arsnicke simply,to haue their choares fall out; and the rest which you dresse with blacke sope, will dry vp; then annoynt them all with fresh butter molten till they be whole. Now if you perceiue any new knots to arise, then you shall dresse them likewise with arsnicke simply,as was said before, and not leaue any vncured. Now if the farcy be not very contagious, but as it were, newly begun,then if you onely take blacke sope and arsnick,as before said,and annoynting your fingar and your thumbe therewith,

do but nip and bruise euery knot, and within two or three dayes after they wil dry vp and heale. But if the farcy be foule and desperate, that is to say, either vniuersally spread ouer the body, or so gotten into any limbe or member, that the limbe is deformed, & hath lost his proportion, so that a man can neither iudge which way the veins run, nor in what part the knots are most venemous, becaus that healing one, two new ones will arise. In this case you shall first giue your horse a strong scouring or purgation, according to the strength of his body, of all which a pint of Muskadine, or a quart of strong Ale, with halfe a pint of the oyle of oates, is the most soueraigne: then shall you take a peny-worth of Tarre, and two good handfuls of Pidgions dung, and 12 peny-worth of white mercury; mix all these very well together, and make them into a salue: then with a slice daube it all ouer the sore place, leauing no part of the member vncouered: then heating a bar of Iron red hot, hold it so neere that it may drye the salue vpon the sore: then lay more fresh salue on, and dry it in like maner, and let it so rest vntill it fall off, & it will kill any farcy whatsoeuer at the first or second dressing. There be others which will stop the knots with the powder of verdigrease and of Arsnicke mixt together, or else wash the sores with *Aquafortis*; but they are neither so good as the other before rehearsed.

Chap. 112.

Of the canker in any part of the body.

A Canker is poysonous creeping vlcer, fretting and gnawing the flesh in great breth, whose beginning

ginning is knotty, not much vnlike vnto the farcy, & ſpreading it ſelfe into diuers places; and being exulcerated, gathereth together at the length into one wound or filthy ſore; from whence there runneth a thin ſharpe lye, which galleth off the skin whereſoeuer it goes; and ſo both encreaſeth the vlcer, and maketh it more incurable. It proceedeth from melancholy & filthy blood, ingendred either by rankeneſſe of keeping, or elſe by too extreame pouerty; and if this naughty blood be mixt with ſharpe and ſalt humors, then it cauſeth more painfull and grieuous exulceration. It alſo may proceed from ſome lothſome wound which is neither cleane kept nor well dreſt, but in ſuch ſort that the corrupt matter thereof poyſoneth the other cleane parts of the body; for ſignes of the ſorrance there needeth no more but the deſcription already mentioned. And for the cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is firſt to let the horſe blood in thoſe veines which are next the ſore, and make him bleed well; then take of allom halfe a pound, of greene copporas as much, of white copporas one quarterne, and a good handfull of ſalt; boile all theſe things together in faire running water from a pottle to a quart: and this water being warme waſh the ſore therewith with a clout: and then ſprinkle thereon the powder of ſlecked lime, continuing ſo to doe euery day once the ſpace of fifteene dayes; and if you ſee that the lime doe not mortifie the ranke fleſh, and keepe it from ſpreading any further, then take of ſope halfe a pound, of quicke-ſiluer halfe an ounce, and beat them together in a pot vntill the quick-ſiluer be ſo well mingled with the ſope as

you can perceiue no quick-ſiluer in it,& with an iron ſlice or ſplatter, after that you haue waſhed the ſore with the ſtrong water aforeſaid, couer the wound with this ointment,continuing thus to do euery day once vntill the canker leaue ſpreading abroad. And if it leaue ſpreading, and that you ſee the ranke fleſh is well mortified, and that the edges begin to gather a skin, then after the waſhing dreſſe it with Lime, as before,continuing ſo to do vntill it be whole; and in the dreſſing ſuffer no filth that comes out of the ſore to remaine vpon any whole place about, but wipe it cleane away,or elſe waſh it away with warme water: and let the horſe during this cure,be as thinly dieted as may be,and throughly exerciſed. Now if this cankerous vlcer happen to be in the taile of a horſe, as it is often ſeen,and which you ſhall perceiue as well by the falling away of the haire, as alſo by the wound, then you ſhall make a bolſter of ſoft cloth or ſpunge, and wet it with vinegar both within & without, and ſo bind it faſt to the ſore;and alwaies when it waxeth dry,you muſt wet it againe; doe thus twice or thrice a day,if it be done oftner it is better:ſo ſhall you continue for 3 or 4 dayes, and then heale it vp as you heale any ordinary wound; that is,with hogs greaſe and turpentine molten together,or ſuch like. There be other Farriers which for the canker on the body do take one ounce of the iuyce of the root of *Affedeli*, 3 ounces of vnſleckt lime, 2 ounces of orpiment or Arſnicke; put this in an earthen veſſell cloſe ſtopt, and either boyle or bake it in an ouen till it come to a powder; then firſt waſh the ſore with ſtrong vinegar,and after ſtrew this powder thereon. Others vſe

to

to take garlicke, and beate it in a mortar with swines grease till it come to a salue, and then hauing washt the sore either with vinegar, allome water, copporas water, or old vrine, annoynt it once or twice a day with it till it be whole. Other Farriers take the hearb *Mullen*, and bruise it, and mix it with salt, and verdigrease, and dresse the sore therewith morning and euening, for the space of three or foure dayes; then vse the same salue againe as long without verdigrease: then lastly vse the hearbe alone; but if at any time you see it doe begin to waxe raw, then beginne againe, as is aforesaid, and euer before you annoynt it, wash it first with vinegar & grease mixt together. Others vse sauine, bay salt and rew stampt with barrowes grease, and annoynt the sore therewith, and when the ill humors are killd (which you shall know by the whiteness) then heale it with tarre, oyle and hony mixt together; and lastly (and which I hold the best) take vinegar, ginger, and allome, and mix them together till they come to a salue, and with it anoint the sore, and it will both kill the poyson and heale the vlcer.

Chap. 113.

Of the Fistula.

A Fistula is a deepe, hollow, crooked, matt ering vlcer, and for the most part, commonly great deale straiter at the mouth then at the bottom, being ingendered in some wound, bruise, sore or canker not throughly healed. The signes to know it are, the hollowness of the sore descending downward from the orifice, and the thinness of the matter which is-

sueth from the same; besides the crookednesse which you shall find in the vlcer when you search it. Now for the cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, it is thus: first search the bottome thereof with a goose or swans quill, or with a small rod wel couered with fine linnen cloath; and hauing found the bottome thereof, cut it so large with a rasor, that the matter may haue free passage downewards: but beware in launcing it, that you cut any maister-sinew, or maine tendant: then hauing staunched the blood either with swines dung, or such like, take of good hony a pint, of Verdigrease one ounce, and boyle them well together vpon a soft fire three quarters of an houre; then hauing cleansed the sore by tying a taint of flaxe or fine linnen cloth to the point of your quill, with a threed draw it softly into the wound: then cut off your quill or feather so long, that you may take good hold in the neather end of the tent, which then shall come out at the bottome of your sore: then dip another tent in the aforesaid salue, and then with a needle and a threed make fast your tent to your first clout at the vpper end thereof; then draw out your first tent downward, so shall you draw your tent with the medcine easily into the wound, and your first tent will haue cleansed the sore very cleane; and if the matter do abound much, then it shall be good to dresse him twice a day; but you must dresse him with this medicine no more but one day, and afterward you shall dresse him with this medicine following: Take of Turpentine, of swines grease, of hony, and sheeps suet, of each a like quantitie, and melt them together, and make a salue thereof,

thereof, wherewith you shall dresse your sore foure dayes for one day that you dresse him with the former medicine made of hony and verdigrease; and beware that you make your tent of very soft linnen cloth or fine flaxe: and let not your tent be too big after the first and second time dressing, but presently after the first dressing you must couer the sore place, & round about the same with this *Pultus* here following: first, take two gallons of faire water, and hauing boild and scumd it so long till you haue perfectly cleansed it of all corruption: then take two or three handfulls of mallowes, and as much of violet leaues, and two or three of oat-meale, & hauing boiled all these three things well in your former prepared water, you shall adde thereto of hogs mort, and fresh butter, of each a pound: then shall you let it boyle so long till it become thicke like past, or pap, and then apply it hot to the sores, and beware that in opening this sore you let not any aire strike into it: and on the other side, that you keepe it not too hot. And if this fistula be in the horses withers, you must beware that you tie his head to the racke, so as hee may neither lie downe, nor put his head lower then his manger: for if you suffer him to feede on the ground when hee hath any grieuous sore in his withers, it shall hardly be possible euer to cure him; but if you perceiue the wound to heale apace, and that it matter but a little, then shall it be enough to dresse him once a day: and also it shall be good to take great heede that you make not your tent too bigge, and see that you vse your *Pultus* vntill it be perfectly cured. Now there be others of the an-

cient Farriers which vse for this cure, first to search the depth of the fistula, either with a quill, or with some other instrument of lead, which may be bowd euery way: for vnlesse you finde the bottome of it, it will be very hard to cure: and hauing found the bottom, if it be in such a place as you may boldly cut and make the way open with a launcet or razor, then make a slit right against the bottome, so wide, that you may thrust in your finger, to feele whether ther be any bone or gristle perished, or spungie, or loose flesh, which must be gotten out; and then taint it with a taint of flaxe dipped in this oyntment: Take Take of Myrre, of Aloes, and of *Sarcocolla*, of each one ounce, of good hony sixe ounces, and of verdigrease two ounces, and melt all these, on a gentle fire, and make them into a salue; then being lukewarme, dresse the taint therewith, & bolster the taint with a bolster of flaxe, and if it be in such a place as the taint can not conueniently bee kept in with a band, then fasten on each side the hole, two ends of a shoo-makers threed right ouer the bolster, to keep in the taint, which ends may hang there as two laces to tie and vntie at your pleasure, renewing the taint euery day once vntill the sore leaue mattering, and then make the taint euery day lesser and lesser vntill it be whole: for you shall vnderstand that this salue doth purge this fistula of putrifaction, incarnateth and breedeth flesh, conglutinateth and eateth away all naughty flesh. Now when you haue done as beforesaid, then you shall close it vp by sprinckling thereon a little sleckt lime: but if the fistula bee in such a place as you can neither cut against the bottome,

tome, nor nye the same: that there is no remedy but euery time you dresse it, to powre into it either through some quill, or by some small squirt or sering, some strong white copporas water, or some allome water, so that it may goe downe to the bottome, and dry vp the filthy matter: and this you must do twice a day at least vntill it be whole. Now there be of our latter Farriers which vse this cure, after they haue searched the fistula to the bottome, to take a pottle of white wine Vinegar, of Camphaire halfe an ounce, of *Mercury precipitate* halfe an ounce, of greene treacle three ounces, of red sage an handfull, of yarrow and ribb-wort, of each an handfull, of hony halfe a pint, of Boares grease halfe a pinte; boile all these together till a quart be consumed, and with this you shall wash and cleanse the wound: then to heale vp the same, you shall take oile of roses, Virgin waxe and rozen, of each a like quantitie, of turpentine fiue ounces, of the gumme of Iuy and Deeres suet as much, boyle these together vnto a salue, and then dresse the sore therewith vntill it be whole, obseruing euer, both in this cure, and all the rest, that as soone as you haue put in your tent to clap a plaister ouer it of pitch, rozen, mastick, turpentine and hogs grease molten together, which wil both comfort the wound by taking away euill humors, & also keep in the tent from falling out. Now if the fistula be in or about the head of the horse, then you shall take the iuyce of houseek, and dippe thereon a locke of wooll, and put it into the horses eares, and it wil stay the inflammation; but if it be exulcerated and broken, then you shal cut away all the

rotten

rotten and falſe fleſh, and then bathe it well with the grounds of ale made warme, & then wipe the blood cleane away: then take butter, roſen & frankinſence a little, and boile them all together, and boiling hot, poure it into the wound, & then clap on the plaiſter: do thus once a day till the horſe be whole. Now if there be any inflammation behinde the horſes eares, or that it grow to any impoſtumation in that place, then you ſhall boile the roots of mallows in water til they wax tender, then bruiſe them & ſtraine out the water cleane, and being warme, apply it to the ſore, and it will heale it. There be other Farriers which for this general fiſtula vſe as a preuention therof, to take hony and ſheeps ſuet, and making it ſcalding hot, to ſcald the ſore extreamely therewith, vpon the firſt ſwelling, and it will keepe the fiſtula that it ſhall not breed; but if it be bred, then you ſhall lance it in the neathermoſt part, and put into it as much Mercurie *ſublimatum* as a peaſe, being firſt abated with Sallet oile, and laid on with a feather; after that take of verdigreaſe foure pennyworth, of vitrioll a halfe pennyworth, or red lead three penyworth; beat theſe together, and euery day waſh the wound with copporas water, made with copporas & Elder leaues in Summer, and with the inner greene barke in Winter; after the waſhing, take the powder, and put it on the ſore, and after it drop on a litle oyle. Other Farriers take the outermoſt greene ſhels of wall-nuts, and put them in a tubbe, ſtrowing three or foure handfuls of bay ſalt vpon them, ſome in the bottom, ſome in the midſt, and ſome on the top, and ſo keep them all the yeare; & when you wil vſe them, take a pint of them,

and

and a little bay ſalt, and halfe a quarter of a pound of blacke ſope, with halfe a ſpoonefull of Maie butter, (and for want thereof, other butter) and mix and incorporate them together; and then ſpread it on the ſore, or taint the ſore therewith; but two houres before you lay it on, annoynt the ſore with Venice turpentine, and do thus till the fiſtula be whole. Other Farriers take *Vnguentum Egiptiacum* (which is made of hony) a pint, vinegar halfe a pint, allome a quarterne of a pound, and verdigreaſe one ounce and an halfe; and ſeeth them all together till they be thicke, and of a tawny colour; this is called *Egiptiacum*, and to make it the ſtrongeſt way, is to put in of Mercurie *ſublimatum* one ounce made into powder, and of Arſnicke two ſcruples, and boyle it together: with either of theſe, eſpecially the ſtrongeſt, dreſſe any fiſtula, canker, or foule old vlcer whatſoeuer, and it will kill it; and the weaker of theſe, which wanteth the Mercurie and the Arſnicke, may be applied to the fiſtula in the mouth of a horſe. Other Farriers take of *Sublimatum* made into powder one ounce, the midſt of well leauened bread ſlacke baked three ounces, of *Nenin* ten drams; mingle them together with a little roſe water, and make tens thereof, and drie them vpon a tile; and at your pleaſure tent your fiſtula therewith, and it will aſſuredly kill it. Others take ſtrong lie, hony, roach allome, and Mercurie, and ſeethe them together, and ſquirt it into a fiſtula, and it will kill it at the bottome; and when you meane to drie vp a fiſtula, take red wine, goats dung and beane flowre, and ſeethe them together, and apply it to the fiſtula, and it will drie it vp.

Now

Now if you intend to ſinke downe the ſwelling of a Fiſtula, firſt of all ſeare it with a drawing Iron in this proportion +, and then take rozen, ſheeps ſuet and brimſtone, and boyle them together, and lay it vpon a Fiſtula very hot with a cloath, and it will ſinke downe the ſwelling. It is alſo moſt excellent to take away a wind-gall if it be layd on after the wind-gall is prickt, but not too hot, but very reaſonable, and it will keepe it alſo very cleane. There be other Farriers which for a fiſtula vſe Verdigreaſe, butter and ſalt melted together, and poure it ſcalding hot into the ſore; and vſe this till all the fleſh looke red; then taint it with verdigreaſe, burnt allome, wheate flowre, and the yolkes of egges well beaten and mingled together: laſt of all, skinne it with barme and ſoot mixt together.

A rare and true approued medicine to cure any Fiſtula, or hollow Impoſtmation whatſoeuer.

TAke a pint of the ſtrongeſt vinegar, & being hot vpon the fire, mixe therewith the lome of a clay wall which hath not any lime in it; but by no means doe not picke out the chopt ſtrawes or hay that is in the lome, but boyle them all together till it come to a ſalue: then being reaſonable hot, ſpread it ouer all the ſwelld place, and ouer euery part which you ſhal feele hard: and you ſhall thus do twice a day, and it will not onely ripen and breake the hollow vlcer, but alſo ſearch it to the bottome and heale it. This medicine cureth any ſore backe whatſoeuer, how grieuouſly ſoeuer, either galld or bruiſed.

CHAP.

Chap. 114.
Of the Anbury.

AN Anbury is a great spungy wart full of blood, which may grow vpon any part of the horses body, chiefly about the eye-browes, nostrils, or priuy parts, and it hath a root like vnto a cocks stone. Now the cure, according the opinion of the auncient Farriers, is first to tie it about with a threed so hard as you can pull it, and the threed will eate in by little and little, in such sort as within seauen or eight dayes it will fall away of it selfe; and if it be so flat that you can bind nothing about it, then take it away with a sharpe hot Iron cutting it round about, and so deepe as you leaue none of the roote behind, and then dry it vp with the powder of verdigrease; but if it grow in such a sinewy place as it cannot be conueniently cut away with a hot Iron, then it is good to eate out the core with the powder of *Resalgar*, & then to stop the hole with flaxe dipt in the white of an egge for a day or two; and lastly to dry it vp with the powder of vnsleckt lime, and hony, as is before taught. Other Farriers in stead of tying the wart with a thrid, do tie it with two or three horses haires; and that is a great deale the better, and will rot it off sooner and safer.

Chap. 115.
Of the Cordes.

THE Cordes is a certaine string which commeth from the shackle veine to the griste in the nose, and betweene the lip, the length of an Almond; or they be two strings like thrids, which lye aboue the knee,

knee, betwixt the knee and the body, and goeth like a ſmall cord through the body to the noſtrils, making a horſe to ſtumble much, and ſometimes to fall alſo; and it is a diſeaſe very much incident to many yong horſes. The ſignes are, an apparant ſtiffe going, and much ſtumbling, without any outward or viſible ſorrance; and the cure is, according to the opinion of our ancient Farriers, to take the end of a crooked Harts horne that is ſharpe; put it vnder the cordes, and twind it ten or twelue times about, till the horſe be conſtrained to lift vp his foot; then cut the cord aſunder, and put a little ſalt into the iſſue, or cut it firſt at the knee, then at the end of his noſe, & ſo draw it vpwards a ſpan length, and cut that off. Other Farriers letteth the horſe blood in the veine that deſcendeth in the in ſide of the leg, by the breaſt, and take away at leaſt a pottle of blood, and after ſeuen dayes waſh him with beefe broth, & it wil heale him. Other Farriers take muſtard, aqua vitæ, and ſallet oyle, and boile them on the coles, and make a plaiſter and bind it to the place grieued; and it will helpe. Others take the grounds of ale, and being made warme, bathe his legs therewith, and then rope them vp with wet hay ropes, and it will make the hore perfectly ſound.

Chap. 116.

Of the ſtring-halt.

THe ſtring-halt, of ſome cald the mary-hinchcho, is a ſudden twitching vp of the horſes hinder legges, as if he did tread vpon needles, and were not able to endure his feete vpon the ground; the ſignes whereof

whereof be an apparant ill fauoured manner of halting, moſt viſible to the eye. And the cure is, to take vp the midle veine aboue the thigh, and vnderneath the ſame; then vnder the ſaid veine there lies a ſtring, which ſtring muſt be cut away: and then anoynt him with butter and ſalt, and he will both doe well, and goe plainely.

Chap. 117.
Of a horſe that is ſpurre-gald.

IF a horſe by the indiſcretion of an euill rider, bee ſpurre-gald, which is a diſeaſe moſt plaine both to be felt or ſeene: then the cure is, either to bathe it with vrine and ſalt mixt together, or with water and ſalt, or with warme vinegar, or elſe bind vnto the place the crops or leaues of nettles ſtamped; and any of theſe will cure him.

Chap. 118.
Of wounds in generall.

VVOunds, according to the opinion of all Farriers, is a ſolution, diuiſion or parting of the whole: for if there be no ſuch ſolution, or diuiſion, then it is rather called a bruiſe then a wound; and therefore wounds are moſt commonly made with ſharpe or piercing weapons, and bruiſes with blunt weapons: notwithſtanding if by ſuch blunt weapons any part of the whole bee euidently broken: then it is to bee called a wound as well as the other; and theſe wounds doe proceed from ſome ſtroke, pricke, or violent accident. Now of wounds ſome be hollow, and ſome be deepe and hollow: againe, ſome

wounds

wounds chance in fleshy parts, & some in bony and sinewy places: and those which chance in the fleshy parts, though they be very deepe, yet they be not so dangerous as the other, and therefore I will speake first of the most dangerous. If then a horse haue a wound newly made, either in his head, or in any other place that is full of sinewes, bones or gristles, then according to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers, you shall first wash the wound well with white Wine warmed, and keepe it euer whilst you are in dressing it, couered with cloathes wet in warme white Wine: that done, you shall search the bottome of the wound with a probe, or small instrument of steele made for the purpose, suffering the wound to take as little winde or aire as you can possible: then hauing found the depth, stoppe the hole close with a cloute vntill your salue bee ready: then take of Turpentine, of *Mel rosatum*, oyle of Roses, of each a quarterne, and a little vnwrought waxe, and melt them together, stirring them continually that they may be well mingled together; and if the wound be a cut, make a handsome rowle or round plegant of soft tow, so long and so bigge as may fill the bottome of the wound, which, for the most part, is not so wide as the mouth of the wound: then make another rowle or plegant somewhat bigger to fill vp the rest of the wound, euen to the hard mouth, and let both these rowles be annointed with the oyntment aforesaide made luke warme; onely this you must euer obserue, that if the wound be long and large, that then it is best, if you can conueniently, to stitch the wound together with

with a needle, a needle and a crimſon ſilke: for that will make it heale the ſooner, and make the ſcarre leſſe. But if the hurt bee like a hole made with ſome pricke; then make a ſtiffe tent either of tow or lint, ſuch a one as may reach the bottome, annoynted with the aforeſaid oyntment, and bolſter the ſame with a little tow: and ouer both this and the other, or any wound whatſoeuer, as ſoone as your rowles, plegants, or tents, are put in, yon ſhall clap a ſticking plaiſter made of Pitch, Rozen, Maſticke, and Turpentine melted together, as hath beene before taught, both to keepe in your ſalue, and to comfort the ſore. Now if the mouth of the wound bee not wide enough, ſo as the matter may eaſily runne forth, if it be in ſuch a place as you may doe it with out hurting any ſinew, then giue it a pretty ſlit from the mouth downeward, that the matter may haue the freer paſſage, and in any wiſe haue an eſpeciall regard that the tent may bee continually kept in by one meanes or other, and alſo that it may not bee drowned within the wound, but by tying ſome thrid about the vpper end thereof, ſo kept that it may be taken out at pleaſure. Now if the hole bee deepe, and in ſuch a place as you may not cut it, then make your tent full as bigge as the hole, of a dry ſponge that was neuer wet, ſo long that it may reach the bottome; and the tent being made ſomewhat full, with continuall turning and wringing of it, you ſhall eaſily get it downe, and then dreſſe the wound with this twice a day, cleanſing the wound euery time with a little white wine luke-warme: for this ſponge annointed with the oyntment aforeſaid, will both

draw and ſucke vp all the filthy matter; and make it ſo faire within as is poſſible; and as it beginneth to heale, ſo make your tent euery day leſſer and leſſer vntill it be ready to cloſe vp, and neuer leaue tainting it ſo long as it will receiue a taint, bee it neuer ſo ſhort: for haſty healing of wounds breedeth Fiſtulaes, which properly be old ſores, and therefore muſt be healed like Fiſtulaes. Now if the wound proceed from any ancient impoſtumation, then you ſhall take two or three great onions, and taking out the cores, put therein a little bay-ſalt, and a little whole Saffron, and ſo roſt them in the hot embers; then plaiſter-wiſe lay them all hot on the wound; renewing it once a day till the wound be healed. Now if the vpper skinne of the wound be putrified, and you would haue it away, then make a plaiſter of cowes dung ſod in milke, and clap it to for foure and twenty houres, and it will leaue nothing that is vile about the wound.

Other Farriers vſe generally for any cut whatſoeuer, to take a quarter of a pound of freſh butter, of tarre and blacke ſope; of each halfe ſo much, and a little Turpentine; boyle all but the ſope together, then when you take it from the fire, put in the ſope, and with this oyntment dreſſe any cut, and it will heale it. Others vſe onely to take hogges greaſe and Venice Turpentine, and to melt them together, and it will heale any wound. Other Farriers take eight drammes of Turpentine, foure drammes of new virgine-waxe; melt them in a pewter veſſell, and ſtirre them well together, and when they are well melted and mixed, take them from the fire, and

by

flowing downe to those parts through the negligence of a most vnskilfull Farrier. The signes are, the long continuance of the sore, the thinnesse of the matter, which issueth away, and the blackenesse of the sore which is euer full of inflammation. Now for the cure according to the opiniou of the most ancient Farriers it is thus, first cleanse the sore well with white wine: then take copporas and the leaues Lillies, beate them well in a mortar with Swines grease till it come to a perfect salue, and lay it vpon the sore with flaxe, and then couer it with a plaister as in case of wounds, and renew it once a day, and it will heale it.

Other Farriers take lime, and tough horse-dung, and mixe it very well together with pepper and the white of an egge, and lay it to the sore, renewing it once a day, till the vlcer be whole.

Other Farriers strow on the sore the powder of galles, and that will dry it vp.

Others scald it once a day with hot oyle of oliue, and that will heale it.

Chap. 121.

Of bruisings or swellings.

ALL bruisings and swellings come vnto a horse either by accident, as by some blow, rush, pinch; or outward venoming; or else naturally, as through the fluxe of blood, or through the abundance of winde.

The signes are, the sightly apparance in what place or member soeuer they be: and the first, which

are those which come by accident, are properly called bruisings or swellings; and the other if they do rot or corrode, and so turne to matter, are called impostumes.

Now for the generall cure of any bruise or swelling, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, it is thus, take of dry Pitch, of Gumme, of each an ounce, of *Galbanum*, of Lime, of each foure ounces, of *Bitumen* two ounces, of waxe three ounces, melt and boyle them very well together, then annoynt the sore place therewith once a day, and it will heale it. But if the swelling proceede onely from some bruise or rush, then you shall take two pints of Verduice, one pint of Barme, and putting a little fine Hay thereinto, boyle them very well together, then binde the Hay to the swelling very hot, and after powre on the liquor; doe thus three or foure dayes together; and it will take away the swelling.

Other Farriers take the toppes of worme-wood, pellitory of the wall, *Branck vrsine*, beate them well together with Swines grease, then seeth them; then adde a pretty quantity of hony, lin-seede oyle, and wheate meale; then stirre it ouer the fire till all againe be sodden together, then lay it to the swelling, and renew it once a day till the swelling be gone.

Other Farriers vse first to pricke the swelling with a fleame, then take of Wine lees a pint, as much wheate flowre as will thicken it, and an ounce of comen; boyle them together, and lay this somewhat warme vnto it, renewing it euery day once vntill the swelling either depart or else come to a head, which

if

Chap. 124.
Of hot Impoſtumes.

IF the impoſtume proceed from any hot cauſes, as from the extremity of trauell, the parching of the Sunne, or the inflammation of the blood, then, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, you ſhall take Liuer-woort, and ſtampe it, and mixe it with the grounds of ale, hogges greaſe, and bruiſed Mallowes, and then apply it to the ſore, and it will ripen, breake, and heale it: but if you would not haue the ſwelling to breake, then take the grounds of Ale or Beere, and hauing boiled Mallowes therein, bathe the ſore place therewith, and it will driue the ſwelling away. Other Farriers take either Lettis ſeede or Poppy ſeede, and mixe it with the oyle of red Roſes, and lay it the ſore plaiſter-wiſe, eſpecially at the beginning of the ſwelling, and it will take it cleane away.

Chap. 125.
Of the Tetter.

A Tetter is a filthy kind of vlcer like vnto a Canker, onely it is ſomewhat more knotty, and doth not ſpread, but remaineth moſt in one place, and many times it will remaine betweene the skinne and the fleſh, like a knotted Farcy, and will not breake. The cure thereof, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is to make a ſtrong lye with old vrine, aſh aſhes, and greene Copporas, & to bathe

bathe the knots therewith, and it will kill and heale them. Other Farriers take a Snake, and cut off the head and the taile, and caſt them away, the reſt cut into ſmall peeces, and roſt them on a ſpit; then take the greaſe that droppeth from them, and being hot, annoint the ſorrance therewith, and it will heale it in very ſhort time; but looke that you touch no part of the horſe therewith, ſaue only the ſorrance onely, for it will venome.

Chap. 126.

Of ſinewes that are cut, prickt, or bruiſed.

IF a horſe by the miſchance of ſome wound, ſhall haue any of his ſinewes either cut, prickt, or ſore bruiſed, then if there bee no convultion of the ſinewes, you ſhall, according to the opinion of the moſt ancient Farriers, take Tarre, and Beane flowre, and a little oyle of Roſes, and mixing them together, lay it hot vnto the place; and if it doe not preſent good, take wormes and ſallet oyle fryed together, or elſe the oyntment of wormes, which you may buy of euery Poticary, and applying either of them they will knit the ſinewes againe if they be not cleane aſunder; but if there be a convultion, then with a paire of ſheares you muſt cut the ſinew in peeces, and then take rozen, turpentine, pitch, and *Sanguis draconis*; then melting together, clap it ſomewhat hot vnto the ſore; then take flaxe and put vpon it, for that will cleanſe and defend it; and then this medicine there is none better for any ſwolne ioynt whatſoeuer.

Now

ches, are called excreſions, proceeding from tough and flegmatique ſubſtances, ſtirred vp either by moſt ſore bruiſes, imperfect healed wounds, or other naughty putrifaction of the blood, being moſt apparant to the eye, and moſt palpable to the hand. Now for the cure (according to the generall opinion of the moſt Farriers) you ſhall firſt vſe corroſiue medicines, after drawing medicines, and laſtly drying medicines; or more particularly thus you ſhall cure them; firſt with an inciſion knife ſcarifie the excreſſion, then apply ſulphure and *Bitumen*, or *Coloquintida* burnt, and ſifted, and when it hath eaten the excreſſion away, then heale it vp with drying ſalues, as the powder of hony and lime, or Bolearmony, or ſuch like. Other Farriers vſe after they haue made the excreſſion to bleed well, then to take two ounces of the aſhes of *Vitis*, and as much vnſleckt lime, mixt with fixe ounces of ſtrong lye firſt ſtrained, then ſodde till halfe be conſumed, and ſo brought to a firme ſubſtance; then keepe it in a glaſſe in a dry place, and apply it to the excreſſion till it haue eaten it away, and then heale it vp as is beforeſaid. Other Farriers vſe to take a pound of ſtrong lye, ond ſope, and a quarter of a pound of vitrioll *Romane*, one ounce of *Saliarmoniacke*, and as much roch Allum, and boyle them together vntill they be very thicke, and then with that oyntment eate away the excreſſion. Other Farriers take of *Gipſiacum* the ſtrongeſt kinde, and lay it on the excreſſion with a cotten, three or foure times, and it will take cleane away: this medicine is moſt excellent for any ſplent, and of no ſmall importance, if it bee vſed a-

gainſt

ga inſt a Fiſtula, for it will ſinke it, although it were in the Crowne.

Chap. 130.

How to eate away any ſuperfluous or dead fleſh.

IF when your horſe hath any wound, vlcer, or other ſore, you ſhall perceiue that there groweth therein any dead fleſh, which dead fleſh you ſhall know, partly by the inſenſibilitie thereof, and partly in that it is a ſpungy, hollow, naughty fleſh, not ſubſtantiall as the true fleſh is; and either of a blackiſh, or an high red colour; then it ſhall bee meete that you ſeeke all meanes poſſible how to conſume and eate away that ſuperfluous and naughty fleſh, becauſe the ſore that is peſtred therewith, neither can nor will euer heale, till it be cleanſed of the ſame; therefore according to the opinion of the moſt ancient Farriers, the beſt meanes to eate it away, is, to boyle freſh greaſe and verdigreaſe, of each a like quantity together, and either to tent or plaiſter the ſore therewith, till the dead fleſh bee conſumed. Orher Farriers take either the ſcraping of Harts horne, or Oxe horne, and mixing them with old ſope, dreſſe the ſore therewith, and it will eate away dead fleſh.

Other Farriers take *Spongia Marina*, or ſea ſpung, and therewith dreſſe the ſore, and it will doe the like. Other Farriers vſe the powder of *Riſagallo* or *Riſagre*, but it is a great deale too ſtrong a fretter. Others vſe *Litergie*, or lime, in lye, but they are like very violent and ſtrong eaters.

Others

Others vſe to take either white or blacke Eleborus, Inke, quicke Sulphure, Orpiment, Litergie, Vitrioll, vnſleckt lime, Roche Allome, Galles, Soot, or the Aſhes of *Auellan*, of each halfe an ounce, and they will conſume dead fleſh; likewiſe quicke-ſiluer extinct, and verdigreaſe, of each an ounce made into powder, will do the like: the iuyce of *Borrage*, of *Scabious*, of *Fumitarie*, and of a docke, of each halfe an ounce; a little old oyle and vinegar boyld with a ſoft fire; put to it tarre, and it will likewiſe eate away any dead fleſh.

There be other Farriers which take *Cantharides*, Oxe dung and Vinegar, and mixe them together, and lay it to the ſore, and it will fetch away the dead fleſh. Others vſe firſt to pounce the ſore with a Razor, then annoynt it with greaſe, and ſtrew vpon it a pretty quantity of Orpiment. Other Farriers vſe in ſtead of *Riſagalla*, to take the powder of Verdigreaſe and Orpiment, of each an ounce, of vnſleckt lime, and Tartar, of each two ounces; mixe them together, and therewith dreſſe the ſore, after you haue waſht it well with ſtrong vinegar; and if you pleaſe, you may adde thereunto Vitrioll and Allome; for they are both great conſumers of dead fleſh. Other Farriers take the powder of Tartar, and mans dung burnt with ſalt, and then beaten into powder, and ſtrewed on the ſore; or elſe take ſalt, vnſleckt lime, and oyſter-ſhels; and beate them in a mortar with ſtrong lye, or old vrine, till it bee like a paſte: then bake it in an ouen, and after beat it to powder, and ſtrew it on the ſore, and it will eate away the dead fleſh.

Other Farriers vse first to wash the sore with Ale, wherein nettle seedes haue beene sodden, and then strew vpon it the powder of verdigrease. Now to conclude, you must euer obserue, that before you vse any of these medicines, you doe shaue away the haire, that it bee no impediment to the salue; also after you haue dresst it once, and see that there is an asker raised, then you shall dresse it with some mollifying, or healing salue, till the asker come away, and then dresse it with your eating salue againe, and thus doe vntill you behold that all the dead flesh be consumed, and that there is nothing but perfect and sound flesh, and then heale it vp as in cases of wounds.

Chap. 131.

For Knots in Ioynts, Hardnesse, Crampes, or any inflammations.

THere do grow in ioynts three sorts of swellings; namely, a hot swelling, a hard swelling, and a soft swelling; all which you may easily distinguish by your feeling, and they doe proceede either from aboundance of grosse humours, ingendred by foule keeping; or else by accident, as from some wound, rush, or straine. The cure whereof, according to the opinion of the most ancicent Farriers, is to beate the powder called *Diapente*, together with oile, till it be like an oyntment, and then apply it once a day to the griefe, and it will take it away, especially if it bee a Crampe, or an Inflammation.

Other Farriers vse to incorporate with oyle halfe an

an ounce of liquid *Storax*, two ounces of turpentine, sixe of Waxe, and ten of Bird-lime, and apply that to the griefe, and it will ease it. Other Farriers take wine, old oyle, and tarre, mingled and boyled together, and therewith dresse the sore place, and it will helpe it. Other of our latter Farriers take halfe a pound of grease, three scruples of mustard, and the like of bay salt; mixe these with vinegar, and apply it to the griefe. Other vse to take a plaister of figs, and the rootes of fearne and rocket, or mingle them with grease and vinegar, and apply it to the griefe. Other Farriers vse to take the *Vnguentum Basilicon*, which is made of hony, *Storax*, *Galbanum*, *Bdelium*, blacke Pepper, Bay berries, the marrow of a Stagge, of each a like quantity; twice as much of Armoniacke, and of the powder of Frankinsence as much as of any of the other, and incorporate them with sheepes suet, and apply it to the griefe, and it will helpe it. Other Farriers take dry Pitch, Pitch of Greece, of each one part, of *Galbanum*, and of Lime, of each foure parts, of *Bitumen* two parts, of Waxe three parts; melt them all together, and annoynt the place therewith very hot, and it will take away the griefe, and peraduenture also the eye-sore.

Chap. 132.

How to cure any wound made with the shot of Gun-powder.

According to the opinion of the most auncient Farriers, you shall first with a Probe, or long

instrument, search whether the bullet remaine within the flesh or no; and if you finde that it doth, then with another instrument for the purpose, you shall take it forth if it be possible; if otherwise, let it remaine: for in the end nature it selfe will weare it out of it owne accord, without any griefe or impement; because lead will not corrode or canker: then to kill the fire, you shall take a little Varnish, and thrust it into the wound with a feather, annoynting it well within euen vnto the bottome: then stoppe the mouth of the wound with a little soft flaxe dipped in Varnish also: then charge all the swolne place with this charge: Take of Bole-armonie a qnarterne, of lin-seed beaten into powder, halfe a pound, of beane flower as much, and three or foure egges, shelles and all; and of Turpentine a quarterne, and a quart of vinegar, and mingle them well together ouer the fire; and being somewhat warme, charge all the sore place with part thereof; and immediately clap a cloath or peece of leather vpon it, to keepe the wound from the cold aire, continuing both to annoynt the hole within with Varnish, and also to charge the swelling without, the space of foure or fiue dayes: then at the fiue dayes end, leaue annoynting of it, and taint it with a taint reaching to the bottome of the wound, and dipped in Turpentine and Hogges grease molten together, renewing it euery day twice vntill the fire bee throughly killed; which you shall perceiue by the mattering of the wound, and by falling of the swelling: for as long as the fire hath the vpper hand, no thicke matter will issue out; but onely a thinne, yellowish

yellowiſh water, neither will the ſwelling aſſwage: and then take of turpentine waſhed in nine ſeuerall waters, halfe a pound; and put thereunto three yolks of egges, and a little Saffron, and taint it with this oyntment, renewing it euery day once vntill the wound be whole. But if the ſhot haue gone quite through the wound, then you ſhall take a few weauers linnen thrummes, made very knotty, and dipping them firſt in varniſh, draw them cleane through the wound, turning them vp & downe in the wound at leaſt twice or thrice a day, & charging the wound on either ſide vpon the ſwoln places, with the charge aforeſaid, vntill you perceiue that fire is killd; then clappe onely a comfortable plaiſter vpon one of the holes, and taint the other with a taint in the ſalue, made of waſht turpentine, egges and ſaffron, as is aforeſaid. Other Farriers vſe only to kill the fire with the oyle of creame, and after to heale the wound vp with turpentine, waxe, and hogges greaſe molten together. Other Farriers kill the fire with ſnow water, and charge the ſwelld place with creame and barme beaten together: and then heale vp the wound, by dipping the taint in the yolke of an egge, hony and ſaffron well beaten and mixt together.

Chap. 133.

Of burning with lime, or any other fiery thing.

ACcording to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, you ſhall firſt waſh the ſore round about, and in euery part, very cleane with warme water;

then kill the fire, by annoynting the place with oyle and water beaten together, dreſſing him ſo euery day vntill the ſore be all raw, and then annoynt it with hogges greaſe, and ſtrew thereupon the powder of ſlecked lime, dreſſing him thus euery day once vntill hee be whole. Other Farriers vſe firſt to waſh and cleanſe the ſore with ſallet oyle onely warmed; then to kill the fire with creame and oyle beaten together, and when it is raw, then to ſpread vpon it creame and ſoote mixed together; and laſtly, to ſtrew vpon it the powder of hony and lime vntill it be perfectly skinned.

Chap. 134.
Of the biting with a madde Dogge.

IF your horſe at any time be bitten with a madde dogge, the venome of whoſe teeth will not onelie driue him into an extreame torment, but it will alſo infect and inflame his blood, in ſuch ſort, that the horſe will be endangered to die madde. The cure thereof, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, to take of goates dung, of fleſh that hath laine long in ſalt, and of the hearbe *Ebulus*, called generally Dan-wort, of each halfe a pound, and fourty wall-nuts; ſtampe all theſe together, and lay part thereof to the ſore, and it will ſucke out the venome, and heale vp the wound; but vpon the firſt dreſſing, you ſhall giue the horſe wine and treacle mixed together to drinke.

There bee other Farriers, which firſt giue the horſe Sacke and Sallet oyle to drinke, then with a hot

hot Iron cauterize and burne the ſore : and laſtly, heale vp the wound with the ſalue firſt recited. Other Farriers firſt giue the horſe two or three ſpoonfulls of the powder of *Diapente* to drinke in a pint of Muskadine; then take a liue Pidgion, and cleauing her in the middeſt, lay it hot vnto the wound, and it will draw out the venome; then heale the ſore with Turpentine and hogges greaſe well molten together.

Chap. 135.

Of hurts by the Tuskes of a Boare.

IF a horſe be ſtricken with the Tuskes of a Boare, you ſhall take Copporas and Vitrioll, and the powder of a dogges head, being burned, after the tongue hath beene pulled out, and caſt away; and mixing them together, apply it once a day to the ſore, and it will cure it : yet before you dreſſe it, firſt waſh the ſame very well, either with Vinegar or with white wine.

Chap. 136.

To heale the biting or ſtinging of Serpents, or any venemous beaſts whatſoeuer.

IF your horſe be either bitten or ſtung, either with ſerpent, or any other venemous beaſt, which you ſhall eaſily know by the ſudden ſwelling either of the body or member; then you ſhall firſt chafe him vp and downe till he ſweate, and then let him blood in the roofe of the mouth; and laſtly, take a young

cocke or a pidgion, and cleauing it in the midſt clap it hot in the wound, and then giue the horſe white wine and ſalt to drinke. Other Farriers take a good quantitie of the hearbe called *Sanicula*; ſtampe it, and diſtemper it with the milke of a cow, that is all of one colour, and giue it to the horſe to drinke, and it will heale him. Other Farriers clappe to the ſore Hogges dung, or Oxe dung, or Henbane bruiſed, or elſe the aſhes of reedes; then giue him to drinke mugwort, or great tanſie, and wine and camomill ſtampt together; or elſe giue him wine and *Oleum Roſatum* mixt together. Other Farriers make a plaiſter of Onions, Hony and Salt ſtampt and mingled together, and lay that to the ſore place, and giue the horſe wine and treacle to drinke, or elſe white pepper, Rew, and Time, mixt with wine. Other Farriers take *Alphodillus*, *Haſtula regia*, ſtampt with old wine and laid to the ſore: for it is moſt ſoueraigne good.

Chap. 137.

Of Lice and Vermine, and how to kill them.

THe Lice or Vermine which breed vpon a horſe, be like vnto geeſe Lice, but ſomewhat bigger, and doe breede moſt commonly about the eares, necke, maine, taile, and generally ouer the whole body; they do proceed from pouerty, or feeding in woods, where trees are continually dropping vpon them: the ſignes are, the horſe will be alwayes rubbing and ſcratching, and albeit he eate much meate, yet hee will not proſper; and with his continuall

rubbing

rubbing hee will fret and weare away all his maine, and taile, and you ſhall alſo perceiue the lice when the Sunne doth ſhine, running on the toppes of the haires. The cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, to take of ſope one pound, and of quicke-ſiluer halfe an ounce, mixe and beate them together well, vntill the quicke-ſiluer be killed, and then annoint the horſe all ouer therewith, and it will conſume the lice ſuddenly. Other Farriers take ſtaueſaker and ſope, and mixing them together, and annoint the horſe all ouer therewith. Other Farriers take vnripe Mulberries, and their roots or ſtalkes, and ſeeth them in ſtrong vrine, and then waſh the horſe therewith; after that annoynt all his body ouer with *Sanguis Draconis*, the iuyce of leekes, ſalt, pitch, oyle and ſwines greaſe, very well mixt together. Others vſe to chafe all his body ouer with quicke-ſiluer and ſoft greaſe mixt together, till the quicke-ſiluer be killed, and in two or three dreſſings the lice will be conſumed.

Chap. 138.

How to ſaue Horſes from the ſtinging of Flies in Summer.

IF you will ſaue your horſe in the Summer time from the ſtinging or biting of flies, which is very troubleſome vnto them, then you ſhall annoynt all the horſes body ouer either with Oyle and Bay-berries mingled together, or elſe binde vnto the head-ſtall of his collar, a ſponge dipped in ſtrong vinegar: ſome vſe to ſprinckle the ſtable with water wherein

hearbe

hearbe of grace hath beene laid to steepe; or else to perfume the stable with the sin oake of Iuy or Calamint, or with Githe burned in a panne of coales: But the surest way of all, both in the stable and abroad, is to make two good wispes of Rue, and therewithall to rubbe the horses body all ouer, and no flie will light vpon him, or touch him, as hath beene often approued.

Chap. 131.

Of bones being broken, or out of the ioynt.

OVr common English Farriers are very farre to seeke in this cure, because they neither doe perfectly acquaint themselues with the members of a horse, nor haue so much inuention in this extremity, to make a horse, being an vnreasonable creature, to suffer like a reasonable person; and also in that the old Traditions in Horse-leach-craft affirme, that all fractures aboue the knee are incurable; and so despairing, they cease to make practise; but they are much deceiued: for neither the fracture aboue the knee, nor the fracture below the knee, is more incurable in a horse then in a man: if the Farrier can tell how to keepe the horse from strugg'ling or tormenting the member grieued.

If therefore your horse haue any bone broken, which is most easie to be discerned by the depriuation of the vse of that member, and as easie to be felt by the seperation of the bones, the one part being higher then the other, besides the roughnesse and inequalitie of the place grieued: you shall then for the

the cure thereof, first take a strong double canuasse, which shalbe as broad as from the horses fore-shoulder to the flanke; and shall haue another double canuasse, which shall come from betweene the horses forebooths vp to the top of the withers, where meeting with the rest of the canuasse, and hauing exceeding strong roopes, to which strong ropes must bee fastned, you shall by maine force sling vp the horse from the ground, so as his feete may no more but touch the ground: and if it be a fore-legge that is broken, then you shall raise him a little higher before then behinde: if a hinder-legge, then a little higher behinde then before, so that the horse may rest most vpon the members most sound. VVhen your horse is thus slung, then you shall put the bones into the right place; which done, wrappe it close about with vnwashed wooll newly pulled from the sheepes backe, binding it fast to the legge with a smoothe linnen roller soaked before in oile and vinegar mingled together, and looke that your roller lie as smoothe and plaine as may be; and vpon that againe lay more wooll dipt in oyle and vinegar, and then splent it with three broad, smoothe, and strong splents, binding them fast at both ends with a thong; and in any case, let the horses legge be kept out very streight, the space of forty dayes, and let not the bondes be loosened aboue thrice in twenty dayes, vnlesse it shrinke, and so require to be new dressed and bound againe; but faile not euery day once to powre on the sore place, through the splents, oyle and vinegar mingled together: and at the end of the forty dayes, if you perceiue that the broken place

be

be ſowdred together againe with ſome hard knob or griſtle, then looſen the bonds, and eaſe the canuaſe, ſo as the horſe may tread more firmely vpon his fore-foot; which when he doth, you ſhall looſen him altogether, and let him go vp and downe faire and gently, vſing from thenceforth to annoynt the ſore place either with ſoft greaſe, or elſe with one of theſe plaiſters or ointments: Take of *Spuma Argenti*, of vinegar, of each one pound, of ſallet oyle halfe a pound, of Armoniacke, and of Turpentine, of each three ounces, of waxe and of rozen, of each two ounces, of *Bitumen*, of pitch, and of Verdigreaſe, of each halfe a pound; boyle the vinegar, oyle and *Spuma argenti* together, vntill it waxe thicke: then put thereunto the pitch, which being molten take the pot from the fire, and put in the *Bitumen*, without ſtirring it at all; and that being alſo molten, put in then all the reſt, and ſet the pot againe to fire, and let them boyle all together, vntill they be all vnited in one: that done, ſtraine it, and make it in plaiſter forme, and vſe it as occaſion ſhall ſerue.

Other Farriers take of liquide pitch, one pound, of waxe two ounces, of the pureſt and fineſt part of frankinſence, one ounce, of *Amoniacum* foure ounces, of drie Rozen and of *Galbanum*, of each one ounce, of vinegar two pints; boyle firſt the Vinegar and pitch together: then put in the *Amoniacum*, diſſolued firſt in Vinegar, and after that the aforeſaid Drugges: and after they haue boyled all together, and be vnited in one, ſtraine it, and make it into a plaiſter, and vſe it according to accaſion.

Other

Other Farriers take of old sallet oyle a quart, and put thereunto of Hogges grease, of *Spuma nitri*, of each one pound, and let them boyle together vntill it begin to blub aboue: then take it from the fire, and when you see any of the oyntment let it bee very warme, and well chafed in; and then one of the two former plaisters folded aboue it, and it is most soueraigne and comfortable for any bone that is broken.

Chap. 140.
Of Bones out of ioynt.

IF a horse haue any of his bones out of the ioynt, as either his knee, his shoulder, his pasterne, or such like, which you shall perceiue both by the vncomlinesse of the ioynt, and also feele by the hollownesse of the membre that is displaced: then your readiest cure is to cast the horse on his backe, and putting foure strong pasternes on his feet, draw him vp so as his backe may no more but touch the ground: then draw the grieued legge higher then the rest, till the poyse and weight of his body haue made the ioynt to shoot into its right place againe; which you shall know when it doeth, by a sudden and great cracke which the ioynt will giue when it falleth into the true place; then with all gentlenesse loose the horse, and let him rise: and then annoynt all the grieued place ouer, either with the last oyntment rehearsed in the last chapter, or else with the oyle of Mandrake, or the oyle of Swallowes, both which are of most soueraigne vertue.

Chap.

Chap. 141.

To dry vp humors, bind, being astrictiue or binding charges.

TAke of *Vnguentum Triapharmacum* made of *Litergie*, vinegar, and old oyle, boiled till they be thick, onely take as much oyle as of both the other, and it will stay the fluxe of any humours.

If you take strong lye, it is a great dryer and a binder of humours.

Dissolue in vinegar *Rosen*, *Affalto*, and *Myrre*, of each an ounce, of redde Waxe halfe an ounce, with a little *Galbanum*, of *Bitumen* halfe an ounce, and of Armoniacke halfe an ounce; mingle them well together in the boyling: for this salue drieth wonderfully, bindeth all loose members, and comforteth all parts that are weakned.

Take of lard two pounds, and when it is sodden straine it with three ounces of Ceruse, and as much Allome molten, and it both dryeth and bindeth exceedingly.

Dry figges beaten with allome, mustard, and vinegar, doth dry aboundantly.

Oyle or soft grease beaten to a salue with vitrioll.

Galles and Allome, and the powder of Pomegranats, Salt and Vinegar both drye and binde sufficiently.

Sope and vnsleckt lime mixt together drieth perfectly after any incision.

Verdigrease, Orpiment, *Sal-armoniacke*, and the powder of *Coloquintida*, of each a like made into a plaister

plaister with milke or waxe, drieth and bindeth.

The grease of snakes roasted, the head and tayle being cut away, is a great dryer.

To conclude, the barke of a willow tree burnt to ashes, is as great a dryer, and binder, as any simple whatsoeuer.

Chap. 142.

A plaister to dry vp superfluous moisture, and to binde parts loosened.

TAKE of *Bitumen* one pound, of the purest part of Frankinsence three ounces, of *Bdelium Arabicum* one ounce, of Deares suet one pound, of *Populeum* one ounce, of *Galbanum* one ounce, of the drops of *Storax* one ounce, of common wax one pound, of *Resin Cabial* halfe a pound, of *Viscus Italicus* one ounce and a halfe, of *Apoxima* one ounce, of the iuyce of Hyssop one ounce, of the droppes of Armoniacke one ounce, of Pitch halfe a pound; let all these be well and perfectly molten, dissolued, and incorporated together according to Arte, and then make a plaister thereof.

Chap. 143.

Another plaister to dry vp any swelling, wind-gall, splent, or bladders, in or about the ioynts.

TAKE of Virgin-waxe halfe a pound, of Rozen one pound and a quarter, of *Galbanum* one ounce and an halfe, of *Bitumen* halfe a pound, of Myrrhe secundary one pound, of Armoniacke three ounces,

of

of *Costus* three ounces; boyle all these things together in an earthen pot, saving the Armoniacke and *Costus*, which beeing first ground like fine flowre, must be added vnto the other things, after that they haue beene boyled and cooled, and then boyled altogether againe, and well stirred, so as they may be incorporated together, and made all one substance, and then applied as occasion shall be administred.

Chap. 144.

Receipts to dissolue humours.

TAke of Wormewood, Sage, Rosemary, and the barke of an Elme, or of a pine, of each a like quantity, and boyle them in oyle with a good quantity of linseed; and making a bathe thereof, bathe the grieued part, and it will dissolue any humors that are gathered or bound together.

A pound of figges stampt with salt till they come to a perfect salue, dissolueth all manner of humours, by opening the pores, and giuing a large passage.

Chap. 145.

How to mollifie any hardnesse.

TAke of Linseed pund, and of Fenugreeke, of each foure ounces, of Pitch, and Rozen, of each three ounces, of the flowers of Roses two ounces, pitch of Greece sixe ounces; boyle them together, then adde three ounces of turpentine, sixe ounces of hony, and a little oyle; and then applying this salue, it will mollifie any hard substance.

Maluamisio

Maluauiſco well ſod, and ſtampt with *Oleum Roſatum*; being laid hot vnto any hardneſſe, will make it ſoft.

Boyle *Branck vrſin*, and mallowes together, and beate them with greaſe, oyle, and lard, and they will mollifie and heale moſt exceedingly.

Maluauiſco, coleworts, *Branck vrſin*, hearbe of the wall, and old greaſe, being beaten together, mollifie very much.

The oyle of *Cypreſſe*, both mollifieth and healeth.

Wheate meale, hony, pellitory, *Branck vrſin*, and the leaues of Wormewood, being beaten with ſwines greaſe, and laid hot vnto any hard tumor, doth ſuddenly mollifie it, and is paſſing good for any ſtripe alſo.

Greaſe, Muſtard-ſeed, and Comen, boyled togetſter, doth mollifie very much.

Take of Sope halfe an ounce, of vnſleckt Lime an ounce, and mixe them well with ſtrong lye, and it will mollifie, euen the hardeſt houes.

The iuyce of the leaues and rootes of Elder, or a plaiſter made thereof, doth dry vp and mollifie humours maruellouſly.

So doth the iuyce of the toppes of *Cypreſſe*, and dry figges macerated in Vinegar and ſtrained, of each three ounces, and if you adde to it of *Saliniter* an ounce, of Armoniacke halfe an ounce, of Aloes and opoponaxe a little, and make it into an oyntment, it will mollifie any hardneſſe very ſufficiently.

Mallowes, Nettles, *Marcorella*, and the rootes of

Cowcumbers, and Turpentine, being beaten together with old greaſe, will mollifie any hardneſſe ſpeedily.

Chap. 146.
To harden any ſoftneſſe.

THE ſole of an old ſhooe burnt, and ſodden in vinegar, will harden houes, and ſo will alſo the powder of galles boyled with branne and ſalt in ſtrong vinegar.

The powder of hony and lime, or the powder of oyſterſhels, or the powder of burnt felt, or thicke creame and ſoote mixt together, will harden any ſore whatſoeuer.

Chap. 147.
To Conglutinate.

IRis *Illirica* beaten & ſifted, mingled with pepper, hony, corrants, and giuen the horſe to drink with wine, and oyle, helpeth and conglutinateth any inward rupture or burſtneſſe whatſoeuer.

Dragant, Saffron, the fruit of the Pine, with the yolkes of egges, giuen likewiſe to drinke with wine, and oyle, doth alſo conglutinate any inward member or veine broken.

Incenſe, maſticke, and cute, doth the like alſo.

Poligano ſod in wine, & giuen to drink, is good alſo.

The rootes ad ſeedes of *Aſparagus* ſod in water, and giuen to the horſe; then after for three dayes giue him butter and opoponaxe, with hony and myrre, and it will conglutinate any inward vlcer or rupture whatſoeuer.

Chap.

Chap. 148.
To mundifie or cleanse any sore.

TAke oyle of Oliues, swines grease clarified, the grease of a young Fox, turpentine, allome, and white wax; seeth them all together, till they be most throughly incorporated together; and with this oyntment dresse any foule sore whatsoeuer, and it will mundifie, and cleanse it most sufficiently.

Chap. 149.
Of recussiue medicines, or such as driue backe humours.

REpercussiue medicines, or such as driue euill humours backe, are commonly called amongst Farriers, plaisters, or salues defensitiue, and are to be vsed about euery great wound & vlcer, lest the flux of humors flowing to the weak part, both confound the medicines, & breed more dangerous exulcerations. Now of these repercussiue medicines these are the best, either vinegar, salt, and bolearmoniack beaten together, and spread round about the sore, or else white lead and sallet oyle beaten also together; or red lead and sallet oyle, or else *Vnguentum Album Camphiratum*, and such like.

Chap. 150.
Of burning Compositions.

BVrning Compositions are, for the most part, corrosiues, of which wee shall haue occasion to speak more at large in a chapter following; yet for

as much as some are of better temper then others, you shall here vnderstand that of all burning compositions, the gentlest is *Vnguentum Apostolorum*: next to it is verdigrease and hogges grease beaten together; next to it is *Precipatate*, and Turpentine mixt together: next to it Arsnicke allayd with any oyle, or healing salue; next to it is Mercury *Sublimate*, likewise allayd with some cooling salue; and the worst is Lime and Sope, or lime and strong lye beaten together: for they will corrode and mortifie the soundest part or member whatsoeuer.

Chap. 151.

For all manner of hurts about a horse whatsoeuer.

TAke an ounce of oyle, two ounces of Turpentine, and a little waxe; mingle them at the fire: this will heale any wound or gall, & keepe it cleane from filth, water, and durt.

Take vinegar and hony, and boyle it together, when it is cold adde the powder of verdigrease, copporas, and brasse, burnt, mingle them well together; this will take away all ill and dead flesh, and cleanse and heale any old vlcer.

Take Waxe, Pitch, Swines grease, and turpentine, and mix them well together: this will heale any bone or spell, or any other stubbe.

Take house snailes, and seeth them in butter, and they will draw out any thorne or naile, being oft renewed. So will also the rootes of reeds being bruised and applied.

The

The rootes of an Elder beaten to powder, and boyled with hony, is good for any old sore.

Take salt, butter, and hony, or white wax, turpentine and oyle *Rosatum*, of each a like quantity, with twice as much beane flowre as of any of the other; mixe it very well together, and make it into a salue, and it will heale any sore, either old or new, whatsoeuer.

Take Wax, Turpentine, and Deeres suet, or the marrow of a Stagge, and mixe them well together, and it will heale any wound or impostume: so will also Wax, Oyle, Mastick, Frankinsence, and Sheepes suet well molten together; or the powder of Masticke, Frankinsence, and Allowes, mixt and molten well together.

The whites of egges beaten with *Oleum Rosatum*, and salt, and so laid vpon flaxe hurds, healeth any wound that is not in any principall part where the Muscles are.

If you will cleanse and heale any sore, take three pints of well clarified hony, and boyle it with one pint of Vinegar, and one of Verdigrease, and so apply it; or else take of Masticke, and Verdigrease, of each halfe an ounce, of Frankinsence one ounce, of new Waxe foure ounces, of Turpentine sixe ounces, and of Hogges grease two pound, boile and incorporate all these together, and then apply it to the sore, and it will both cleanse and heale.

Chick-weed, groundsell, graise, and stale vrine, very well boyled together, will heale any galling or hurts by halter, or other accident, or any straine, or

ſtripe, or ſwelling, which commeth by any ſuch like miſchance.

Take of new milke three quarts, a good handfull of Plantaine; let it boyle till a pint bee conſumed: then adde three ounces of allome made into powder, and one ounce and an halfe of white ſugar candy, made likewiſe into powder: then let it boyle a little, till it haue a hard curde: then ſtraine it, with this warme, bathe any old vlcer; then dry it, and lay on ſome *Vnguentum Baſilicon*; this cleanſeth, dryeth, ſtrengtheneth, and killeth the itch, and healeth the fouleſt vlcer either in man or beaſt, that may bee. Alſo, if you take of milke a quart, of Allome in powder two ounces, of vinegar a ſpoonefull; when the milke doth ſeeth, put in the allome and vinegar, then take off the curd, and vſe the reſt, and it will likewiſe dry vp and heale any foule old ſore whatſoeuer.

Chap. 152.

How to make the powder of Hony, and Lime.

TAke ſuch a quantity of vnſleckt Lime, as you ſhall thinke fit, beate it into very fine powder; then take ſo much hony as ſhall ſuffice to mingle it together, and make it into a ſtiffe paſte, in the forme of a thicke cake or loafe; then put the ſame cake or loafe into a hot ouen, or a burning fire, till it be baked, or burnt glowing redde; then take it forth, and when it is cold, beate it into very fine powder, and then vſe it as any occaſion ſhall ſerue. It drieth, healeth, and skinneth any ſore whatſoeuer very marueilouſly.

Chap.

Chap. 153.

The order of taking vp of veines, and wherefore it is good.

First, before wee speake of the order of taking vp of veines, you shall vnderstand that all veines except the necke-veines, the eye-veines, the breast-veine, the palate-veines, and the spurre-veines, are to be taken vp, and not stricken with the fleame; partly becauſe they be ſo little and thin, that if you ſtrike them you ſhall either endanger the ſtriking thorough them; or partly becauſe they are ſo neere adioyning to arteries and ſinewes, that if in ſtriking you ſhould hit and pricke either artery or ſinew, it were a preſent laming of the horſe, as I haue often times ſeene and noted in the practiſe of many ignorant Smiths. Now touching the order of taking vp of a veine, it is thus.

First you ſhall caſt your horſe either vpon ſome ſoft ground, graſſe, ſome dunghill that is not very moiſt, or in ſome light ſome houſe, on good ſtore of ſweet ſtraw; then when the horſe is thus caſt, you ſhal look for the veine which you intend to take vp, and if it be either ſo ſmall, or lie ſo deepe, that you can hardly perceiue it; then you ſhall with warme water, rub, chafe, and bathe all that part where the veine lyeth; then take a narrow ſilke garter, and a handful or two aboue the veine (if it be of any of the horſes legs) garter the member very ſtraite; but if it be a veine to be taken on the body, or breſt; then with a ſurſingle either cloſe behind the hinder

point of the ſhoulder, or within a handfull of the place, where you meane to take vp the veine, gird him very ſtraite; and preſently you ſhall ſee the veine to ariſe; then marke that part of the skinne which couereth the veine, and with you fingar and your thumbe, pull it ſomewhat aſide from the veine, and then with a very fine inciſion knife ſlit the skinne cleane through, without touching the veine, and in any wiſe cut no deeper then through the skinne, and that long-wiſe too, in ſuch ſort as the veine goeth, yet not aboue an inch at the moſt in length; that done, remoue your fingar and your thumbe, and the skinne will returne againe into his place, right ouer the veine as it was before, inſomuch that but opening the orifice, or ſlit, you ſhall ſee the veine lye blew, and bare before your eyes; then take a fine ſmooth cornet made either of the browantler of a ſtag, or of an old bucke, and thruſt it vnderneath the veine, and lift it vp a pretty diſtance (that is to ſay, halfe the thickneſſe of the cornet) aboue the skinne; that done, you ſhall then looſe either the garter or the ſurſingle, for they are but onely helpes for you to find out the veine; and where the veine will appeare without them, there by no meanes you ſhall vſe them.

Now when you haue thus taken your veine vpon your cornet, you ſhall then either put a red ſilke thrid, dipt in oyle or butter, or elſe a ſmall ſhooemakers thrid, vnderneath the veine alſo, ſomewhat higher then the cornet, which ſilke or thrid muſt ſerue to knit the veine when time requires; then the cornet ſtanding ſtill as before, with your knife

slit the toppe of the veine long-wise, the length of a barley corne, that it may bleede; then stopping the nether part of your veine with the silke or third, suffer it to bleed from aboue; then with your silke or thrid remoued aboue, knit it fast with a sure knot aboue the slit suffering it onely to bleede from beneath, and hauing bled there also sufficiently, then knit vp the veine beneath the slit with a sure knot, then fill the hole of the veine with salt, and heale vp the wound of the skinne with Turpentine and Hogges grease molten together, or else with a little fresh butter, layd on with a little flaxe or tow.

Now the vertue which redounds from this taking vp of veines: first it is very necessary, and doth ease all grieues, straines, and stiffenesse of the limbes; for the taking vp of the plat-veines easeth all paines in the brest, and greiues in the chest; the taking vp of the fore-thigh veines easeth Farcies, and swellings of the legges; the taking vp of the shackle-veines before, helpeth gourding, qvitter-bones, and the swelling of the ioynts, scabbes, and scratches; the taking vp of the hinder hough-veines, helpeth spauens of both kinds, most especially any Farcy in those parts, and generally all swellings or impostumes; the taking vppe of the pastorne-veines behind helpeth swellings about the cronet, or nether ioynts, Paines, Mules, and all manner of kibed heels, besides sundry other such like diseases.

CHAP.

Chap. 154.

Of cauterizing or giuing the fire, the kinds and vses.

THe giuing of fire which amongst the best Farriers is called cauterizing, and amongst the simpler burning, searing, or blistering, (is according to the generall opinion of all the most ancientest Farriers) the chiefest remedy; and as it were the last refuge of all diseases incident to any horses body, whether they be naturall or accidentall; for the violence of fire separating and disgesting all manner of humours, into a thinne ayre, and loose body, cleanseth and auoydeth those grosnesse which are the materiall causes of all putrifaction and vlceration, Now of cauterization there be two kinds, the one of them actuall, which is that which is done by the hand, and with the instrument; that is to say of the hot Iron of what fashion soeuer: The other potentiall, which is done by the applying of medicine whose nature is either corrosiue, putrifactiue, or caustique.

Now the first of these, which is the cautery actuall, is principally to be vied when there is any apposturnation in any sinew part or member, or amongst any of the most principall veines: Also when you shall dismember or cut away any ioynt, or make any incision where there is feare of any fluxe of blood, or where you shall find either the skinne or muscles, shrunke or straitned, and in many such like cases.

The cauterizing potentiall is to bee vsed in old cankered

cankered vlcers, wennes, or any spongy excrestion either of flesh or bone whatsoeuer, of whose natures and properties you shall reade more hereafter in a following chapter.

Chap. 155.
Of the cauterize actuall, and the forme of Instruments.

AN actuall cautery, according to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers, being moderately vsed, is a notable remedy to stop all corruption in members, to keepe perfect the complexion of the same, and also to stanch the blood, onely you must haue a carefull regard that in the handling of your Iron, you touch neither sinewes, tendants, cords, nor ligaments, lest you do vtterly disable the member, or breed crampes or conuultions; except it be when you dismember or cut away any ioynt; as when you do make curtals, geld horses, or such like: and then your cautery is to be vsed onely to seare the veines, sinewes, and ligaments, till such time that you are perfectly assured that all fluxe of blood is stopped, whatsoeuer.

Now againe the actuall cautery bindeth together parts loosened, it doeth attenuate parts blowne, and puffed vp; it dryeth vp superfluous moysture; it looseneth, disperseth, and deuideth euill matter gathered together into knots, it asswageth old griefues, it rectifieth those parts of the body that are corrupted by any manner of way, reducing them to their first perfect estate, and suffereth no abound-

dance

dance of euill humours to grow to increaſe: for the skin being ſeparated and opened with the hot Iron, all putrifaction through the vertue of the fire, is firſt digeſted and ripened, and then ſo diſſolued, that the matter doth iſſue out aboundantly at the holes, whereby the grieued or ſickned member is now healed, and eaſed of all paine and griefe; yea, and inſomuch that the holes being once cloſed, and cleane ſhut vp, the place is ſtronger and better knit together, and couered with a tougher skinne then euer it was before, onely the greateſt blemiſh that can any way be found in cautery is, that it commonly leaueth a great ſcarre, which is many times an eye-ſore more then is tollerable; and therefore the vſe of cauterizing is onely to be preferred but in deſperate caſes of great extremity; for albeit it worke foule, yet it is moſt certaine, it workes moſt ſure.

Now as touching the inſtruments wherewith you muſt cauterize their ſuſtance and proportion, you ſhall vnderſtand that the moſt cnrious Farriers doe preferre either gold or ſiluer to be the beſt mettall to make them of, in that few or no euill accidents do follow where they burne: But the wiſeſt, beſt, and moſt skilfulleſt Farriers take copper to be ſufficient enough, and a mettall without any lawfull exception; yet where copper inſtruments cannot be had, there you may with commendations enough, vſe ſuch inſtruments are made of Iron, and finde your worke no deale at all hindred.

Now for the faſhion or proportion of your inſtruments, or Irons, they are to bee referred to the

the ſore, or place grieued, wherewith you are to meddle, according to the diuerſitie whereof your inſtruments are to bee made of diuers faſhions, as ſome are to bee made knife-wiſe, either with thinne edges, or broad edges; and they be called drawing kniues, or ſearing kniues, becauſe they are principally employed in the drawing of ſtraight lines ſhallow, or deepe, and ſometimes in circular or diuers ſquares: ſome are made like ſtraite, and ſome like crooked bodkins, and they are employed either in fleſhy excreſſions, to cauſe exulceration; or elſe in impoſtumes to open ſmall paſſages for the matter; ſome are made like hookes or ſickles, and they are to bee vſed where the wound is crooked, for the burning out of dead fleſh, or ſuch like hidden euils, which cannot be reacht by any ſtrait inſtruments: Others are made either with great buttons or little buttons at the end; and they are vſed to open Impoſtumes, or elſe to burne into the ſound fleſh where you intend to make any new ſore or iſſue for the drawing or keeping backe of other euill humours. And in making of theſe Irons, the Farriers owne iudgement is to be of great valew, becauſe he muſt either increaſe and diminiſh them according to the manner of the place grieued; and be ſure that he euer make them fit for his right purpoſe,

Now for the vſe of theſe inſtruments, there are two principall things to be regarded: Firſt, the heating of the yron, and next the true temper, or beating of the Farriers hand.

Touching the heating of the yron, you ſhall vnderſtand,

derstand, that the backe of the Iron must neuer be so hot as the edge, that is to say, you must neuer make the backe of the Iron red hot, for feare that thereby it yeeld too much heate, and so consequently breed inflammation; therefore whensoeuer you see the backe of your Iron as hot as the edge, you shall a little coole it with water.

Now for the temper, or bearing of your hand, you shall vnderstand that the more euenly, and lightly it is done, so much the better it is done; and herein is to bee considered, the fineneſſe or thickeneſſe of the horses skin, which you shall know most commonly by his haire; for if it be short and fine, then the skinne is thin; if it be long and rough, then is his skin thicke and boysterous.

Now the skinne that is fine, must be cauterized or seared with a very light hand, in as much as the skinne is soone pierced through, and the thicke skinne with a heauy hand, and both of them with such a tempred hand, that the skinne must no more but looke yellow; wherein you shall euer find that the fine skinne will sooner looke yellow then the thicke skinne, the reason being, because the thickenes and roughnes of the haire of the thicke skinne doth coole and choake the heat of the Iron, insomuch that if it be not laid to with a more heauy hand, and the instrument so much the more and the oftner heated, it cannot worke that effect which in Art it should doe.

Now you shall also obserue, that in drawing of any line or other cauterize whatsoeuer, that you euer draw with the haire, and neuer against the haire,

haire, whether the lines be ſhort, long, deepe, ſhallow, ſtraight, crooked, or ouerthwart, according as the griefe doth require.

Now to conclude, you are to obſerue in cauterizings, theſe few precepts: Firſt, that you doe not giue fire to any ſinewy place, except there be ſome apparant ſwelling, or elſe impoſtumation; Secondly, that you giue not fire to any bone that is broken, or out of ioint, for feare of breeding a generall weakeneſſe in the whole member. Thirdly, neuer to giue the fire ſo deepe, or ſuffer your hand to bee ſo heauy, that you may miſhape or deforme the horſe, either by vnneceſſary figures, or vncomely ſcarres. Fourthly, not to be too raſh or haſty in giuing fire, as if euery cure were to bee wrought by that practiſe onely (as I know ſome very well reputed Farriers hold of opinion) but onely to attempt all other good meanes before; and when all hope elſe is deſperate, then to make the fire your laſt refuge, as an extremity that muſt preuaile when all other practiſes doe periſh. Laſtly, I would not haue you like thoſe fooliſh Farriers which know nothing vtterly to contemne and neglect it, as if it were vſeleſſe, but with all moderation and diſcretion to apply it in fit time and place, whereby the poore horſe may gaine eaſe, your ſelfe good reputation, and the owner profite; which is moſt certaine, as long as you are gouerned by wiſedome.

CHAP.

Chap. 156.

Of cauterize by medicine, which is cauterize Potentiall.

THe potentiall cauterize or searing of the flesh by medicine is (as I said before) when the medicines are either corrosiue, putrifactiue, or caustick; corrosiue, as when they doe corrode, rot, gnaw, and fret the flesh; putrifactiue, when they doe corrupt the complexion of the member, and doe induce a maine scarre like dead flesh, causing infinite paine, in such sort as they are often accompanied with Feuers and mortality, and therefore are not to be administred, but to strong bodies, and in very strong diseases; and caustick, which is as much to say as burning, when the operation is so strong, that it inclineth, and commeth neerest to the nature of fire, and so burneth and consumeth whatsoeuer it toucheth.

Now these potentiall cauterizes doe exceed and excell one another by certaine degrees, as thus, the corrosiues are weaker then the putrifactiues, and the putrifactiues are weaker then the caustickes; the corrosiues worke vpon the vpper part in the soft flesh, the putrifactiues in the depth of the hard flesh; and the caustickes haue power to breake skinne sound or vnsound, both in hard and soft flesh, and that very deepely also.

Now of corrosiues some be simple and some bee compound: the simple corrosiues are Roch Allome, burnt or vnburnt, the spung of the sea somewhat burnt

burnt, Lime, redde Correll, powder of Mercury, the shauings of an Oxe or Harts horne, *Precipitate*, verdigrease, and such like. The commpound corrosiues are, blacke sope, and lime, *Vnguentum Apostolorum*, and *Vnguentum Egiptiacum*, and *Vnguentum Caraceum*, and many such like; and these are to bee applied vnto sores, vlcers or excressions, after they are corroded.

The putrifactiues are Arsnicke, either white or yellow, *Sublimatum*, *Resalgar*, or any medicine compounded with any of them; besides *Sandaracha Chrysocollo*, and *Aconitum*.

Now if you would haue your putrifactiue medicines to be crustiue, that is, breeding a great scarre, and hot in the fourth degree; then they are vnsleckt lime, and the burned dregges of wine; and these are to be vsed to Carbunkles, Cankers and Anburies.

The caustick medicines are those which are made of strong lye, called *Capitellum*, or *Magistra*, of *Vitriole Romane*, *Sal-niter*, *Aqua fortis*, *Apiũ*, *Cantharides*, *Ciclamine*, Onyons, strong Garlicke, *Melanacardinum*, the stones or graines of Briony, and many such like.

Now in the conclusion I would wish euery diligent Farrier seldome or neuer to vse either *Arsnicke*, *Resalgar*, or *Mercurie sublimate*, simply of themselues, but rather to allay them (if the substance whereon they are to worke be very great) with *Vnguentum Apostolorum*; but if it be very litle, then with hogges grease, Turpentine, or such like. And thus much for this potentiall cauterizing, and the proper vses.

Chap. 157.

Of the rowelling of horses, and the vse thereof.

THE rowelling of horses is, amongst our ignorant and simple Smiths, the most ordinary and generall practise of all other whatsoeuer, insomuch that not any disease can almost bee found about a horse, either how slight or great soeuer it bee, but presently without any reason or fence therefore, they will rowell him for the same; whereby they not onely put the horse to a needlesse torment, but also bring downe (now and then) such a fluxe of naughty humours, that they lame the horse, which otherwise would be perfectly sound. But it is not my theame to dispute of their ignorances; onely this I must say of rowelling, it is a practise as necessary and commendable for the good estate of a horses limbes and body, as any medicine whatsoeuer, so it be applyed in his due time, and in his due place; otherwise on the contrary part, it is contrary to all goodnesse.

The helpes which are got by rowelling, are these, it separateth and dissolueth all euill humours, which either through naturall or vnnaturall corruptions are gathered and knit together in any one place, hindring the office of any member, or deforming the body by any superfluitie of euill substance, it looseneth parts that are bound, and bindeth those parts that are weakened; it giueth strength vnto sicke ioynts, and comforteth whatsoeuer is oppreſt with any cold fleame, or hotte cholericke substance;

ſubſtance; the generall vſe of rowelling, is either for old inward ſtrains, eſpecially about the ſholders or hips, or elſe for great hard ſwellings, which will not be mollified or corroded by any outward medicine which is either plaiſter or vnguent: for you muſt vnderſtand, that when a horſe receiueth any ſtraine or bruiſe, either in the vpper ioynts of his ſhoulders or his hips, which ioints do not ſtand one vpon another, as the lower ioynts doe, but they goe one into another, as the one end of the marrow-bone into the pot of the ſpade-bone, and the other end into the pot of the elbow, which is a double bone: Now as I ſay, when a bruiſe is receiued in theſe parts, if by preſent application of hot and comfortable medicines the griefe be not taken away, then eftſoones there gathers betweene the pot and the bone, a certaine bruiſed ielly, which continually offendeth the tender griſtle which couers the ends of euery bone, make the horſe to halt vehemētly; and then is this corrupt matter not to be taken away by any outward medicine, but by rowelling only; and as I ſpeake of the ſhoulder, ſo I ſpeake of the hips alſo, where the vper thigh-bone goeth into the pot of the canel-bone, and there breeds the like infirmity. Now for the maner of rowelling, it is in this ſort: Firſt, when you haue found out the certaine place of the horſes griefe, as whether it bee on the fore-pitch of the ſhoulder, on the hinder elbow, or on the hippe, then you ſhall (hauing caſt the horſe vpon ſome dung-hill, or ſoft ground) make a little ſlit more then a handfull below the place of his griefe through the skinne, and no more, ſo bigge

as you may well thruſt in a Swannes quill into the ſame: then with your cornet raiſe the skinne a little from the fleſh, and then put in your quill, and blow all the skinne from the fleſh vpward, euen to the toppe, and all ouer the ſhoulder: then ſtopping the hole with your finger and your thumbe, take a ſmall hazell ſticke, and all to beate the blowne place all ouer; and then with your hand ſpread the winde into euery part, and after let it goe: then take a a tampin of horſe haire twound together, or which is better, of redde ſarcinet, halfe the bigneſſe of a mans little finger, and aboue a foote or ſixteene inches in length, putting it into your rowelling needle, which would be at the leaſt ſeuen or eight inches long; thruſt it in at the firſt hole, and ſo putting it vpward, draw it out againe at leaſt ſix inches aboue that: and then, if you pleaſe, you may put in another aboue that: and then tye the two ends of the tampins or rowels together, and moue and draw them to and fro in the skinne, in any wiſe not forgetting, both before you put them in, and euery day after they are in, to annoynt them well with butter, hogges greaſe, or oyle de bay.

Now there be other Farriers, which in that they are opiniated that theſe long rowels, or tampins of haire or ſilke, doe make both a double ſore, and a great ſcarre, therefore they make their rowels of round peeces of ſtiffe leather, ſuch as is the vpper part of an old ſhooe, with a round hole in the middeſt, according to this forme: and then doubling it when they put it in, as

ſoone

soone as it is within, to spread it, and lay it flat betweene the flesh and the skinne, and so as the hole of the rowell may answere iust with the hole that is made in the horses skinne; and then once in two or three dayes to cleanse the rowell, and to annoynt it and so put it in againe.

Other Farriers do vse to make the rowell of lanthorne-horne in the same fashion as is made of leather, and in like sort to vse it. But for mine owne part, I haue vsed them all, and truly in my practise, finde not any better then other; onely the leather or the horne is somewhat more cleanely, and lesse offensiue to the eye, yet they aske much more attendance.

Now if you rowell your horse for any swelling, then you shall euer put in your long rowell the same way that the veines runne, and seldome or neuer crosse-wise, and the more you blow the skinne for a swelling, so much the better it is: for the winde is it which onely occasioneth putrifaction, and makes the festred humours to dissolue, and distill downe from the secret hollowes of the ioynts, into those open places where it falleth away in matter, and so the beast becomes cured.

Chap. 158.

How to geld Horses or Colts.

There is to be obserued in the gelding of horses, first, the age; secondly, the season of the yeare; and lastly, the state of the Moone. For the age, if it be a colt, you may geld him at nine dayes old, or fif-

teene, if his ſtones bee come downe; for to ſpeake the truth, the ſooner that you geld him, it is ſo much the better both for his growth, ſhape, and courage; albeit ſome hold an opinion, that at two yeeres old ſhould bee the ſooneſt, but they are miſtaken, and their reaſons are weake therein.

Now if it be a horſe that you would geld, then there is no ſpeech to bee made of his age: for it is without any queſtion, that a perfect Farrier may geld a horſe without danger at any age what ſoeuer, being carefull in the cure.

Now for the ſeaſon of the yeere, the beſt is in the Spring, betweene Aprill and May, or in the beginning of Iune at the furtheſt, or elſe about the fall of the leafe, which is the latter end of September.

Now for the ſtate of the Moone, the fitteſt time is euer when the Moone is in the wane: as touching the manner of gelding, it is in this ſort; whether it bee Foale, Colt, or Horſe: Firſt, you ſhall caſt him either vpon ſtraw, or vpon ſome dunghill; then taking the ſtone betweene your foremoſt finger, and your great finger, you ſhall with a very fine inciſion knife ſlit the codde, ſo that you may preſſe the ſtone foorth, and no more: then with a paire of ſmall nippers, made either of ſteele, boxe-wood, of braſill, being very ſmooth, and clap the ſtrings of the ſtone betweene them, very neere vnto the ſetting on of the ſtone, and preſſe them ſo hard, that there may be no fluxe of blood: then with a thinne drawing cauterizing Iron made redde hot, ſeare away the ſtone; then take a hard plaiſter made of rozen, Waxe, and Turpentine, well molten together

ther, and with your hot Iron melt it vpon the head of the ſtrings: then ſeare the ſtrings, and then melt more of the ſalue, till ſuch time as you haue laid a good thickneſſe of the ſalue vpon the ſtrings: then looſe the nippers, and as you did with that ſtone, ſo doe with the other alſo: then fill the two ſlits of the codde with white ſalt, and annoynt all the outſide of the codde, and all the horſes belley and thighes with hogges greaſe cleane rendred; and ſo let him riſe; and keepe him either in ſome very warme ſtable, or in ſome very warme paſture, where he may walke vp and downe: for there is nothing better for a horſe in this caſe, then moderate exerciſe.

Now if after his gelding you doe perceiue that his codde and ſheath doth ſwell in any extraordinary faſhion, then you ſhall chaſe him vp and downe, and make him trot an houre in a day, and it will ſoone recouer him, and make him ſound without any impediment.

Chap. 159.
Of the making of Curtals, or cutting off of the tailes of Horſes.

THe curtalling of Horſes is vſed in no Nation whatſoeuer, ſo much as in this kingdom of ours, by reaſon of much carriage, and heauy burthens which our horſes continually are exerciſed and imployed withall, and the rather ſith wee are ſtrongly opiniated, that the taking away of thoſe ioynts doth make the horſes chine or backe a great deale

ſtronger, and more able to ſupport a burthen, as in truth it doth, and we daily finde it by continuall experience.

Now for the manner of curtalling of horſes, it is in this ſort: Firſt, you ſhall with your finger and your thumbe, grope till you finde the third ioynt from the ſetting on of the horſes taile; and hauing found it, raiſe vp all the haire, and turne it backeward; then taking a very ſmall ſtrong cord, wrappe it about that ioynt, and pull it both with your owne ſtrength, and another mans, ſo ſtraight as you can poſſible pull it: then wrappe it about againe, and draw it as ſtraight or ſtraighter againe: and thus doe three or foure times about the taile, with all the poſſible ſtraightneſſe that may bee; and then make faſt the ends of the cord: then take a peece of wood, whoſe end is ſmooth and euen, of iuſt height with the ſtrunt of the horſes taile; and ſetting it betweene the horſes hinder legges (after you haue tramelled all his foure legges, in ſuch ſort that hee can no wayes ſtirre) then lay his taile thereupon, and taking a maine ſtrong ſharpe knife made for the purpoſe, ſet the edge thereof ſo neere as you can geſſe it, betweene the fourth and fifth ioynt, and then with a great Smiths hammer ſtriking vpon the backe of the knife, cut the taile aſunder; then if you ſee any blood to iſſue forth, you ſhall know that the cord is not ſtraight enough, and therefore you muſt draw it ſtraighter; but if no blood follow, then it is well bound; This done, you ſhall take a redde hot burning yron, made round after this faſhion, of the full

compaſſe

compaſſe of the fleſh of the horſes tayle, that the bone of the taile may goe through the hole, and with it you ſhall ſeare the fleſh, till you haue mortified it; and in the ſearing you ſhall ſee the ends of the veines ſtart out like pape heades; but you ſhall ſtill continue ſearing them, vntill you ſee all to bee moſt ſmooth, plaine, and hard, ſo that the blood cannot break through the burning: then may you boldly vnlooſe the cord, and after two or three dayes, that you ſee the ſore beginne to rot, you ſhall annoint it with freſh butter, or elſe with hogges greaſe and turpentine, vntil it be whole.

Chap. 160.

To make a white ſtarre in any part of a horſe.

IF you will at any time make a white ſtarre either in your horſes fore-head, or in any other part of his body, you ſhall, according to the opinion of the moſt ancient Farriers, take a tile-ſtone, and after you haue burned it, beate it into fine powder: then take Lilly rootes, Daiſie rootes, white Bryer rootes, of each a like quantity, and hauing dryed them, beate them alſo into fine powder, and mixe them with the firſt; then with a razor ſhaue that part of your horſe where you would haue your ſtarre: And then with this powder rub it ſo vehemently, that you ſcarce leaue any skinne on; then take a good quantity of hony-ſuckle-flowers, and a like quantity of hony, and the water wherin a

moule

moule hath beene ſodden; and then diſtill them in to a water, and with that water waſh the ſore place the ſpace of three dayes together, and keepe the winde from it, and you ſhall preſently ſee the white haires to grow; for this receipt hath beene often very well approued. There bee other Farriers which take a crabbe, and roaſt it, and being fire hot, binde it to that part which you would haue white, and it will ſcald away the old haire, and the next haire that groweth will be white. Other Farriers vſe, after they haue ſhaued the place, to take the iuyce of ſharpe Onyons or Leekes, and to bathe the place very much therewith; then to take barley bread, as fire hot as it commeth from the ouen, and clappe it to the ſhauen place, ſuffering it to lye ſo till it be cold: and then after annoynt it with hony, and the white haire will come. Other Farriers vſe to annoynt the ſhauen place with the greaſe of Mouldywarpe ſodden, and that will bring the white haires. Other Farriers vſe, after they haue ſhaued it, to rubbe the place well with ſalt, and then twice euery day for a fortnight, to waſh it with the broth wherin a Mouldiwarpe and ſome ſwines greaſe hath bin ſodden.

Other Farriers vſe to boyle a mouldiwarpe in ſalt water for three dayes together, or elſe in ſtrong lye; and euer as one liquor conſumeth, to ſupply it with another; then with this decoction being warme annoynt the ſhaued place, and it will bring white haires ſuddenly. Other Farriers take the gall of a goate, and rubbe the ſhaued place therewith, and it will bring white haires alſo.

Other

Other Farriers take ſheepes milke, and boyle it, and in that wet a linnen cloath, and being very hot, lay it to, renewing it til you may rubbe of the haire with your finger; this done, apply the milke to twice a day luke-warme, till the haire do come againe, which without all queſtion will be white.

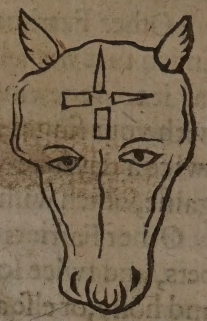
Other Farriers take the rootes of wild cowcumbers, and twice ſo much *Nigrum* mingled with oile and hony, or elſe adde to your cowcumbers *Sal-nitrum* beaten, and hony, and annoynt the ſhauen place therewith, and it will bring white haire.

Other Farriers vſe to take a peece of a brick-bat, and with it gently to rubbe and chafe the place, till by the continuance thereof, you haue rubbed away both the haire and the skin, ſo broad as you would haue the ſtarre, and then after to annoynt it with hony, till the haire come againe; or elſe to roaſt a colewort ſtalke like a warden, or an egge, till it bee ſtone-hard: and then as they come hot out of the fire, to clap either of them to the horſes fore-head; and it will ſcald off the haire, then to annoynt it with hony till the haire come againe.

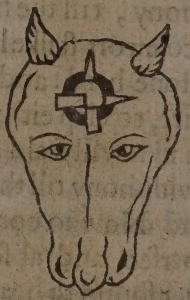
Now to conclude, and to ſhewe you the moſt perfect and abſolute experiment which I haue euer found to bee moſt infallible, it is thus; you ſhall take a very fine, ſharpe, long bodkin, made for the purpoſe, and thruſt it vp betwixt the skinne and the bone vpward, ſo long as you would haue the ſtarre; and in thruſting it vp, you ſhall hollow the skinne from the bone the bigneſſe that you would haue the ſtarre; this done, you ſhall take a peece of leade, made in the true ſhape of your bodkin,

and

and drawing out the bodkin, thruſt in the lead into the ſame holes; then you ſhall thruſt the bodkin croſſe-wiſe the fore-head vnderneath the leade; and then thruſting in ſuch another peece of lead, you ſhall ſee it in the horſes face to preſent this figure, which beeing done, you ſhall take a very ſtrong packe-threed, and putting it vnder-



neath all the foure ends of the leads, and drawing it will all ſtraightneſſe, you ſhall gather all the hollow skinne together on a purſe, folding the pack-threed oft and oft about, and ſtill ſtraighter and ſtraighter, ſo that you ſhall ſee it then to preſent vnto you this figure: this done, you ſhall let it reſt at leaſt the ſpace of eight and forty houres, in which time the skin will bee, as it were, mortified: then may you vnlooſe the packe-threed, and draw forth the leaden pinnes, and with your hand cloſe the hollow skinne to the fore-head hard againe; and ſhortly after you ſhall ſee the haire to fall away, and the next haire which commeth, will be white; and this experiment is moſt infallible.



Now there bee ſome Farriers which will not put in pinnes, nor vſe any packe threed, but only will

will slit the fore-head, and open the skinne on both sides, and then put in either a horne or a plate of lead as bigge as the starre, and so let it remaine till the skinne rot: then take out the horne or lead, and annoynt the place with hony, and the water of mallowes sodde, and it will bring white haire: and surely this experiment also is most infallible; but it maketh a foule sore, and is somewhat long in bringing his vertue to effect.

I haue seene a white starre also made by taking the guttes of a Henne, or pullet, and clapping them hot as they come out of the belly, to the horses face, hauing some hollow round thing made for the purpose, to keepe the guts together vpon the horses face.

Chap. 161.

How to make a blacke Starre, or white haire blacke.

IF at any time you would make vppon a white horse a blacke starre, you shall take a scruple of Inke, and foure scruples of the wood of Oliander beaten to powder; incorporate this in as much sheepes suet, as will well suffice, and then annoynt the place therewith, and it will make any white haire blacke.

Other Farriers take the decoction of fearne roots, and sage sodde in lie, and wash the place therewith, and it will breede blacke haire; but you must wash the place very oft therewith.

Other Farriers vse to take the rust of Iron, galles and

and vitrioll,and ſtampe them with oyle;or elſe take ſoutter inke,galles,and ruſt,and beate them well together,and then annoynt the place therewith, and it will turne any white haire to blacke.

Chap. 162.
To make a redd ſtarre in a horſes face.

IF you deſire to make in your horſes face, or any other part, a redde ſtarre, you ſhall take of *Aqua-fortis* an ounce, of *Aqua-vitæ* a penyworth, of ſiluer to the value of eighteene pence; put them into a glaſſe, and heate them well therein,and then annoynt the place very well therewith, and it will immediately turne the haires to be of a perfect red colour,onely it will endure no longer then till the caſting of the haire; and therefore at euery ſuch time you muſt renew the haire againe, if you will haue the ſtarre to continue.

Chap. 163.
How to make haire to come very ſoone, very thicke,and very long.

IF you would haue haire to come very ſoone in any bare place,or to grow thicke where it is thinne, or long where it is ſhort, you ſhall take (according to the opinion of the moſt ancient Farriers) the vrine of a young boy,and with it firſt waſh the place; after that,take lye made of vnſleckt lime, *Ceruſe* and *Litargy*, and with it waſh the haire oft, and it will make it come ſoone,long and thicke.

Other

Other Farriers vſe to waſh the place with water wherein the rootes of *Althæa* haue beene ſod: then after drye it gently with your hand, and it will encreaſe haire much. Other Farriers vſe to waſh the place with oyle mingled with the aſhes of nut-ſhels burnt, or elſe ſnayle ſhelles burnt, and it will encreaſe haire alſo. Other Farriers take *Agrimony* pund with goates milke, and with it annoynt the place, or elſe oyle wherein a Mouldiwarpe hath bin boyled, and annoynt the place with either of them, and it will encreaſe haire very much. Other Farriers take the dung of goates, allome, hony, and the blood of a ſwine; mingle them all together, and ſtirre them till they be ready to boyle, and being hot, rub the bare place therewith. Other Farriers take nettle ſeedes bruiſed with hony, water, and ſalt, and then rub the place therewith. Other Farriers take the roote of a white Lilly beaten and ſod in oyle, and annoynt the place therewith. Others take the iuyce of a long Onyon, or elſe the iuyce of radiſhes, and annoynt the place therewith. Others take tarre, oyle oliue, and hony boyled together, and with it annoynt the bare place. Other Farriers take the ſoote of a Cawdron mixed with hony and oyle, and annoynt the place therewith. There be other Farriers which take greene Wall-nut ſhelles, and burne them to powder, and then mixe it with hony, oyle, and wine, and annoynt the place therewith, and it will encreaſe haire wonderfully.

CHAP.

Chap. 164.
To make haire ſmooth, ſleeke and ſoft.

IF you will make your horſes coate to be ſmooth, ſleeke, ſoft, and ſhining, you ſhall with ſufficient ſtore of cloth, keepe him warme at the heart; for the leaſt inward cold will make the haire ſtare: then you ſhall make him ſweate oft: for that will reaſe vp the duſt and filth, which makes his coate foule and hard: then you ſhall, when the horſe is in his greateſt ſweat, with an old ſword blade turning the edge toward his haire, ſcrape, or as it were, curry away all the white foame, ſweat, and filth which ſhall be raiſed vp, and that will lay his coate euen, and make it ſmooth; and laſtly, you ſhall when you let him blood, rubbe him all ouer with his own blood, and ſo let it remaine two or three daies and then curry and dreſſe him well, and this will make his coate ſhine like glaſſe.

Chap. 165.
How to take off haire in any part of a horſe.

IF you will at any time take off the haire from any part of a horſe, you ſhall diſſolue in water, (according to the opinion of the moſt ancient Farriers) eight ounces of vnſleckt lime: and then boyle it till a quarter be conſumed, then adde vnto it an ounce of Orpiment, and then lay a playſter thereof to any part of the horſe, and it will in very few houres bring all the haire away.

There

There bee other Farriers which boile in running water ruſt, and *Orpiment*, and with it being very hot, waſh the place, and it will ſoone bring the haire away.

Chap. 166.

How to caſt or ouerthrow a horſe.

VVHenſoeuer you intend to caſt or ouerthrow your horſe, after you haue brought him into a conuenient place, as namely either vpon ſome greeneſwarth, or vpon ſome dunghill, or in ſome barne vpon good ſtore of ſoft ſtraw, you ſhall take and double a long rope, and caſt a knot a yard from the bought; then put the bought about his necke, and the double rope betwixt his foure legges, and about his hinder paſternes, vnderneath his fetlock; then put the ends of the rope vnder the bought of his necke, and draw them quickely, and they will ouerthrow him, then make the ends faſt, and hold downe his head, vnderwhich alwayes you muſt bee ſure to haue good ſtore of ſtraw. Now if you would at any time, either brand your horſe on the buttock, or doe any thing about his hinder legs, that he may not ſtrike, take vp his contrary fore legge; and when you doe brand your horſe ſee that the iron bee red hot, and that the haire bee both ſeared quite away, and the fleſh ſcorched in euery place before you let him goe, and ſo you ſhall looſe no labour.

Chap. 167.

How to know the age of a horse.

THe age of euery horse is knowne, either by his Teeth, or by his Hoofes, or by his Taile, or by the barres in the roofe of his mouth.

It is knowne by his teeth thus; at two yeeres old, he changeth foure fore most teeth in his head; at three yeares old hee changeth the teeth next vnto them, and leaueth no more apparant foales teeth but two of each side, aboue and below: at foure yeares old hee changeth the teeth next vnto them, and leaueth no more foales teeth but one on each side, both aboue and below; at fiue yeeres old hee hath neuer a foales tooth before, but then he changeth his tushes on each side; at sixe yeares old hee putteth vp his tushes, neere about which you shall see apparantly growing a little circle of new and young flesh, besides, the tush will bee white, small, short, and sharpe; at seuen yeares old, the two outmost teeth of his nether chap on both sides will be hollow, with a little blacke specke in them, and at eight yeeres old, all his teeth will bee full, smooth, and plaine, the blacke specke being cleane gone, and his tushes will bee somewhat yellow, without any circles of young flesh; at nine yeares old, his fore-most teeth will bee very long, broad, yellow, and foule, and his tushes will bee blunt; at ten yeares old, in the inside of his vpper tushes will bee no holes at all to bee felt with your fingars end, which till that age, you shall euer most perfectly

perfectly feele; besides, the Temples of his head will beginne to bee crooked and hollow; at eleuen yeares of age, his teeth will be exceeding long, very yellow, blacke, and foule; onely he will cut euen, and his teeth will stand directly opposite one against another; at twelue yeares old his teeth will be long, yellow, blacke, and foule; but then his vpper teeth will ouer-reach and hang ouer his nether teeth; at thirteene yeares his tushes will bee worne close to his chap, if he be a much ridden horse, otherwise they will be blacke, foule, and long like the fanges of a Boare.

If a horses hose bee rugged, and as it were seamed, one seame ouer another; if they bee dry, full, and crusty, it is a signe of very old age: as on the contrary part, a smooth, moist, hollow, and well sounding hoofe, is a signe of yong yeares.

If you take your horse with your finger and your thumbe by the sterne of the taile, close at the setting on by his buttocke, and feeling there hard; if you feele betwixt your finger and your thumbe of each side his taile, a ioynt sticke out more then any other ioynt, by the bignesse of an hazell nut, then you may presume, the horse is vnder ten yeares old; but if his ioynts be all plaine, and no such thing to be felt, then hee is aboue tenne, and at least thirteene. If a horses eyes be round, full, and starting from his head, if the pits ouer his eyes bee filled smooth and euen with his temples, and no wrinckles either about his brow or vnder his eyes, then the horse is young: if otherwise you see the contrary characters, it is a signe of old age. If you take vp a

horſes skinne on any part of his body, betwixt your finger and your thumbe, and plucke it from the fleſh: then letting it goe againe, if it ſuddenly returne to the place from whence it came, and bee ſmooth and plaine without wrinckle, then the horſe is yong, and full of ſtrength: but if being pulled vp it ſtand, and not returne to his former place, then is very old and waſted.

Laſtly, if a horſe that is of any darke colour ſhall grow griſſell onely about his eye-browes, or vnderneath his maine, it is then an infallible ſigne of moſt extreame old age: and thus much touching a horſes age.

Chap. 168.

How to make an old horſe ſeeme yong.

TAke a little ſmall crooked Iron, no bigger then a Wheate corne, and hauing made it redde hot, burne a little blacke hole in the toppes of the two outmoſt teeth of each ſide the nether chap before, next to the tuſhes; and then with an aule blade pricke it, and make the ſhel fine and thin; then with a ſharpe ſcraping Iron make all his teeth white and cleane; this done, take a fine lancet, and aboue the hollowes of the horſes eyes which are ſhrunke downe, make a little hole onely but through the skinne, and then raiſing it vp, put in a quill that is very ſmall, as the quill of Rauen or ſuch like: and then blow the skin full of winde till all the hollowneſſe be filled vp, and then take out the quill, and lay your finger a little while on the hole, and the winde wil ſtay in, and the horſes

horses countenance will bee as if hee were but sixe yeares old at the most.

Chap. 169.

How to make a horse that he shall not neigh either in company, or when he is ridden.

IF either when you are in seruice in the Warres, and would not bee discouered, or when vpon any other occasion, you vvould not haue your horse to neigh, or make a noyse, you shall take a list of wollen cloath, and tye it fast in many foldes about the midst of your horses tongue; and beleeue it, as long as the tongue is so tyed, so long the horse can by no meanes neigh, or make any other extraordinary noyse with his voyce, as hath beene often tryed.

Chap. 170.

How to make a horse exceeding quicke of the spurre.

IF your horse either be dull of the spurre through his naturall inclination, or through tyring, or any other accident, you shall first shaue him the bredth of a saucer on both sides, iust in the spurring place, on both sides the veine; then with a launcet make sixe issues, or small orifices on both sides; then raising the skinne from the flesh; you shall put into the holes a pretty quantity of burnt salt, which will make the sore to ranckle.

In this sort you shall keepe it three dayes, and by

no meanes ride the horſe: the third day being ended, you ſhall ſet a childe on his backe with ſpurres, and make him ſpurre the horſe in the ſore place; which done, you ſhall waſh the place with piſſe, ſalt, and nettles, ſodden well together; and this will make his ſides ſmart ſo extreamely, that he will neuer abide the ſpurre after.

Now you ſhall let him ſtand after his waſhing three daies more, and then take halfe a pint of hony, and with it annoynt his ſides once a day till they be whole.

Chap. 171.

How to make a horſe that tires, or is reſtife, to goe forward.

IF your horſe (as it is the common nature of Iades) through the naughtineſſe of his nature, or dulneſſe of ſpirit, bee either ſo reſtiffe, or ſo tired that he will not goe forward a foote, but ſtandeth ſtocke ſtill; you ſhall then make a running ſuickle of a ſmall cord, and put it about his coddes, and ſtones, in ſuch ſort that it may not ſlip: then you ſhall draw the reſt of the cord betweene the girths and the horſes body, and bringing it vp between the horſes fore-legges, bee ſure to hold the end of the cord in your hand as you ſit in the ſaddle; then ride the horſe forward, and when hee beginneth to grow reſtiſe, or to ſtand ſtill, then plucke the cord, and crampe him by the ſtones, and you ſhall ſee that immediately hee will goe forward; and in this manner you ſhall vſe him for at leaſt

a

a fortnight, and it will cleane take away that euill quality.

Chap. 172.

How to make a horſe to follow his maiſter, and finde him out, and challenge him amongſt many people.

IF you will haue your horſe to haue ſuch a violent loue towards you, that he ſhall not onely follow you vp and downe, but alſo labour to finde you out, and owne you as ſoone as hee hath found you; you ſhall then take a pound of oat-meale, and put thereto a quarter of a pound of hony, and halfe a pound of *Lunarce*; and then make a cake thereof, and put it in your boſome next vnto your naked skin: then runne or labour your ſelfe vp and downe vntill you ſweate, then rubbe all your ſweate vpon your cake; this done, keepe your horſe faſting a day and a night, and then giue him the cake to eate, which as ſoone as hee hath eaten you ſhall turne him looſe; and hee will not onely moſt eagerly follow you, but alſo hunt and ſeeke you out when hee hath loſt, or doth miſſe you; and though you be enuironed with neuer ſo many, yet hee will finde you out, and know you; and you ſhall not faile but euery time that hee commeth to you, you ſhall ſpet in his mouth, and annoynt his tongue with your ſpettle; and thus doing he will neuer forſake you.

Chap. 173.

The nature and speciall qualities of all the simples that are spoken of in this whole worke, set downe in the manner of Alphabet.

A

Abrotonum, which we call in English Southernwoort is hot and dry in the third degree, and openeth the pipes of the body, and is good for short winde.

Absinthium, which we call Wormewood, is hot in the first degree, & dry in the second; it cleanseth and bindeth, and is good for the stomacke.

Aceto, which we call Vinegar, especially if it bee of wine, is cold and piercing, to wit, cold in the first, and dry in the third degree.

Agaricum, is hotte in the first, and dry in the second degree; it expelleth humours, purgeth all fleame and choler, and is good for the liuer and kidneyes.

Allium, which we call Garlicke, is hot and dry in the fourth degree; it draweth, openeth, and expelleth all euill humours.

Agrecum, which we call cresses, is hot and dry in the fourth degree; it burneth, draweth, and resolueth, and is good for scurfe, or wilde scabbes, or for the lungs.

Agripa, is knowne vnguent, that is good against all tumours.

third degree, and is good for cankers.

Allome, called roch Allome, is hot and dry in the

Alder,

Alder, or *Elder* tree is hot and dry, it purgeth choler and fleame, and healeth wounds.

Aloes is hot in the first, and dry in the third degree; it cleanseth and dissolueth, and also comforteth.

Althea, which we call white Mallowes, is hot and dry: it looseth and scattereth humours, warmeth and moisteneth.

Almonds is hot and moyst in the first degree: it prouoketh vrine, and is good for the Lungs or Liuer.

Ambrosia, which we call wood-sage, represseth, driueth backe, and bindeth humours.

Ammoniacum is hot in the third, and dry in the second degree, it softneth and dissolueth humours.

Anetum, which we call *Dill*, is hot in the third, and dry in the second degree; it ripeneth crude humors, and expelleth heate.

Anise-seedes is hot and dry in the third degree, expelleth cold, and dissolueth humours, and prouoketh vrine.

Antimonium, or *Stibium*, is cold and dry, it bindeth, mundifieth and purgeth.

Appio, which we call smallage, or parsley, is hot in the first, and dry in the second degree: it ripeneth, cleanseth, openeth, and prouoketh vrine.

Aristolochia, which we call birth-woort, or hart-woort, is hot and cleanseth: but if it bee *Rotanea*, then it is so much the stronger, being hot and dry in the fourth degree; it draweth, and purgeth thin water and fleame, and is good to open the lungs.

Armoniacke

Armoniacke dryeth, cooleth, ſoftneth, and draweth.

Artemiſia, which we call great Tanſey, or Mugwoor, is hot in the ſecond, and dry in the third degree; it is good for the wormes, and ſwellings in the ſinewes.

Arſnick of both kinds is hot in the third, and dry in the ſecond degree; it bindeth, eateth, and fretteth, being a very ſtrong corroſiue.

Aſſafetida is a gum that is hot in the third, and dry in the firſt degree; it cleanſeth euill humours.

Aſphaltum is a pitch that is mixt with *Bitumen*; it is hot and dry, and comforteth any ſwelling.

Aſſonteo is hot in the firſt, and dry in the ſecond degree: it cleanſeth and dryeth, and is good for the ſtomacke.

Aſſungia, which we call ſoft or freſh greaſe, is hot and moiſt in the firſt degree: it mollifieth, ripeneth, and healeth any wound, impoſtume, or vlcer.

Auena, which we call oates, are naturally dry; they doe dry, binde, cleanſe, and comfort all the inward parts, and are the only principall ſimple which doth naturally agree with the compoſion of a horſes body; and therefore the oyle or quinteſſence of them is the onely abſolue and perfect medicine that can be adminiſtred for any inward ſickneſſe, as experience will approue and make perfect.

Auelanne, which we call the aſhes of Nut-ſhels burnt, are hot and dry, and do skin or ſtop the flux of matter.

Bay-berries

B

Bay-berries are vehemently hot and dry, and are good for all manner of rheumes, or shortnesse of winde, especiall for any disease in lungs.

Balsamum is hot and dry in the second degree; it cleanseth, draweth and comforteth.

Bdelium is a gumme that is hot and dry; it softeneth, and draweth away moysture, and is excellent against all hard swellings whatsoeuer.

Bertonicum, or *Bettonicum*, which we call Doggestone, or Kegwort, is hot and dry in the first degree: it purgeth and cleanseth all euill humors.

Biacca is cold and dry in the second degree: it closeth things opened, it softens hardnesse, filthy places empty, and doth extenuate all excressions.

Bietole, which we call Beets, is cold and moist, and cleanseth vlcers.

Bitumen is a kinde of Brimstone, or fatnesse from the sea, and it is hot and dry in the second degree, and is comfortable against any swelling.

Bottiro is hot in the first, and moyst in the second degree; and it ripeneth impostumes.

Bolearmonia is a certaine earth which is cold and dry; which bindeth and driueth backe euill humors, and is also an excellent defensiue against fluxes of blood.

Branke vrsin is a wonderfull great mollifier.

Brasica which wee call Cole-worts, is very dry; it doth conglutinate wounds, it healeth vlcers and tumors, it holdeth the feed, and killeth euill humors.

Brotano

Brotano, which is the same that *Abrotonum* is, looke there.

Bruſco, which wee call butchers broome, or knee holme, is hot in the ſecond degree, and dry in the firſt; it prouoketh vrine.

Bryonie, of it are two kinds, the white and blacke, but the white is more effectuall; the roote of it is hot and dry in the ſecond degree; it cleanſeth and ripeneth, and is good for all cold diſeaſes, it alſo dryeth, draweth, and mollifieth all manner of hardneſſe.

C

Calafonia, or *Colophonia*, doth incarnate vlcers, and doth conglutinate things which are ſeparated.

Calamento, which wee call wilde penyriall, or wilde mint, of which that which growes on the mountaines is the beſt, is hot and dry in the third degree, doth reſolue tumours, and draweth away humours.

Calcina viua, which we call vnſlecktlime, is hot and dry in the fourth degree; it aduſteth, dryeth, and corrodeth.

Camamila, which we call vnſleckt lime, is hot and dry in the firſt degree; it mollifieth and diſſolueth all grieues, and is good eſpecially for the liuer.

Camedros, which we call geomander, is hot and dry in the third degree; and is good againſt all moyſt colds.

Camphora is a kind of gum which is cold and dry in the third degree; it preſerueth the body from putrifaction, and bindeth humours.

Canabis,

Cannabis which we call hempe, is hot, the ſeede whereof driuen away extraordinary colds; it ripeneth and diſſolueth humours; and mollifieth and dryeth inflammations.

Cinamon is hot and dry in the third degree; and is comfortable in all inward ſickneſſes.

Canna which we call reedes, eſpecially the hedge reed, draweth out prickes, if you lay the rootes too with the knobbes.

Cantharides are certaine flies, which are hot and dry in the third degree; they will raiſe bliſters in the ſounds parts.

Capilli Venere which we call maidens haire, is dry, and bindeth looſe humours.

Cardimonium is hot; it extenuateth humours, and being mixt with vinegar killeth ſcabbes.

Cloues are hot and dry in the third degree, and are very comfortable to the inward parts.

Carrowayes are hot and dry in the third degree, it helpeth wind, and cleanſeth euill humours.

Caſſia is hot and moiſt, in the firſt degree; it expelleth wind, diſſolueth humours, and purgeth the ſtomacke of choler and fleame.

Caſtoreum is hot and dry, and purgeth much.

Cabbage is hot in the firſt, and dry in the ſecond degree; it cleanſeth ripeneth humours.

Cenere which we call aſhes, are hot and dry in the fourth degree, and cleanſe mightily.

Centauria which wee call wilde running *Betony*, ſmelling like *Marioram*, is hot and dry in the third degree; it bindeth wounds and conglutinateth, and is good for diſeaſed liuers, for the wormes old

old sores and wounds, and is commonly call centuary.

Cepe which we call onions, is hot in the fourth degree; it doth cleanse corruptions, and ripens swellings.

Ceruill is hot and dry, and bindeth much.

Ceruſa is a white oyntment made of oyle & white lead, it is cold and dry in the second degree: and for the effects it hath all those which *Braccha* hath.

Cerecollo, see *Serococollo*.

Chelidonium which we call *Seladine*, is hot and dry in the third degree; it cleanseth all putrifactiue humours, and is excellent against inward sicknesses, especially yellowes or iaundies.

Cicuta which wee call hemlocke, is cold in the fourth degree: it numbeth and astoneth.

Cicoria, which we call succory, is cold and dry in the first degree, and bindeth much.

Comen is hot in the third degree, and dry in the second: it mollifieth and ripeneth.

Cipolle, which is leekes, or as we call them, chiues: see *Cepa*.

Cinabar, or *Sanguis draconis*, or as we call it *Vermillion*, is a certaine mettall drawne from quicke sulphure, and quick-siluer; it dryeth, healeth, incarnateth bindeth, and comforteth vlcers.

Cito, or *Ciſto*, is dry in the second degree, and bindeth much.

Citrons, or *Cithrons*, are cold and moyst in the second degree, they do cleanse and peirce.

Coloquintida, is hot and dry in the third degree, and mundifieth onely.

Colofonia,

Colofonia, which wee call earth-pitch, or Greeke pitch, is hot and dry in the third degree: it conglutinateth and gathereth together. See *Pece Græca.*

Cocumeri, see *Cucumeri.*

Consolida, which wee call *Camphrey*, is cold: it conglutinateth and bindeth, and is good against ruptures.

Costro, or *Cosso*, being bitter, is hot, and healeth vlcers.

Costus is hot in the third, and dry in the second degree: and it raiseth vp wormes, and is that which wee call hearbe *Mary*, or the roote of *Angelica.*

Corno di Ceruo, which we call Harts horne, is dry, yet it strengthneth very much.

Crocum, which we call saffron, is hot in the second, and dry in the first degree: it bindeth, comforteth, and resolueth impostumes.

Cucumeri seluaggi is hot and dry the third degree: it dissolueth, softneth, and purgeth fleame.

Cucumeri elaterium is cold and moist in the second degree, it cleanseth much, and is made of the iuice of wilde cowcumbers.

D

Dates are hot and moyst in the second degree: they do resolue and disperse things knit together.

Diacatholicon, purgeth all offensiue humors which offend the body, whatsoeuer.

Diasinicon, or *Diaphenicon*, purgeth winde exceedingly, & compacteth all griefes of the belly which

are

are begot by crude humours, ſpringing from cholickes or ſuch like paines.

Dialtea, or *Dialthea*, is an oyntment made of holy-hoxe, or ſea-mallowes: it warmeth and moiſtneth.

Dragonwort is hot and dry, and bindeth much.

E

Ebuli which wee call Elder, is hot and dry in the third degree: It dryeth and driueth out water, and expelleth choller and thinne fleame, ſee *Sambucus*.

Edera rerreſtris, which we call ground Iuy, ſee *Hedera*.

Elatrium, ſee *Cucumeri*.

Elleboro, which wee call neeſing powder, of it are two kinds, the white and blacke; it is hot and dry in the third degree.

Eruca which we call rocket, and of which the wilde is the beſt; the ſeeds thereof are hot and dry, and expelleth vrine, wormes, and water.

Eluſa, which is an hearbe like ſpurge, is hot in the fourth degree, and dryeth and cleanſeth exceedingly, and of ſome is called woolfes milke.

Euforbium is a gumme that is hot in the fourth degree: it dryeth, purgeth, cleanſeth, and exulcerateth much.

Exerution which is that which wee call *Oxicration*, is a certaine compoſition or mixture made of *Aceto*, and water, and is good to allay ſwellings and tumours.

Faba,

F

Faba, which we call a Beane, is cold and dry, and it cleanseth, and dissolueth.

Farina, which we call Branne, is hot and drye in the first degree, and dissolueth very much.

Fearne is dry and binding, but the root is hot and cleansing, and killeth wormes.

Felle, which we call Gall, is hot and drye, and it cleanseth and mundifieth.

Ferugo, which we call the rust of Iron, is hot and dry in the second degree, it comforteth and restraineth euill humours.

Fici aridi, which we call dry figges, are hot and dry in the second degree: they ripen tumors, soften and consume hardnesse, and are good for pursickenesse, coughes, and diseases of the lungs.

Filomontano, which we call a Dodder, beeing a thing that cleaueth to hearbs, winding about them like threedes; it openeth the liuer and milt, and purgeth all fleame and choler.

Filonio is a composition, which will astonish or benumbe any part or member.

Fennell is hot in the third, and dry in the first degree: it doth dissolue all manner of grosse humors, and is good for the liuer or lungs.

Foligine, which we call soote, is hot and dry, and it drieth maruellously, and so doth all sootes whatsoeuer.

G

Gallanga, which we call Galingale, is hot and dry in the third degree: it easeth the stomacke of all griefes which proceed from cold causes: it strengtheneth the braine, and comforteth the senses.

Galbanum is hot in the third degree, and dry in the second: it softeneth, stoppeth, and draweth away euill humours, and is good against cold.

Galla, which we call Galles, or a light fruit of Okes, are hot and piercing.

Garofilata, which wee call hearbe Bennet, is hot and dry in the second degree.

Garifoli, which wee call Cloues, are hot and dry in the third degree, and are very comfortable for inward sickneſſe.

Ginger is hot, and is excellent to preserue heate in the inward parts.

Geniſta, or *Geniſtra*, which we call Broome, is hot and dry in the third degree: it killeth wormes, and scoureth much.

Gentian, especially the roote, is hot in the third, and dry in the second degree: it doeth extenuate, purge and cleanse all euill humours, and is good for the liuer and stomacke, and for woundes and sores.

Giglio, which we call Lillies, softneth sinewes, and are good for wounds and sores.

Giniper is hot and dry in the third degree.

Gramen, which is any manner of graine or pulse, is cold and dry, except Wheate, and that is temperately

temperately hot and moist: they doe incarnate and mundifie.

Grasso, which is any manner of fat, is hot and moyst, and doth ripen and soften.

H

Harundinis cortex, which we call Cane reed, is hot and dry in the third degree.

Hedera, which wee call Iuy, is a great drawer and opener.

Helxine, which wee call Pellitory of the Wall, cleanseth & bindeth, and is good for any old cough, or for any inflammations.

Hyssopo, which wee call Hyssope, there is both wilde, and that of the Garden, but the Garden is the best; it is hot and dry in the third degree; it cleanseth and warmeth, and is good for inflammations of the lungs, old coughes, poses, rhumes, and short winde.

Hordeo, which wee call Barley, is cold and drye in the first degree; and it mundificth and cooleth.

I

Incenso, which we call Frankinsence; it dryeth and incarnateth: see *Olibanum*.

Ipericon, which we call Saint *Iohns* wort, expelleth moysture, and healeth burnings.

Irios Florentina, which wee call Flower de luce, especially the roote, it warmeth, ripeneth, and cleanseth, and is good for the cough, and is hotte

and dry in the third degree.

Iride Illyrica: see *Helpine*.

Iris is a roote that is hot and dry: it cleanseth and ripeneth, and is good against colds, and purgeth vlcers.

Iasquiani, which we call Henbane, is cold in the fourth degree: it astonieth and benumbeth.

L

Liguſtum, which we call Louage, is hot and dry in the third degree: it expelleth winde, especially the seede and roote.

Lapathum, which wee call a Docke, is cold and moist, and it mollifieth.

Lauri, which wee call Laurell, or Bayes, are hot and dry, and they cleanse and mundifie.

Leatisco is a gumme that is like masticke, it is dry in the second degree, and moderately bindeth: it is bitter in taste, and euer greene.

Linosa, which we call flax or lime, the seed thereof is hot and dry, and it ripeneth and mollifieth tumors.

Lee is hot and dry in the fourth degree: it is very adustiue, cleansing and piercing.

Lithargirio, of which there are two kinds, the one of the colour of gold, the other of siluer; it is very dry, it bindeth, softeneth, incarnateth, cooleth, and closeth vp; and of these two, that which is like gold is best.

Lolium, which wee call Cockle, is hot and dry in the third degree, and dissolueth much.

Lunache,

Lumache, which wee call houſe-ſnailes without ſhels, doe conglutinate very much.

M

Malua is cold and moiſt, it ſtoppeth, ſoftneth and mitigateth paine.

Maluauiſcus is very drie, it ſoftneth, looſeneth and incarnateth.

Mace is drie in the third degree, without heat, and onely bindeth.

Manna is of equall temper, hot and dry; it openeth, it mollifieth and incarnateth.

Mariaton, or *Martiaton*, is a hot vnguent againſt all cold humours; it helpeth the griefe of ſinewes, purgeth cold watry matters, and ripeneth tumors.

Marrobio, which wee call Hore-hound, of which there are two kindes, the white and the blacke; but the white is the better; it is hot in the ſecond, and drie in the third degree; it helpeth obſtructions in the liuer, openeth and purgeth, and is good againſt colds, or for ſores.

Maſticke is hot in the firſt, and drie in the ſecond degree: it draweth, and dryeth, bindeth and ſoftneth, and is good againſt old cold.

Medulla, which we call Marrow, of what kinde ſoeuer, is cold and moiſt, and mollifieth vlcers; now the beſt marrow is that of Hart, or old Stagge, the next, that of a Calfe, the next, that of a Sheepe, and the laſt, that of a Goate.

Mel, which wee call Honny, is hot and drie in the ſecond degree; it cleanſeth the ſtomacke and

entrailes, ſtoppeth humours, and incarnateth wounds.

Meliſſa, which wee call Balme, is hot in the ſecond, and drie in the firſt degree; it cleanſeth and conglutinateth.

Mentha, which we call Mintes, is hot in the third, and drie in the ſecond degree, of which the wilde Minte is the beſt, it killeth wormes, it bindeth, it diſſolueth, and is good for the ſtomacke, or a colde liuer.

Minio, which wee call redde lead, is cold and drie, and good againſt ſwellings.

Myrrè, or *Myrrha*, is a ſoueraigne gumme; it is hot and drie in the ſecond degree; it conglutinateth, bindeth, and cleanſeth wounds, is good againſt all colds, killeth wormes, and helpeth the purſicke: for though it doth cleanſe much, yet it doth not exaſperate the Arteries; alſo it doth incarnate.

Morcoſita, or *Marcaſita*, is hot and drie; it comforteth, bindeth and melteth humours.

Mertilla, is the fruit of the Mertill tree, it is drie in the third degree, it doth binde good, and looſen euill humours.

Morcas, which wee call the Mulberie, the vnripe is cold and drie in the ſecond degree; the barke, but chiefly the root, is hot and drie in the third degree: it doth cleanſe, purge and binde; the roote thereof killeth wormes, and the gumme thereof doth looſen, and the iuyce of the berry doth heale cankers, or ſore mouthes.

Narciſſi

N

Narcissi radix, which we call the root of white daffadill, or else prim-rose peareleſſe, is drie, it cleanseth, and draweth, and healeth wounds.

Narei radix, which wee call Setwall, is hot in the first, and drie in the second degree; it bindeth, and *Spico Nardo* prouoketh vrine.

Nasturtio, is hot and drie in the fourth degree; it burneth, it draweth and melteth, and killeth wormes: see *Agrecum*, which we call Cresses.

Nigilla, which wee call Git, is hot and drie in the third degree; it stayeth winde, killeth wormes, and looseneth; yet to giue too great a quantitie, is dangerous.

Nitro is of the same nature that Salt-peter is, and it mundifieth exceedingly.

O

Olibanum is a gumme, it is hot and drie in the second degree; it warmeth, bindeth, closeth wounds, and incarnateth.

Oyle of Oliues, is of a very temperate nature, and changeth his qualities according to the nature of the simples which are mixt with him.

Opium is cold and drie in the fourth degree, and is a liquor made of poppie dried and mixt with saffron; it doth astonish and prouoke sleepe.

Opoponax, is a gumme that is hot in the third, and drie in the second degree: it softeneth and stayeth

humours, is good against all colds: See *Papauer*, *Galbanum*, *Bdelium*, and *Sagapenum*.

Orpimento is a kind of Mettall, of which the artificiall is called Arsnicke, is hot in the third degree, and drie in the second; it bindeth, corrodeth, burneth and fretteth, and is a corrosiue.

Origono, which wee call wilde Marioram, or Pennyriall, is hot and drie in the third degree; it taketh away stoppings, and is good for coughes.

Orobus, which wee call Fitches, are hot in the first, and drie in the second degree: they doe open and cleanse.

Orzo, which wee call Barley, is cold and drie in the first degree; it ripeneth and cleanseth.

Ortica, which we call Nettles, are hot and drie: they are biting, and wholesome for the lungs, or for sores.

Oria, which we call Egges, the white is cold, and the yolke is hot, and doth incarnate.

P

Panacea, is that Hearbe whose fruit we call *Opopanax*.

Panico, is a graine which we call Panicke, it is cold and dry, and bindeth.

Papauer, which we call Poppy, the seedes thereof are white, and hot in the fourth degree: See *Opium*.

Pastinache, which we call Parsnips, are hot, and do prouoke vrine.

Pere,

Pece, vvhich wee doe call Pitch, is hote and drie in the ſecond degree; dravveth, drieth and ripeneth.

Pece liquida, vvhich vve call Tarre, is hot and drie in the ſecond degree, is good againſt colds, or euill humors gathered together in the breaſt, and draweth wounds.

Pece Raſina, vvhich vvee call Roſen, or pitch of Greece, it dravveth, healeth and incarnateth.

Pece raſina, & liquida, vvhich vvee call Turpentine, it doth draw, skin, incarnate and conglutinate things together.

Pepper is hot and drie in the fourth degree, it is both attractiue and mundificatiue, and good for all diſeaſes of the breaſt or lungs.

Peaches are cold and moiſt in the ſecond degree: they binde and ſtirre vp vvormes.

Petaſites, vvhich vve call Butter-burre, is drie in the third degree.

Petrolium, is a certaine oyle made of Salt-peeter and *Bitumen*, it is hot and drie in the ſecond degree: it healeth wounds, and comforteth weake members.

Petroſellium, vvhich vve call Parſley, or ſtone Parſley, is, and eſpecially his ſeede, hot and drie in the third degree: it ſtayes winde, openeth, and prouoketh vrine.

Phylonium, of vvhich there are tvvo kindes, *Phylonium Romanum*, and *Phylonium Perſicum*, are excellent Compoſitions, and moſt comfortable after the loſſe of blood.

Poligono,

Poligono, which we call Knot-grasse, is cold in the second degree, and keepeth backe humors.

Plantago, which we call Plantaine, is cold and drie in the third degree: it comforteth, drieth, bindeth, and incarnateth wounds.

Parri, which we call Leekes, Scallions, or Onions, are hot and drie, and do extenuate obstructions, and raise and loosen all euill humors in the body.

Puece, or *Porrum*, is hot in the second degree, and is good for all cold watrish stomackes.

Pulegium, which we call Pennyriall, is hot and dry in the third degree: it doth vehemently drie vp moisture, warmeth, ripeneth, and is good for the lungs: see *Origono*.

Punicum malum, which wee call Pomegranate, is colde and drie: it bindeth, prouoketh vrine, and is good for the stomacke.

R

Rasano, or *Raphanus*, which we call Radish, is hot in the third, and drie in the second degree: they comfort, and are good for old colds; but especially they prouoke vrine.

Resina, which we call Rosen, is hot and drie in the second degree; it stoppeth, softeneth, cleanseth, draweth, and purgeth wounds, and is good against colde causes.

Resalgar. See *Risigalla*.

Regoritio, or *Rigolitio*, which wee call Licoras, is temperate in heate, and moisteneth, and ripeneth, and is good for heate in the stomacke, or liuer, and profitable

profitable against wounds.

Risigallo, is a Compoſition of Sulphure, Orpiment, and vnſleckt lime; and is a moſt ſtrong corroſiue.

Roſæ flos, which we call Roſe leaues, or Roſe cakes, are drie and binding.

Rubea, which we call Madder, is drie: it comforteth and incarnateth, the roote thereof prouoketh vrine, and is good for the yellowes.

Ruberb, or *Rubarb*, is hot and drie in the ſecond degree: it purgeth choler and fleame, and putteth away ſtoppings.

Ruta, which we call Rew, or hearbe of grace, is hot and dry in the third degree: but the wilde Rew in the fourth degree, and therefore exulcerateth: the garden Rew digeſteth, and mightily comforteth all inflammations, it ripeneth, and dryeth, and expelleth winde.

S

Sauina, which wee call Sauine, is hot and drie in the third degree: it openeth, diſſolueth, and dryeth mightily, and is moſt ſoueraigne againſt wormes.

Sacaro, is hot and moyſt, and comfortable.

Sagapenum. See *Serapino*.

Sagina, or *Saggina*, or *Sorgo*, of ſome called *Panicum Indicum* is onely hot and dry.

Sale, which wee call Salt, is hot and drie in the ſecond degree, and it cleanſeth.

Salamora, which we call Brine, or water & ſalt, is of the

the same nature that salt is.

Sal-armoniacke is hot and dry in the fourth degree, and it cleanseth.

Salee, which we call sallowes, or willow, it bindeth and drieth vehemently.

Salgemma, is a kinde of salt which is hot and drie, it cleanseth and mundifieth.

Salnitro, some vse for this salt-peter; it is hot and drie, and euaporateth: it comforteth sinewes, and taketh away tiring or wearinesse.

Saluia, which we call sage, is hot and drie in the second degree: it cleanseth and bindeth, is good for wounds or exulceration of the lungs.

Sambucus, which wee call Elder-tree, or Wall-woort, that is like Elder-tree, is hot in the second degree, and drie in the first; it drieth, digesteth, and conglutinateth.

Sandolo, which we call sanders, are cold and drie in the second degree, and driue backe humors.

Sandolo Rosso, or *Sandolo Bianca*, which wee call red sand, or white sand, are hot and drie, and bring on skinne.

Sanguis draconis, see *Cinaber*; yet some take it for the red docke, or red patience, but it is not so.

Sapone, which we call sope, is hot; it draweth, mollifieth, drieth and purgeth.

Saßifragia, which we call saxifrage, is hot drie, and binding.

Scabioso, which we call scallions, is hot and drie in the second degree; they doe regenerate, and are good for scabbes, for the lungs, or for soreneſſe in the breast.

Scamoium,

Scamonium, which is the iuyce of a roote, is hot in the third degree: it diſgeſteth and purgeth choler, but muſt neuer be giuen inwardly, vnleſſe it be corrected.

Scariolla, which we call Endiue, is cold and drye, and binding.

Scarcocolla is a gumme of the kind of *Euforbium*: it is hot and dry in the ſecond degree, it cleanſeth, incarnateth, and comforteth wounds.

Sea Onion is hot in the ſecond, and dry in the firſt degree: it ripeneth and expelleth humours, it hindreth putrifaction, and preſerueth health.

Semola, which wee call young Coleworts, are hot and dry in the firſt degree.

Semperviue, which we call Houſleeke, and ſome call ſtone-croppe, is cold in the third, and dry in the ſecond degree; it is good for burnings, or frettings, or for inflammation of vlcers, it driueth backe humours, cooleth and bindeth.

Seua dolce is hot in the ſecond, and dry in the firſt degree: it cleanſeth and openeth.

Serapino is a gumme of *Ferula*, it is hot in the third, and dry in the ſecond degree; it mollifieth, looſeneth, and is good for colds.

Serpillo, which we call wilde running Bettony, or Time, ſmelling like Marioram, is hot and dry in the third degree.

Sinapi, which wee call Muſtard, is hot and dry in the fourth degree; it draweth and reſolueth, and is good for ſcurfes, or wilde ſcabbes.

Solatro, which we call Night-ſhade, is cold in the third degree.

Sulphure

Sulphure viue, which we call Brimstone, is hot and dry in the third degree; it draweth, disperseth humours, and killeth wormes.

Sparaci, which wee call *Asparagus*, is without any manifest heate or cold, and onely cleanseth.

Spelta, which we call beere Barley, is a graine lesse then wheate, and shorter then rye, but not so blacke, is coole and cleansing.

Spiga, or *Spica*, which we call Lauender, is hot in the first, and dry in the second degree; it cleanseth and is good for the head, especially the conserue, which is very comfortable.

Squille is that which we call the Sea onion: see sea onion.

Stecados, which we call French lauender, is hot and drye.

Storax, or *Stirax*, is a sweete gumme which is hot and dry; it correcteth, softneth, and is good for coughes, or any sickenesse in the head.

T

Tartaro, which wee call Tartar, is the excrements of Wine, which sticke to the vessell; it is hot and dry in the third degree: and onely cleanseth.

Tartaruch, which we call Snailes with shelles, are of the same nature that Snailes without shelles are.

Taso barbarosso, which wee call yew, is of nature poyson.

Turpentine is hot in the second, and drye in the first degree: it draweth, cleanseth, skinneth and comforteth.

Thymum,

Thymum, vvhich vvee call Time, is hot and dry in the third degree, and expelleth fleame.

Thuris lacrime, vvhich vvee call Frankinsence, is hot in the second, and dry in the first degree: see *Olibanum.*

Thuris cortex is dry in the second degree, and bindeth.

Thuris succulis is hotte and dry in the third degree.

Tithimalis, vvhich vvee call Spurge, or milke-thistle, is hot and dry in the fourth degree; it cleanseth and purgeth fleame and choller, and is good for old sores or Fistulaes.

Trifora magna is a certaine composition which will prouoke sweate, helpeth griefe in the stomacke, and taketh away all cold rhumes.

Tutia preparata is a certaine minerall that is cold in the first, and dry in the second degree; and is very good for sore eyes.

V

Veratro: see *Ellebro.*

Verbena, which wee call Veruin, is hot and dry; it comforteth and mundifieth,

Verderame, which wee call Verdigrease is hot and dry in the third degree; and is a corrosiue that eateth away dead flesh.

Vermi, which we call Wormes, doe conglutinate and comfort sinewes.

Verze is hot and dry: see *Brasica.*

Vetro,

Vetro, which we call Glasse, is hot in the first, and dry in the second degree: and it cleanseth.

Vinacea, which we call the kirnels of grapes, are dry.

Virga pastoris, which we call wilde Tassill, is cold in the third, and dry in the first degree; it comforteth and bindeth.

Vischio, which we call Lime, is hot in the fourth degree: it dryeth and skinneth, but being mixed with any liquid stuffe, it burneth and is corrosiue.

Vitalia, or *vitis alba*, which we call Briony, is hot, chiefly the roote; it cleanseth and killeth scabbes, it dryeth, it draweth, mollifieth and dissolueth.

Vitelli, which we call the yolkes of any egges, are hot, and doe strengthen and incarnate.

Vitriol, which we call Copporas, is of two kinds, that is, *Vitriolo Romanum*, which wee call greene Copporas, and *Vitriolo album*, which we call white Copporas; they both are hot and dry, but the white is much the stronger: they take away scurfes, and kill scabbes.

Vitriolo Calcanthum is reckoned amongst mettals, and is a kinde of Inkie earth: it drieth and fretteth.

Vitriolo Herba, is an hearbe that groweth on the Wall, and is taken for Pellitory of the Wall: see *Helxin*.

Vrtica, which wee call nettles, are hot and dry, and stoppe and cleanse humours, and are good for sores.

Zafarano,